

THE BIBLE, YAHUAH'S INSPIRATIONAL WORD CREATED ACCORDING THE PATTERN OF HIS PARADISE; WISDOM FOR HIS SANCTUARY

by

**HENDRIK (LEVI) STEPHANUS MARTHINUS JOSEPHUS
MARX**

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the Degree of

**Doctors of Ancient Hebraic Studies
in
Judaism**

at

**Therapon University
February (Shevat) 2015**

Promotor

Prof (Dr.) W Liebenberg

DECLARATION

I, Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx, hereby declare that the work contained in this thesis: ***THE BIBLE, YAHUAH'S INSPIRATIONAL WORD CREATED ACCORDING THE PATTERN OF HIS PARADISE; WISDOM FOR HIS SANCTUARY*** is my own independent research / investigation, except where otherwise stated; therefore the author acknowledged and credited all sources that were utilised for reference and consultation; this includes electronic and written references, and interviews.

A bibliography is appended.

This work has not previously in its entirety, or partly submitted at any other University for a degree.

Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx

Date

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

- ☆ I, Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx, hereby publicly declare my utmost gratitude to Yod-Hey-Vav-Hey (YHVH) my Creator and Saviour for my existence on earth and for His Way He expressed through His Word the Messiah to live according to His Footsteps. To assist me in keeping / protecting all His Instructions, with the reliance upon Him [the Ruach HaKodesh] (Holy Spirit) to teach and guide me in all Truth. It was "I Am's" (Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh) desire for this work to see the "Light" and to express it in Words. I love the Creator Elohim with all my heart, with my complete soul and with all my might / being and with this love I know the meaning of "to fear Him" and to obey Him till the very last end to enter the "Final Destination", His Kingdom as a "Royal Priesthood" for Him.
- ☆ A special thank you to Prof (Dr) W.A. Liebenberg who was and still is my mentor / teacher in the field of Academia and support whenever it was and is needed. His seven (7) years of / to perfection teachings are recommended in / as all truth. His book *"The Revelation of Y'shua HaMashiach – A Hebraic Verse by Verse Explanation"* is highly recommended to all believers of any religion and his dvd regarding the *"Two Houses – Y'hudah and Yisra'El"*.
- ☆ Also a special thank you to my Dad, Koos Marx for his support and understanding during my studies and the support Century Electrical granted me for the time through my studies. He is an example led by a "teachable" Spirit, even at the age of 65 years he hungers for the truth from the Creator's Word. May I follow your example to never stop searching and learning the truth from the Word of the Creator!

DEDICATION

This work is dedicated:

- ☆ To my lovely and lovable family, my beloved wife Madre Marx who supports me with their love and her understanding of me to be a Torah-observer and Torah-teacher. To my children Jodriko, Miolet and Henco for their faith in the Messiah and the time they indirectly gave me for my dedication of studying Scriptures.
- ☆ To the Creator, the GOD of Avraham and the GOD of Yitz'chak and the GOD of Ya'acov, our fathers, for loving us, His creation, so much that He gave us guidelines and Instructions to guide and direct us to the New Yerushalayim and to protect us from evil and wickedness. May His will be done. You are YAWEHSOME!
- ☆ To the Ruach who is GOD for revealing the truth in Scripture to me, who is One with the Messiah and who came to show me the Way of GOD. Showing me the meaning and purpose to fear and to love GOD, the Almighty of the Universe; the wisdom of reaping the fruit of the truth from the Ruach that pours from my heart through His grace.
- ☆ To "*YHVH is Salvation*", the manifestation as HaMashiach on earth, showing us how to follow *His Footsteps* and that there is only One Adonai Yah Shua. His Word is exactly the same from the beginning till the end. He came to show us how to take His Word as a child, how to *mature* during childhood to adulthood; to live by this complete Word (whole BIBLE) from our Heavenly Father by His leading example. Yahshua came *only* for His lost sheep of the House of Yisra'El and also instructed His disciples to *rather* go to this lost sheep that had been scattered around the world; to *return* to Him and to come *out of the world* to live His Way. He showed us that *each and every* person has to be *re-birthed / reborn* to enter His Kingdom. Who will return as One as the Mashiach, the King of kings and the Lord of lords, to live for eternity according to His Way dressed in *fine white linen* as the sign of righteousness; to serve Him as *Royal Priesthood*. He will print His Way in the minds of every believer and it will be lived from the hearts; and people will love only Him again with all the heart, soul and might.

PRÉCIS

The BIBLE is the *Science* of the Creator, the *Science* of *Prophecy* from His Mouth / Word. Everything in the BIBLE was given by the Creator to mankind to *teach* the human race good from wrong doing. The Creator separated *Light* from *darkness* before He commenced with His creation of His Adamic world.

The BIBLE (from Genesis to Revelation) is *totally* the Creation of the Creator. There is *absolutely no* Prophecy in the BIBLE from mankind – **none!** Everything in the BIBLE is the Works of the Creator Himself.¹

The complete BIBLE is the Book and Manual of the Creator's knowledge and wisdom to live a just / righteous, holy and GOD *fearing* life on earth. A person's *actions* are the "fruit of the Ruach", which is the *fruit from the heart*, because the "house" where the Ruach lives in a human's body is the heart! Thus, the *fruit of the Ruach* of humankind is the *only* Witness of what came from the Word / Voice of the Creator. The *Ruach* (Set-Apart Spirit) will not guide any person in life on earth that is not said or created by the Almighty Creator.

The entire BIBLE is the GOD-given Word from the Creator's Voice to mankind! Whether the Words was given **direct** to Moshe on the Mountain or from within a burning bush, or *whispered* in the ear of His chosen Writers of the Biblical Books; all the Words were created and written *exactly* as the Almighty Creator wanted to *carry His Word forward* by His Almighty Everlasting Power.

The Creator gave His Word *Face-to-face* (direct) to Moshe to show His Character to humanity, to prove His Authority to humankind and to explain to humankind to fear Him is to love the Almighty Creator with everything a human possibly has (all heart, mind and soul). What it really means is, a person has to *make sure* anything he or she *does* is *in the light*, which is *good and righteous* in the eyes of the Creator!

¹ Proof was even given by mankind himself, obviously through the Inspiration of the Ruach, which is also the Works of the Creator: exeGesis Ready Research Bible (ERRB) 2 Pet 1:19-21: "**SCRIPTURE PROPHECY:** We have also a more sure [**stedfast**] word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth [**manifesteth**] in a dark [**an obscure place**], until the day [**thoroughly**] dawn, and the day star [**phosphorescence**] arise in your hearts: Knowing this first, that no [**not any**] prophecy of the scripture is [**becometh**] of any private interpretation [**personal explanation**]. For the prophecy came not in old time [**was not ever brought**] by the will of man [**humanity**]: but holy men [**humans**] of God [**Elohim**] spake as they were moved [**borne**] by the Holy Ghost [**Spirit**]."

Fear proves love, because before the Creator's creation (man, woman or child) *think of* any action to do (a thought or a word to speak or a physical action to do) a man, woman or child should think of the Creator's Character and Authority He gave as example to live by. The fear of the Creator will and must *guide* any human not to harm, hurt or damage the Character of the Creator of humankind. The fear of the Creator will and must remind every human of the Character and Authority of the Creator.

When humankind has fear of the Creator, it proves love with the whole being. To *love* the Creator *with the whole being* (heart, sole, mind and might) is to have the Creator in the heart, mind and sole before every thought, every word and every action. That proves the *deserved* love to *your* Creator; for giving you life and proving to *you* His love by opening His Heart to Moshe and His Prophets² – for everyone to *follow* His Character and by His Authority.

Moshe wrote everything *exactly* as the *creation* happened. Moshe proved how Noah has builded the Ark *exactly* according the Instructions given by the Creator. Avraham walked with the Creator (halacha) exactly according the *Way* the Creator planned for humankind to walk³. Moshe stayed with the Creator on the Mountain for fourty (40) days to be taught what is righteous and what is unrighteous for mankind to do. All the Prophets received the exact Word given to Moshe by the Creator, which is further prove of the Oneness (Echad) of the Creator: the same Character and Authority was shown to humankind, even thousands of years after it was given *in direct contact* with a human, His Servant Moshe.

The Apostles were Witnesses of the *same* Character and Authority given to humankind to follow. The Creator in fact said that He is and always will be *the same*, He does not change! The Character of the Creator will never and can never change, just as His Authority will never and can never be changed. Whatever the Creator spoke, said, gave or instructed to His Prophets (Moshe to Malachi), He would have given the same Word to the Apostles (Matthew to the Revelation by Yochanan) to write in His Book the Living Word for guidance, direction and protection.

² *Scriptures 1998+* Amos 3.7: "For the Master יהוה does no matter unless He reveals His secret to His servants the prophets."

³ *Scriptures 1998+* Gen 26.5: "because Abraham obeyed My voice and guarded My Charge: My commands, My laws, and My Torot(1). Footnote: 1Torot - plural of Torah, teaching"

The people who followed the exact Way of the Creator for 4,000 years would not have received a different Word from the Creator than the people who wanted to continue to follow the same Creator further for 2,000 years!

To *live in the light*, a good and righteous life on earth; is *not to follow darkness*! The Character and Authority of the Creator will lead humankind in the Light and away from darkness. Evil deeds, unrighteousness and wrong doing are *works of darkness, works of the Adversary*, which is in fact works of other gods!

The Adversary wants to lead people away from the *real* Character and Authority of the Creator, to follow man-made authorities and characters in the "name of a belief system"!

Prophecy of the entire BIBLE is composed and explained for humankind's salvation and can the BIBLE be seen as an acronym for *Basic Instructions Before Leaving Earth* to enter the *Paradise again*; and not to be left *outside* with the *dogs* and *GOD idolaters*.⁴

The Dissertation of the student's Masters Degree consists of abundant information and literature of how the BIBLE was formed and canonized. The fact is that the formulation and compilation of the Books of the BIBLE is *solely* the Works of the Creator. The BIBLE is the *creation* of the Creator! *Only* the Creator can create such an abundance of *Intellectual Property*, where every Writer has the same Prophecy message to convey; the result to enter *again* the Paradise of the Creator, the Sanctuary of His Kingdom!

This Thesis concentrates on the Uniqueness and Oneness of the Creator and how to return as a human being again to His Prepared Paradise. The Kingdom of the Creator will be exactly as the Paradise He created before the first Adam to live in – Perfect! And the Creator wants every person in His Paradise to live in *perfect harmony* with Him.

The Creator wants no *rebellion* towards Him (His Word, His Character, His Authority and His Instructions) in His Paradise / Kingdom. The Creator locked humankind before out of His Paradise because of rebellion; therefore did He give His Word, His Instructions and His Character to humankind as example to follow.

⁴ Rev 22:15

The Creator gave perfect examples of His chosen men as an example for thousand generations to live by and to follow like: Noah, Avraham, Yitz'chaq, Ya'acov, Yosef, Moshe, Yehoshua, Shemu'el, David, Shelomoh, Yeshayahu (Isaiah), Y'hudah and Dani'el.

All of these men were GOD-fearing men and followed the Way of the Creator with a true heart, complete mind and perfect soul – complete and fulfilled love. The fulfilment of their love was proven in the fruit of their actions. They continually sought favour / grace in the eyes of the Creator and lived to be a *son of righteousness*. Men the Creator chose to live in perfect harmony with Him in His Paradise. Men who would not rebel against any Word the Craetor gave for guidance, direction and protection, because they knew the consequences.⁵

No man is allowed to interpret the Word of the Creator personally, i.e. own-personal interpretation of what a person "thinks" the Creator meant! This is *idolatry* against GOD, i.e. prove of not fearing the Creator. No human being has the right to try to think what the Almighty Creator is interpreting, except what was given by His Word. The Creator's Word is the only Authority to Interpret His Word. Thus, only the Creator's Word can be used as interpretation of His Word!⁶

There are several methods of interpretation a student and teacher can use to ensure proper and correct Biblical interpretation succeed. The foundational principles of Exegesis and Hermeneutics are used in this Thesis to ensure the Word of the Creator is not personally interpreted.

When a deeper level of interpretation of the Creator's Word is sought, I found that the best method to use is the four levels of PaRDeS. PaRDeS in Hebrew relates to the word paradise, garden or orchard.

In depth detail of this method can be found in Chapter 4 of this Thesis. Whenever a deeper meaning of interpretation is sought for is it vital important to never replace the first Written

⁵ *Scriptures 1998+ Heb 10.26-28: "For if we sin purposely after we have received the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a slaughter offering for sins, but some fearsome anticipation of judgment, and a fierce fire which is about to consume the opponents. Anyone who has disregarded the Torah of Mosheh dies without compassion on the witness of two or three witnesses."*

⁶ *Scriptures 1998+ 2 Pet 1.19-21: "And we have the prophetic word made more certain, which you do well to heed as a light that shines in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts, knowing this first, that no prophecy of Scripture came to be of one's own interpretation, for prophecy never came by the desire of man, but men of Elohim spoke, being moved by the Set-apart Spirit."*

Word of the Creator. The Creator is in fact the Creator of His own Word! Fear of the Creator is a perfect example here to be so afraid that you as a person stand the chance to change or alter the given Word of the Creator. By changing or altering the Words in the BIBLE is to change or alter the thought and instructions of the Creator, i.e. "to play GOD" and it is not allowed!

In fact, when a person loves the Creator so much with all the heart, mind and soul, a person is *fulfilling / completeing* the fullness of love; and is it the total summary of Torah / Law of Almighty:

*Love does no evil to a neighbour. Therefore, love is completion of the Torah.*⁷
(Scriptures 1998+ Rom 13.10)

This Word does not mean or say that Torah is now abolished or to be done away with. Uncertainly not! The Creator gave explicit Instruction through Matthew (5.17-20) and Luke (16.17) that the Torah of the Creator will exist as long as Heaven and earth exist, because the Creator made the Torah Set-Apart (Holy), just / righteous, good (Rom 7.12) and Spiritual (Rom 7.14)!

When a person *pervert* (make) the Torah of the Creator as "legalistic rules": a person then *perverts* the Word of the Creator.

According the believer's Patriarch David's (Prophet David – Acts 2.29) Word the Torah of YAHUAH (YHVH) is *perfect*⁸ and is it part of the Word of GOD for *teaching*, to *correct paths*, to *reproof* from wrongdoing and for *training in righteousness*.⁹

The Torah is thus seen as the "*Love Letter*" of the Creator, because *love* is the *fulfilling* of the Torah.

⁷ *exeGeses Companion Bible (ECB): "Love works no evil to his neighbour: so love is the fulness/shalom of the torah."*

Complete Jewish Bible (CJB): "Love does not do harm to a neighbor; therefore love is the fullness of Torah."
New Living Translation (NLT): "Love does no wrong to others, so love fulfills the requirements of God's law."

⁸ *English Standard Version (ESV) Psa 19:7: "The law of the LORD is perfect, reviving the soul; the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple;"*

⁹ *ESV 2 Tim 3:16-17: "All Scripture (including Torah) is breathed out by God and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, that the man of God may be complete, equipped for every good work."*

GOD gave the *do's* and *do not's* to mankind, because He loves His creation and in return He also expects *love* from every human being with all the heart, soul and being.¹⁰

To study the BIBLE a person must use only the BIBLE as the Word of GOD. By examining the Word of GOD and searching explanations for *hidden secrets* (mysteries) from within the Word, only the Word of GOD can be used to interpret these explanations. The reason for this is because GOD said He has *revealed* anything and everything of any matter to His Council, His Prophets, for humankind to know; to not be left in the *dark*.

Something that is not revealed to His Council and is not written in the BIBLE should be considered as lies or falsehoods. Therefore is it highly important to ensure that "the issue under discussion" *is* or *is not* in the BIBLE, because the Creator made it clear to humankind that His Prophecy (Word) was given by Him alone and it is not from any human! Scripture also explicitly instructs that a person's self / own interpretation (private / personal interpretation) of the Creator's Word is not allowed, because His Word is the ultimate Living Word to humankind.

Eisegesis (reading into something that was not said) is an enormous problem with BIBLE readers in the Western cultures, because Exegesis and Hermeneutics were not taught to *believers* from childhood, therefore is it not even familiar to adults to correct children.

Another huge problem lies within *religion*, because believers are taught that every person has the right to interpret Scripture as he or she seems fit. The reason for this is to show respect for another person, and sadly it happens even if the person's interpretation goes against the Word of GOD. People do not like to be corrected (reproved) with Scripture anymore (selfrighteousness) and it is because of these problematic errors that misinterpretation continues and *traditions of men* are so frequently followed.

Spiritualization of Scripture is when a verse of Scripture (the Word of the Creator) is taken and interpreted as an individual "thinks or feels" is correct, without adhering or acknowledging the verse as it is written in the BIBLE. The main cause it happens is because of lack of knowledge of proper Exegesis and Hermeneutics. Another cause is because people just take the "word of the pastor / preacher / teacher" commonly as truth even if a verse is contradicted in a ceremony or teaching.

¹⁰ Deut 10:12-13; Matt 22:37

Pope Augustine, an early "church" father is an instigator of such a theology and seen as originator of *spiritualization of Scripture*, adopted within *Roman-Catholic Christianity*.

The implementation of *spiritualization of Scripture* was allowed by the rest of *Christianity*, because the "church" approved it by the "Vicar of Christ" represented by the pope on earth. The "Vicar" is *literally* called the "Substitute for / of Christ" on earth and he has given total authority over the whole "church" as he represents GOD on earth, therefore is he allowed to *approve* changes. This is idolatry towards the Creator of all things!

This is the exact reason and way the *fundamentals of Christianity* originated and implemented by all the other denominations, basics like the "*legalization*" of "Christianity" religion, implementation of the "Christmas" feast, the change of Passover to Easter, the start of "infant baptism", the legalisation of the *Sabbath change* from Sabbath to Sunday and the *perversion of Torah as legalism*.

This is sad, but true!

This is no wonder why *Christianity* has over 41,000 denominations¹¹, because of their *different* religious beliefs, because of the *spiritualization of Scripture*, because the "Vicar" is allowed to make changes to the Word of the Creator as the *represented one on earth*. Mostly all this happened because the Word of the Creator was not taken as His *literal* Word given *directly* to mankind **for** Instructions to live by according the *Footsteps as Mashiach*!

This above all happened, because the **fear of the Creator** is not stead-fast within the hearts of the human-creation! Fear of the Almighty *should* cause every human to:

- ✧ Think before act
- ✧ Make sure what is read in the BIBLE is understood correctly
- ✧ Not alter *any* Word spoken by the Creator
- ✧ Know the true Way of the Creator He expects to walk / keep / obey
- ✧ Understand the Creator gave His Torah, which proves His Character and Authority

¹¹ Christianity Today, About Religion - <http://christianity.about.com/od/denominations/p/christiantoday.htm>;

The following verses (Words from the Creator) should cause every human being to pause and to meditate what the Creator said and asked, because His Word will be the Judge one day; often called the two-edged sword¹²:

"And now, Yisra'el, what is יהוה your Elohim asking of you, but to fear יהוה your Elohim, to walk in all His ways and to love Him, and to serve יהוה your Elohim with all your heart and with all your being, to guard the commands of יהוה and His laws which I command you today for your good?" (Scriptures 1998+ Deut 10.12-13)

"He who turns away his ear from hearing the Torah, Even his prayer is an abomination" (Scriptures 1998+ Prov 28.9)

The Patriarch father Avraham knew what the Creator expected from him:

"because Abraham obeyed My voice and guarded My Charge: My commands, My laws, and My Torot¹³" (Scriptures 1998+ Gen 26.5)

Why would the Creator give the following Words as His Covenant to be / come:

"For finding fault with them, He says, "See, the days are coming," says יהוה, "when I shall conclude with the house of Yisra'el and with the house of Yehudah a renewed covenant, not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Mitsrayim, because they did not continue in My covenant, and I disregarded them," says יהוה. "Because this is the covenant that I shall make with the house of Yisra'el after those days, says יהוה, giving My laws in their mind, and I shall write them on their hearts, and I shall be their Elohim, and they shall be My people."

Surely everyone wants to be part of YAHUAH's people and want Him as our Father!

¹² Psa 149.6; Heb 4.12; Rev 1.16, 2.12, 19.13

¹³ Plural of Torah teachings

OUTLINE

TITLE PAGE

DECLARATION

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

DEDICATION

PRÉCIS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1: Research Principles	11
1.1 Expected Value and Motivation	11
1.2 Formulation of the Problem Statement	12
1.3 Significance of the Study	15
1.4 Research Questions	16
1.5 Thesis, Antithesis, Hypothesis and Synthesis	17
Chapter 2: Background and Foundation of the Research	20
2.1 Definitions and terms	20
2.2 Definitions and interpretations in the BIBLE	23
2.3.1 Research Methodology	27
2.3.2 Demarcation of Research	29
2.3.3 Scope and Limitations	30
2.3.4 Choice of Citation Style	31
2.4 Introductory Paragraph	31
2.5 Holistic Overview of the BIBLE as a whole	32
2.5.1 Existence of the BIBLE	32
• TaNaKh	34
2.5.2 Canonocity of the TaNaKh	45
2.5.3 Formation of the TaNaKh Canon	46
2.5.4 TaNaKh and the Apocrypha	47
2.5.5 Messia[h]nic Writings	49
2.5.6 Messianic Writings Apocrypha	54

2.5.7 Manuscripts of the TaNaKh	55
2.5.8 Manuscripts of the Messianic Writings	56
2.5.9 The End is declared from the Beginning	57
• Beginning is / in Genesis	58
• End is / in Revelation	64
2.6 Summary of facts established	65
 Chapter 3: Methodology and Identified Problem	 67
3.1. Aims and Objectives of the Research	68
3.2. Research Questions	69
3.3. Procedure and Timeframe	70
3.4. Demarcation	71
3.5. Introductory paragraph	72
3.6. Exegesis / Exegeses	73
3.7. Exegesis used by Sha'ul	76
3.8. Hermeneutics	84
3.9. Principles of Hermeneutics	86
3.10. Applying Hermeneutics	92
3.11. The Jewishness of the Messiah	96
3.12. Anti-Semitism	103
3.13. Christendom and Christianity – Christian Theology	113
3.13.1 Christian and church history	114
3.13.2 Basics of Christianity	121
• Christmas	121
• Sunday or Sabbath	128
• Days of the week	149
• Easter	156
3.14. Trinity or Echad	159
• YHVH is Yah Shua	159
• Origin of Trinity	161
3.15. Infant baptism	164
3.16. Holy Cow	165
3.17. Correct interpretation of Scripture	176
1. Torah is not part of the Word	176

2. Torah impossible to observe	191
3. Grace and the Word	198
4. Israel and the church	203
5. Feasts of YHVH have been abolished	213
3.18. Messiah will come as a thief	219
3.19. Summary of facts established	222
 Chapter 4: Solution and Model of the Research	 225
4.1. Introduction	226
4.2. Principles of PARDES	230
• P'shat	230
• Remez	232
• D'rash	233
• Sud	238
4.3. PRDS – PARDES for correct interpretation	243
4.4. Examples of Sola-Scriptura	249
4.5. Researcher's PARDES interpretation	251
4.6. Summary of facts established	254
 Chapter 5: Conclusions and Recommendations	 256
 Bibliography	 262

CHAPTER 1

Research Principles

1.1. INTRODUCTION (EXPECTED VALUE AND MOTIVATION)

The BIBLE, the Study- and Interpretation Guide of HaShem's Word laid-out according to an Orchard, the Garden of Eden where Paradise was lost and will be *restored* in the Sanctuary / Garden of GOD.

Scriptures is not by accident called the BIBLE in English. Nothing is by accident in the Word of HaShem, because everything is according the *creation* of His will. Scriptures are literally the **B**asic Instructions (of YHVH) **B**efore **L**eaving **E**arth (GOD's Life-giving, Fatherly *loving* Instructions in *righteousness*)¹⁴, to enter His Kingdom (Eternal Life – Sanctuary / Garden).

First of all, everything in Scripture leads to the basic Instruction of, "to love"¹⁵. Ha Shem loved and blessed His creation, therefore He said all have to love Him with all the heart (inner self), mind (wisdom and knowledge) and might (all our resources) and by this love for Him human will keep and obey His Instructions and Teachings given by Moshe (Chamash) and explained in further detail by His Prophets¹⁶.

Yahshua said if His followers love Him they will keep and protect all these Instructions and safeguard them in the *hearts*, because everything He said and done are from the Works of the Father and not from Himself.¹⁷

Yahshua is the "Cornerstone" and Foundation of all these Instructions from HaShem and love forms the two pillars of these Instructions, carrying the tablets of the Ten Commandments. HaShem spoke 613 Commandments from His Word, whereby the Word in Flesh Interpreted the 613 in 1050 Explanations. No Interpretation added a new

¹⁴ The *awareness* of the Character of the Creator given to humankind to walk in *intimate* oneness with the Creator! The likes and dislikes of the Heavenly Father explained, not as a curse to man, but as loving Instructions to guide, direct and protect His creation from *darkness* and eternal death.

¹⁵ Matt 22.36-38; John 14.15, 21, 15.10

¹⁶ Romans 13.10; Matt 22.40; Acts 28.23-24

¹⁷ John 14.6,10

Command to the 613; the Word that became Flesh just explained / interpreted some in a deeper / broader meaning.¹⁸

To completely understand and believe HaShem's Commands, people have to read and study Scriptures in the same Way and manner that the Word was initially given. How is that? Scripture explicitly said that the Word became Flesh and that this Word is Yahshua HaMashiach, the Truth and Yahshua is Echad (One) with YHVH. Yahshua *is* a Hebrew Jewish Rabbi and He said that He *will* come back in the same manner He left earth: as the Hebrew Jewish Master Rabbi Mashiach.

Therefore, if people want to learn and better understand *The Way* and Teachings HaShem gave His Word through the Followers of the Messiah (the Apostles – the **Messia[h]nic Writings**), humankind obviously then have to read and learn *His Word* from a Hebrew Jewish Rabbi view to fully and completely understand *His* parables and Instructions.

The Rabbinical and Jewish Way Yahshua gave His Word is the identical Way scholars have to use to understand and interpret His Word correct and in truth? This method is called PRDS (פ ר ד ס), but to pronounce it correctly vowels were added, thus the pronunciation is PaRDeS.

The word PaRDeS derives from Scripture and the *first use* was by the Prophets initially¹⁹ in Hebrew. The Greek word *paradeisos* was first used in Genesis for the "Garden of Eden or Paradise", which is in fact the "Garden of GOD".²⁰

People believe the TaNaKh (from Torah, Nevi'im and Khetuvim – Law, Prophets and Writings – Old Testament / Hebrew Bible) was only meant for Jewish people, if people continue to make this *mistake*, people will continue struggling to fully comprehend the Living Word from GOD. People will also struggle to understand the revelation and meaning of the "hidden secrets" (mysteries) Mashiach is referring to for revelation.

Hypothetical (facts that I need to prove by adding "*light*" to it) is the Bible laid out / subdivided into four (4) levels to prove the Creator's pattern in His Word and to ensure

¹⁸ Matt 5.17-19

¹⁹ Neh 2.8; Eccl 2.5; Sol (Song of Sol) 4.13

²⁰ Isa 51:3; Ezek 28:13

correct interpretation by humankind. This hypothesis is parallel to the PaRDeS method, which is parallel to the levels of Biblical Exegesis. The PaRDeS method actually consists of four (4) levels and within each level we **experience** a deeper meaning and understanding.

P'shat, the first level, is the *literal direct contextual* reading and understanding of the Word on eyesight. Sud, the last / fourth level is the deepest ("hidden" secrets) meaning when Scripture is read or studied. During Scripture study and research a scholar / student / reader must always remember the first level principles: the Word's *literal direct contextual* meaning must not firstly be seen as Spiritual, because GOD's Word was given from GOD (His Mouth) and is not of man²¹. The method will also be explained in more detail in the formal study and research:

- ☆ P'shat – Torah (Law / Word from YHVH)
- ☆ Remez – Nevi'im (Prophets and Writings)
- ☆ D'rash – Messianic Writings (N.T.)
- ☆ Sud – Revelation (Revelation of the whole Prophecy of the Bible – the deepest message)

PaRDeS is the four *dimensional* depth interpretation method used to understand and interpret the Word of HaShem, as it has been done for ages and ages. It is the same method haMashiach used when He gave the Apostles His Teachings and when He used His Parables. Isaiah understood these principles as well in his Prophecies, for example in 28.10-17 and Sha'ul (Paul) interpreted the Word from Prophet Isaiah in his teachings and gave the different *dimensions* in the following Words:

*"so that the Messiah **may live in your hearts** through your trusting. Also I pray that you will be rooted and founded in love, so that you, **with all God's people**, will be given strength **to grasp the breadth, length, height and depth** of the **Messiah's love**, yes, to know it, even though it is beyond all knowing, so that you will be filled with all the fullness of God."*²² (CJB Eph 3.17-19)

²¹ 2 Pet 1:19-21

²² The "fullness" of GOD is to love GOD, and second (similar to it) is to love everybody else as yourself! This fullness will be full[filled] through knowing GOD's Torah / Law (Rom 13:10), just as He explained in Matt 22.40.

It is also true that all the verses in all of Scripture have four levels of interpretation, but always first of all must the **literal direct contextual** Word not be neglected or rejected. The Creator's Word is not of man and when that is understood / realised a person can *only then* start searching for the deeper meanings. After all it is His Word and the only Way of communication with humankind, therefore is the BIBLE the *Living Word*. YHVH explicitly instructed evryone throughout Scripture, from His Torah, through His Prophets right through to His Revelation that **not one** Word may be added, taken away or be changed, and the ones doing so will not have one share in His Kingdom.²³

HaShem's Word is the **only** Way to the Tree of Life, and it is our only guidance, direction and protection to receive as the Bride, the invitation to the Wedding Feast of the Lamb (haMashiach the Groom). We **cannot only** utilise the Writings of the Apostles, like most Christians *want to* do, (then rejecting the Word of YHVH), or only the TaNaKh, like most Jewish people do (then rejecting the First Coming of the Messiah), but people have to remember (keep / protect) the Words of haMashiach that He gave in the beginning when He spoke to the Prophets (from Moshe right through to Malachi) and the Words He taught His Apostles. Our Messiah came to explain and interpret literally D'var Torah (Word of Torah) given to the Prophets (who *interpreted* a deeper / broader meaning of HaShem's spoken Word), but **never** changed the first meaning of HaShem's spoken Word.

This research and study will put the puzzle of the BIBLE together for believers to give them the knowledge to fit the pieces of Scripture in the right order and pattern. We must have a "teachable spirit" that always wants to know the truth and to make sure we use the "lamp"²⁴ to guide and protect us in the right direction to Eternal Life, so that we do not stumble to "sin"²⁵ against the Instructions of our Creator and Saviour.

"So now the word of Adonai for them comes "precept by precept (command by command), precept by precept, line by line (verse by verse), line by line, a little

²³ Deut 4:2, 12:32; Prov 30:6; Rev 22:18-19

²⁴ NKJV Prov 6:23 "For the commandment *is* a lamp, And the law a light; Reproofs of instruction *are* the way of life,"

²⁵ The Hebrew root meaning for the word *sin* is: miss. The following words in English derived from the word *sin*: misconduct or misbehaviour, which is exactly what sin is: misconduct or misbehaviour towards the Instructions the Creator spoke / gave (1 John 3:4). Strong's definition: [Strong's \ #8582] ^ A primitive root; to vacillate, that is, **reel or stray** (literally or figuratively); also causatively of both: - (cause to) **go astray, deceive, dissemble, (cause to, make to) err**, pant, seduce, (make to) stagger, (**cause to**) **wander, be out of the way**. Exactly what sin is: "be out of the way" from the Way of the Creator, "wander" from GOD's Way, "cause to err" Ha Shem's Instructions – SIN!

here, a little there," so that when they walk, they stumble backward, and are broken, trapped and captured! I will make justice the plumbline and righteousness the plumb-bob; hail will sweep away the refuge of lies, water will overflow the hiding place," (CJB Isa 28.13, 17)

These Instructions (Precepts and Words) of Adonai will lead us to the "Cornerstone" and will be our firm foundation for when justice will take place to prove our righteousness. We must therefore be prepared to take them and preserve them so that we are not led astray / wander from His Word by not seeing the lies and falsehoods, which will lead us to justice of sheer terror. (Isa 28.14-19)

I found *the love* in reading HaShem's Word and also do I praise Yah for revealing His Word to me through the Ruach when I study Scripture and search deeper meanings in Scripture. Because of *this love* I received from ABBA [Father], it came to my knowledge that the BIBLE was laid out according to the Hebrew Jewish PaRDeS method. If this can be proven within Scripture through this research study, then Christian (Greek) and Jewish people (House of Y'hudah) will better understand the Whole Word of YHVH as cardinal important:

All Scripture is God-breathed and is valuable for teaching the truth, convicting of sin, correcting faults and training in right living; (CJB 2 Tim 3.16)

The Orthodox Jews reject the Messianic Writings and the Christians reject the TaNaKh for teaching, guidance, direction and protection to be **fully equipped for every good work**.

1.2 FORMULATION OF THE PROBLEM STATEMENT

[A] The Word of the Creator is the only *Living Word* for 1) teaching the truth, 2) convicting of sin, 3) correcting of faults and 4) training in right living.²⁶

These 4 Instructions by HaShem are Teachings through His Word, thus Writings / Teachings / Testimonies of haMashiach, which also verifies the Exegetical levels scholars have to use, to interpret the given Word by the Creator:

²⁶ 2 Tim 3.15-17

- 1) The Truth must first of all be verified / taught within Scripture, because the Truth is the Word and the Word also became Flesh to *Interpret / Teach / Testify* everything the Creator Father had spoken and created / done; nothing else²⁷. [B] 1) GOD is the Great *I Am*, and the Messiah is One with Him, [A] 1) the Living Word showing / Teaching us the Way of the Father. The following verse is an example of how Scripture has to be used to interpret Scripture to verify the Truth:

[B] "Yeshua said, "1) I AM²⁸ 2) the Way — and 3) the Truth and 4) the Life; no one comes to the Father except through me." (CJB John 14.6)

- 2) The Way of the Word in Flesh is exactly the similar Way of the Creator Father, because He came to earth to live the *Works* of the Creator Father.²⁹ The Way of the *faith* of the Messiah³⁰, which the Apostles lived / walked was precisely the same Way / Faith given by the Creator³¹. If this Way is not followed, then the way of the world *will be* followed. The world is full of sin (misconduct / misbehaviour) and the Living Word Communicated by HaShem to humankind must be referred to for convicting the sin (misconduct / misbehaviour) of the world / flesh.

The Truth is the *referral "Manual"* and GOD-Breathed Word to guide, direct and protect humankind in the sinful world. The *hint* in every Command / Instruction from HaShem is to know sin³². Thus, to continue to [B] 2) follow the Way, [A] 2) sin must *convict* every person to **turn from sin** and not to continue to sin / wander!

- 3) It is clearly indicated in the previous 2 points that Truth has to be found in the complete BIBLE, and if it cannot be found in the BIBLE, can it not be verified as Truth. First of all, the Creator has a Word He spoke and everything He spoke is the Truth. Second, the Word of the Creator spoke His Commands / Instructions to guide, direct and protect humankind (for humankind to follow) on GOD's Way. Third, [B] 3) the Truth must convict humankind to [A] 3) correct all faults, showing True

²⁷ John 14.10

²⁸ Exo 3.14

²⁹ CJB John 14.10: "Don't you believe that I am united with the Father, and the Father united with me? What I am telling you, I am not saying on my own initiative; the Father living in me is doing his own works."

³⁰ Acts 22.3-4; 24.14; 25.8; 28.23-24; Gal 1.13-14

³¹ Deut 10.12-13

³² Rom 7.7; 6.23

love to the Creator GOD just as the Word came to show / interpret the Way of the Father³³.

Let's pause for a moment here. In the three explanations above, three definite levels in Scripture can be seen comparing to the Exegesis principles and levels of interpretation. The fourth level will be discussed in point number four (4) below, which is the deepest level of interpretation.³⁴ The significance of the three points and three levels is the following:

- a) Creator HaShem is the *only* GOD³⁵ and He obviously has ONE Word / Voice. This Word is completely and accurately the Truth to *distinguish* falsehoods. Exegesis first level is exactly this principle; the Creator's Word was given in context direct to humankind and is the literal Living Communication from GOD. When this principle are not adhered to when reading the Words in the BIBLE, the Word of the Creator will then be seen as secondly important and not as the absolute Truth!
- b) The second level and principle of Exegesis is to acknowledge the *hint* within a verse / text, which must be explained with the True Word given direct from HaShem through the Ruach / Spirit. The Words to Moshe (Moses) was given direct and literal "Face to face" to him where he was *Instructed* to write all Commands / Instructions down³⁶. Surely the Ruach (which is GOD³⁷) made sure every Word is **created** according the Creator's will and that nothing is added or left out³⁸! Therefore, the second level is all the Instructions / Commands / Words the Creator spoke to the Prophets. Everything was written because of the inspiration of the Ruach, which is GOD, but still is it Words direct from the Creator.

People tend to "spiritualise" the Word of the Creator first when reading the BIBLE, which leads to human interpretation *above / superceding* the direct Word

³³ Deut 10.12-13; Matt 22.37... 40

³⁴ But first must the first level of interpretation of Exegesis completely be understood, to not commit Eisegesis, which is poor Exegesis that leads to *reading into something (Scripture) that is not said*.

³⁵ Exo 6.1, 7; 9.14; Deut 4.39; Mal 2.10; Eph 4.6

³⁶ CJB Deut 27.8 "You are to write on the stones all the words of this Torah very clearly."

³⁷ John 4.24

³⁸ Deut 4.2; 12.32; Prov 30.6; Rev 22.18-19

given by the Creator.³⁹ No Word given by the Prophets (Prophetic Word) was from man, but **everything** is from GOD the Creator!

- c) The third level is the *stumbling Rock / Stone*,⁴⁰ the *Cornerstone* of the faith of most believers. The Rock Who gave an *everlasting Covenant*, a *Torah / Law* to **ensure** humankind live according the Creator's righteous Way, which will be used as *judgement* convicting humankind's sin and the **Guide** to correct these faults, to receive Life after death and not death after death.

A *stumbling Stone* it will be, because people "try" to understand the third level as the first level, by **replacing** the first level with the third level. People "see" the Word in Flesh **replaced** the Word spoken by the Creator in the beginning, when the Word became Flesh. This is a result of not *reading* the Word as the direct Word from GOD and because of own (personal) interpretation. The Word in Flesh clearly stated that **everything** the Word in Flesh did (works) or said *is the Works of the Creator Father!* The Word in Flesh **did not** come to *replace* the Word of HaShem the Creator.

The Word in Flesh also clearly verified this when "He" as the *Coming of the First Messiah* (exactly as the 65 Prophecies Prophesied by the Prophets) explicitly said **everything about the Messiah** will be known, understood and believed when a *believer* believe **everything** that is written about Him in the Torah (Law of Moshe), the Prophets and the Psalms.⁴¹ Surely then will every Prophecy of the 259 Prophecies about the *Coming of the Second Messiah* definitely become Truth just as Prophesied by the Prophets! Every Book written in the TaNaKh (Hebrew Bible / O.T.) was written by a Prophet, including Moshe and David first *in Hebrew!*

³⁹ 2 Pet 1.19-21

⁴⁰ 1 Pet 2.7; Rom 9.33, Creator gave this Prophecy to Habakkuk in 1.12. Every person who has *faith* in the Messiah, the Rock, is *cut from* the Rock (Isa 51.1; John 3.3, 7). This Rock, is GOD the Rock of Yisra'El (Israel) Who set an *everlasting Covenant* ordered in **all things**, fully assured: this is **all** for humankind's *salvation* and should be **everything** we desire (Isa 23.3... 5). The Prophets Prophesied these Words and the Word in Flesh lived and Taught / Interpreted these exact Words, because the Creator spoke the Word to Moshe (Deut 32.1): "**He is the Rock, his work is perfect: for all His Ways are judgment: an Elohim of truth and without iniquity, just and right is He.**" (WOY Deut 32.4)

⁴¹ Luke 24.44

If a person wants to have *faith* (wants to believe everything) in the Word Who became Flesh (the Messiah), then that person has to believe everything Moshe wrote and said.⁴² This is an Instruction of the Word in Flesh direct from His Mouth, which is the Works of the Creator Father.⁴³ Every single person has to *draw near* to the Word in Flesh, by the Teachings of the Creator Father as spoken through the Word of the Creator to the Prophets.⁴⁴

The Word in Flesh taught the Prophecies (everything written by the Prophets in the TaNaKh / O.T.) to the Apostles through Parables and He is the *Testimonies* (Witnesses) of the Creator's Word. The Word in Flesh is the Testimony of the Instructions of the Word of the Creator. Thus, to understand the Testimony a person has to know and understand the Word given *regarding* these Instructions and Testimonies.

If someone tries to *interpret* a Testimony or Instruction without the *knowledge* and *understanding* (which includes the reason for giving it) of the given Testimony and Instruction, will an individual "commit" personal interpretation, which leads to *reading into something that was not said by the original Author*.

Therefore, it is highly important to know the Word spoken / written in the very beginning (Original Author's Word), in this scenario the Testimonies and Instructions of the Creator, to be able to ensure *absolute correct* interpretation of the Author's Word.

A person cannot start to understand the Word from the Word Who became Flesh, to *Interpret* or *Teach* the Word of the Creator Father, if a person does not fully comprehend and understand the Word given by the Creator Father that He spoke and gave from the beginning. The Word in the beginning by the Creator includes His Instructions, Statutes, Ordinances and Testimonies, which forms part of His Commands / Law / Torah!

⁴² CJB John 5.46-47: "For if you really believed Moshe, you would believe me; because it was about me that he wrote. But if you don't believe what he wrote, how are you going to believe what I say?"

⁴³ John 14.10

⁴⁴ John 6.45: "It is written in the Prophets, 'They will all be taught by Adonai.' Everyone who listens to the Father and learns from him comes to me."

- d) The deepest level of BIBLE interpretation has to do with Eschatology (End-Time Prophecies), which is the *revelation* of the so-called "hidden secrets" or mysteries in the Creator's Word. For instance, the First Coming of the Messiah was a mystery for ages and still is for some people currently. Today, the Prophecies of the Second Coming of the Messiah are mysterious / hidden secrets to people to understand the *revelation* within the Creator's Word.

HaShem said that the *end was revealed from the beginning!* If a researcher or student does not comprehend the Book Genesis, will the Book Revelation not be interpreted correct as the Creator *interpreted* it to humankind.

The *basis* of the Exegesis interpretation (first level) cannot be replaced as the *basis* by any other [deeper] level of interpretation. "First come first served" is a motto that can be remembered here, i.e.⁴⁵ the second, third or fourth level **cannot** replace the first level's principle. Thus, it cannot be *first* interpreted above the direct and contextual Word.

Every verse or text in the BIBLE has different levels to interpret, but important to remember is the initial Word in *context* is the direct and first Word to never forget. In context mean, "who gave the Word *at first*, what was the Author's intend with giving the *initial* Word, why was the Word given *at that* specific time, where did the Word *originally* come from and how did the initial Word affect the Author of the written text".

- 4) We can continue with the deepest point in interpretation, now that a brief explanation is set on the different levels of interpretation above. Here are the two verses again:

[B] "Yeshua said, "1) I AM⁴⁶ 2) the Way — and 3) the Truth and 4) the Life; no one comes to the Father except through me." (CJB John 14.6)

[A] "All Scripture is God-breathed and is valuable for teaching the truth, convicting of sin, correcting faults and training in right living; thus anyone who belongs to God may be fully equipped for every good work." (CJB 2 Tim 3.16)

⁴⁵ Id est in Latin for in other words.

⁴⁶ Exo 3.14

First of all, the Word was given by the Creator. This Word must first of all be taken as the "first come first served" Word, which is, these Words are in context the first direct Word from the Creator to an Author, and any other deeper interpretation must not *overwrite* this specific given Word in that specific context.

Therefore, "*the Life*" indicates Eschatology already in the "Prophetic sense of the Word" (as the Prophets explained the meaning of *life*, which directly interpreted here is, when a person has *faith* in the Messiah a person has *Life*). The capital letter "L" indicates the Messiah as the Life already. Thus, the Messiah is the Great *I Am* and a person has to have *faith* in the Way the Messiah came to explain (which is the Way of the Creator Father's Works⁴⁷), **and** the *Truth* (which is the Word spoken and the Word in Flesh).

"*Training in right living*" (together with the teaching, convicting and correcting of Instructions) is the Word from GOD the Creator and with these Words a believer "*is equipped for every good work*", which leads to *Life*.

"*Life*" indicates "*Life after death*"! Here follows perfect examples of an *interpretation* [with GOD's Word] for "*Life*":

"*Those who have ears, let them hear what the Spirit is saying to the Messianic communities* (communities who have faith in the Messiah). *To him winning the victory I will give the right to eat from the **Tree of Life** which is in God's Gan-`Eden.*" (CJB Rev 2.7)

"*And I saw the dead, both great and small, standing in front of the throne. Books were opened; and another book was opened, the Book of Life; and the dead were judged from what was written in the books, according to what they had **done*** (according to their works)." (CJB Rev 20.12)

The *Book of Life* is with no doubt the complete BIBLE, the Word of GOD!

⁴⁷ John 14.10-11

The four points of [A] and [B] are parallel to each other, indicating four depths in the texts.

1.3 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE STUDY

Four levels of interpretation can be seen throughout the complete BIBLE, to understand the breadth, length, height and depth of the Creator's Word.

Four levels can be seen throughout the complete BIBLE with:

- ☆ Every verse has four levels to assist with Scripture to be interpreted with Scripture.
- ☆ Hypothetical all Books divided into four levels to assist with Eschatological interpretation: Torah as first level, all other Prophets as second level, all Apostle Writings as third level and Revelation as fourth level.
- ☆ "Gospels" have been *created* in accordance with the four levels in mind where Matthiyahu is the first level of understanding and Yochanan the deepest / fourth level.
- ☆ The TaNaKh can also be divided into four levels for better understanding: Torah level one, second level Nevi'im (Major and Minor Prophets), third level Khetuvim (Writings) and fourth Eschatological level Daniel.

One Book cannot be seen without the other. Messages in any Book assist a reader / scholar with interpretation in the other Books. The Creator would have mentioned *replacement theology* through His Prophets if it was His idea with the Coming of the Messiah⁴⁸, but He did not, because Prophecy was given to be *fulfilled* and not to be *abolished*!⁴⁹

The objective of this research is to ensure that people accept the full complete BIBLE to adhere to the Word; spoken by the "Great I Am" (Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh)⁵⁰ in the beginning and that this Word had been explained and described by the Prophets, and that this exact

⁴⁸ CJB Amos 3.7: "Adonai, God, does nothing without revealing his plan to his servants the prophets."

⁴⁹ CJB Matt 5.17, 19: "Don't think that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete. So whoever disobeys the least of these mitzvot (commands) and teaches (doctrine) others to do so will be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven. But whoever obeys them and so teaches (doctrine) will be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven."

⁵⁰ I Am what I Am or I will be what I will be – Exo 3.14

same Word walked the "I Am" on earth. This *Word's* Name is: "the Word of GOD"⁵¹ and His signature in the BIBLE is the Book of Revelation.

There is only One GOD with One Word, One signature of approval of His Word and One throne⁵² and by accepting this, people must accept that:

- ✧ Torah was the Word spoken by the Creator [and that]
- ✧ Torah is the Light of their path [and that]
- ✧ Torah was the Word walked on earth [and that]
- ✧ Torah is the signature of Revelation [and that the]
- ✧ Torah will be the Word that will decide to live / fit in the Eternal Garden or death after death.
- ✧ Torah will be written / known in every person's mind and will be crafted in every person's heart, because what the heart is filled with will flow from the mouth.

This *will be* the *New Covenant* the Creator Prophesied through Jeremiah when the Covenant of HaShem is abolished and forgotten, seen as "old", when people will never again forget or abolish His Covenant, but persevere / fulfil the Covenant of the Creator.

1.4 RESEARCH QUESTIONS

To attend to the real aims and objectives in a study a researcher has to make sure that people and believers' questions are properly and correct answered in the specific field of study. Questions that were discussed in the Masters Degree were:

- 1) Why are Exegesis and Hermeneutics necessary to understand and to interpret verses if GOD said "man" must take His Word like a son from his father?⁵³
- 2) Where does the "*I Am*" fit in the Word if the *Godhead* is "3-in-1"? "*Jesus*" is only known (to believe in) for the "*Christians*" for salvation?
- 3) What significance does the *Jewishness* of the Messiah together with the "*Jewish*" *Laws* have to do with His Word today?

⁵¹ Rev 19:13

⁵² Rev 4:2

⁵³ See complete explanation in Chapter 3.

- 4) Who knows which layout of the BIBLE is correct and can it be applied as the correct / true way?
- 5) How can anyone be sure of truth / correct interpretation / understanding of the BIBLE?
- 6) Is it not time that someone *rewrite* the BIBLE for better understanding?

The aim of this Doctors degree is to combine these questions to explain and prove a pattern the Creator used to ensure correct interpretation of **His Word**, because it is **not** of man. The complete BIBLE must be seen **as a whole** and cannot be separated into two (2) different Words from two (2) individuals, separate or different Mouths.

The aim is to indicate hypothetical that the BIBLE can be *subdivided* into four "levels" by the Creator, to make it easier for humankind to *interpret* the **Word of Ha Shem** correct; and not to rely on a person's own personal interpretation!

A person can relate to this hypothetical *subdivision* when the principles of proper Exegesis and Hermeneutics are understood. The levels of the "subdivision" are parallel to the different levels of interpretation of Exegesis, as long as the first principle (basis) are correctly understood. This "subdivision" within the Word of the Creator acknowledges and agrees with everything in the BIBLE as the absolute Truth and that nothing is of man, and that everything is direct from the Creator as His literal Word, which makes the BIBLE the Living Word: the only Communication between the One True GOD Creator and humankind. Everything else can / must be compared with this Word to verify the Truth.

These levels should enhance the knowledge of every BIBLE scholar, researcher, teacher and reader to *interpret* the Word of the Creator with His Own Word, because nothing in His Word is of man. Understanding the levels and *subdivisions* will also assist every person to first seek to understand the Word as it is Written and Given to mankind from the Creator (after all, this is the Word of the Father to His Children; the Word *at first glance* from the Father).

The BIBLE, His Word, *is* His Creation! Thereafter, a scholar, teacher, researcher or reader can attempt to seek for the different deeper meanings in the Word of the Creator. These

subdivisions will also assist a reader to *acknowledge* deeper meanings within every text, but it will take hours and hours (can be years for a person with a "daily" work) of study to implement the knowledge hence to interpret the hints and mysteries with the Word of the Creator (Scripture). Scripture must interpret Scripture in any level!

For centuries writers and readers made the mistake to *divide* the BIBLE into two different Books: into the O.T. and the N.T. where the Word of the O.T. is "different" from the Word in the N.T. or the Word of the N.T. "replaced" the Word of the O.T.

This is totally not Scriptural. There is only One Creator and He has only One Word / Voice!

1.5 THESIS, ANTITHESIS, HYPOTHESIS AND SYNTHESIS

The Word of HaShem spoken from the *very beginning* became Flesh (John 1.1) and *faith* is to *believe* that the Word is from the Father and that HaShem did the *works* by His Word (John 14.10). Yahshua, the Word in Flesh, said nothing on His own initiative, but HaShem spoke the Word. Scripture also declares that HaShem and Yahshua the Word is Echad (One) (John 10.30; 1 John 5.7). The Messiah *is* Hebrew. Therefore, with all the evidence of the *Oneness* we must admit that the Creator Father spoke Hebrew. More confirmation is the fact that all the Prophets were also Hebrew.

When the Apostolic Scripts were canonized, all the Christian church fathers *admitted* the TaNaKh (O.T.) as the Hebrew Bible. The Messiah spoke Hebrew to His disciples and Apostles when He taught them. The Apostles also "studied" and taught from the Scripts of the Prophets. Parables were given from the Mashiach, which has deeper meanings within, and Scripture has to reveal all [hints], deeper meanings and "hidden" secrets.⁵⁴

The Word of HaShem is the only Source / Manual to verify the Truth (or lies / falsehoods) from literature written by man or woman. The BIBLE was indeed written by men, but the Eternal Creator Almighty (Avinu Malkheinu) was the Creator of the BIBLE!⁵⁵ It is ultimate the *only* communication between HaShem the Creator and humankind. All other sources and literature must be weighed up / compared with the BIBLE for verifying the Truth.

⁵⁴ 2 Pet 1.19-21

⁵⁵ See citation 6

Hopefully this thesis can develop such a skill, knowledge and wisdom that I can become a specialist person within this field and the Masters Degree *for research* definitely added to the knowledge and wisdom to undertake the Doctors Degree. The fact that I keep on being a scholar in the Word of the Creator enables me to *continue studying* the Word of YHVH and His Torah and the result is to teach others to study / read the Word correctly. Teaching the Word definitely strengthens the knowledge and wisdom further and assists me in my own life to *walk His Way*, like GOD said:

*"Look, I have taught you laws and rulings, just as Adonai my God ordered me, so that you can behave accordingly in the land where you are going in order to take possession of it. Therefore, observe them; and follow them; for then all peoples will see you as having **wisdom and understanding**. When they hear of all these laws, they will say, 'This great nation is surely a **wise and understanding** people.' For what great nation is there that has God as close to them as Adonai our God is, whenever we call on him? What great nation is there that has laws and rulings as just as this entire Torah which I am setting before you today? Only be careful, and watch yourselves diligently as long as you live, so that you won't forget what you saw with your own eyes, **so that these things won't vanish from your hearts. Rather, make them known to your children and grandchildren** –" (CJB Deut 4.5-9)*

*"My people are destroyed for want of **knowledge**. Because you rejected **knowledge**, I will also reject you as cohen (priest) for Me. **Because you forgot the Torah of your God, I will also forget your children.**" (CJB Hos 4.6)*

Hypothesis as Thesis Statement:

The BIBLE Created by HaShem's Word according the Existence of His Sanctuary.

Antithesis:

The complete BIBLE has been given to mankind, but "Christianity" *neglects / rejects* the TaNaKh when studying the Writings of the Aposltes / Emissaries and Revelation; and Orthodox Jewish people reject / neglect the Writings of the Messianic Jewish Followers

Research is the process of elimination, whatever remains is the truth^{Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx}
like Sha'ul, Yochanan, Kepha⁵⁶, Ya'akov⁵⁷, Matthiyahu, Luke, etc. "Christians" claim the Word of YHVH does not have to be used as His literal Word direct to mankind for Scripture interpretation.

Synthesis:

The wholeness of the BIBLE, the Only Interpretation to understand the foundational Truth of the Word.

⁵⁶ Hebrew name for Peter

⁵⁷ Hebrew name for James

CHAPTER 2

Background and Foundation of the Research

2.1	Definitions and terms	20
2.2	Definitions and interpretations in the BIBLE	23
2.3.1	Research Methodology	27
2.3.2	Demarcation of Research	29
2.3.3	Scope and Limitations	30
2.3.4	Choice of Citation Style	31
2.4	Introductory Paragraph	31
2.5	Holistic Overview of the BIBLE as a whole	32
2.5.1	Existence of the BIBLE	32
	• TaNaKh	34
2.5.2	Canonocity of the TaNaKh	45
2.5.3	Formation of the TaNaKh Canon	46
2.5.4	TaNaKh and the Apocrypha	47
2.5.5	Messia[h]nic Writings	49
2.5.6	Messianic Writings Apocrypha	54
2.5.7	Manuscripts of the TaNaKh	55
2.5.8	Manuscripts of the Messianic Writings	56
2.5.9	The End is declared from the Beginning	57
	• Beginning is / in Genesis	58
	• End is / in Revelation	64
2.6	Summary of facts established	66

2.1. DEFINITIONS AND TERMS

Yahshua: The Messiah, as His parents would have addressed Him in Hebrew. The meaning of the **Almighty's** Name, the **Word of GOD** in *Flesh*: **Yah** = **GOD** and **shua** = **save**, "**GOD SAVE**", thus GOD gave the Name **Yahshua**,⁵⁸ because **He** is "**GOD is Salvation**". The Name "Jesus" is only 400 years old.⁵⁹

YAHUAH / YHVH: [Yod-Heh-Vav-Heh] The Name of the Creator in Hebrew written with four consonants, known as Tetragrammaton, (YHVH / YHWH, the "V", "W" or "U" is the same letter "VAW" in the Hebrew alefbeit) and as GOD / YAH to the world. Pronunciations are: YeHoVaH, YaHuVaH, YeHVah, YaHVah; from here the Names Jehovah, Yahvah / Yaweh. YHVH is a Sacred Name and not used at all by Jewish believers, (only in some prayers). The Third Commandment of the Ten Commandments says clearly that the Name should not be used in vain and disrespectful, therefore do the use of His Name YAHUAH to show the [Y]AWE[H]SOMENESS of His Name. It is a Word put together actually with breathing from the stomach when the consonants are spoken. It is the ultimate One-and-Only Creator and Saviour of all creation:

"God said further to Moshe, "Say this to the people of Isra'el: 'Yud-Heh-Vav-Heh (יהוה)⁶⁰ [Adonai], the God of your fathers, the God of Avraham, the God of Yitz'chaq and the God of Ya'acov, has sent me to you.' This is my name forever; this is how I AM to be remembered generation after generation." (CJB Exo 3.15)

יהודה = YHUDH = YAHUDAH

Just take the letter "dalet" (ד) away for the pronunciation of YHUH...

יהוה = YHUH = YAHUAH

The letter "VAV" / "UAU" (U / V / W) forms the "oo" as in "mood" sound.

⁵⁸ The Name Above all Names, He-Shem, Followers of Yah - <http://ha-shem.followersofyah.com/Part2.html>; 01/10/2014. Luke 1.31 from the exeGeses Companion Bible (ECB): "And behold, you conceive in your womb and birth a son: and call his name Yah Shua."

⁵⁹ The letter "J", Followers of Yah - <http://theletterj.followersofyah.com/>; 01/10/2014.

The letter "J", Wikipedia - <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/J>; 01/10/2004.

The letter "J", StackExchange - <http://english.stackexchange.com/questions/148399/if-the-letter-j-is-only-400-500-years-old-was-there-a-j-sound-that-preceded-the>; 01/10/2014.

⁶⁰ Stong's Hebrew and Greek Dictionary: **H3068:** יהוה – y^ehōvâh: From **H1961**; (the) self Existent or eternal; Jehovah, Jewish national name of God: - Jehovah, the Lord. Compare **H3050**, **H3069**.

Comments from the Treasury of Scriptural Knowledge:

*"this is My Name for ever"⁶¹: The Name here referred to is that which immediately precedes, יהוה, [Strong's H3068], Yehowah, which we translate "Lord", the Name by which God had been known from the creation of the world (Gen_2:2), and by which He is known to the present day. יהוה, Yehowah, from הוה, hawah, to be, subsist, signifies "He who is", or "subsists", i.e., eminently and in a manner superior to all other beings; and is essentially the same with אהיה, **ehyeh**, "I AM", in the preceding verse. Psa_72:17, Psa_72:19, Psa_135:13, Psa_145:1-2; Isa_9:6, Isa_63:12"*

Ruach HaKodesh: The Holy (**Set-Apart**) Spirit of YHVH.

Echad: YAHUAH, Messiah, Ruach haKodesh and the Word are *simply One*, and only One⁶². Not three, not a Trinity, but a **"Unitary One"**! There is only One Throne in Heaven Rev 4:2, not two (2).

Torah: The first five Books (Chamash in Hebrew) of the BIBLE written by Moshe also known as the Pentateuch and known by the "church" as the Law of Moses. Torah is the letter "T" in the TaNaKh.

Nevi'im: The Writings of all the Prophets included in the Old Covenant (TaNaKh). The letter "N" in the TaNaKh

Khetuvim: The other Writings in the Old Covenant, i.e. Psalms, Proverbs, Song of Songs, etc. It is also spelled Chetuvim. Khetuvim is the "KH" or "CH" in the TaNa**Kh**.

TaNaKh: The acronym T-N-K representing the Torah, **N**evi'im and the **K**hetuvim in the Hebrew BIBLE, which is known as the Old Covenant/Testament by Believers. This acronym with vowels is pronounced as the word **TaNaKh** or TaNaCh.

⁶¹ Deut 4.39

⁶² <http://www.torahofmessiah.com/elohim.html> (16/04/2014)

<http://lhim.org/blog/2013/09/29/what-does-the-hebrew-word-echad-mean/> (16/04/2014)

Messiah[nic] Writings: The Writings during the Messiah's time in the first century. The Books in the BIBLE also known as the New Covenant / Testament or the B'rit Chadashah as it is called in Hebrew. The Messianic Writings were the Authors of Believers and Apostles in the "era" of the Messiah. **These Books were not written in the first century!** The canon was only assembled together as canonized during the fourth / fifth century!

HaMashiach: Hebrew for "The Messiah".⁶³ In Greek it means Χριστός "Khristos"⁶⁴, which was translated to "Christ" and to "Christus" (in Afrikaans) direct from Greek; and means "the Anointed one [to be] King".

Shabbat: The seventh / last day of the week (Yom Shebi'i in Hebrew) known in the Gregorian calendar (which was eventually changed by pope Gregory XIII in the 15th century) as Saturday (named after a Greek goddess "Saturnalia" by the Romans, Sunday was named after the Greek god "Sol"). The word Shabbat means *Rest* or *to Cease*.

Yisra'El: Hebrew for Israel. The Word direct from the Creator Himself. The name YAHUAH gave to Ya'acov. Yisrael represents both the Two Houses in the Word of YHVH, comprising of the Two Southern Kingdoms (Judah and Benjamin – Levi was chosen by YAHUAH to teach and preach to the Tribes) and the Northern Ten Lost Tribes (Israel). At the *end* they *will* form again together the House of Yisrael, the *heir* of YAHUAH.

Y'hudah: The House of Yahudah / Judah. *Jews* continued from this Tribe and from the word Y'hudah / Judah.

2.2 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS FROM WITHIN THE BIBLE

⁶³ Portraits of Messiah, Messiah 3 - <http://www.messiah3.org/portraits.htm>; 01/10/2014.

⁶⁴ Christos, Biblehub - <http://biblehub.com/greek/5547.htm>; 08/04/2014.

2.3.1 RESEARCH METHODOLOGY

☆ Historical and Philosophical

PRDS (PaRDeS) method is used for ages as fundamental principles *to cancel man's own interpretation* of the Word of GOD, the Creator. This is a Historical and Philosophical research of interpretation and understanding, used by rabbinical teachers which are mostly Hebrew or *converted* to Hebrew. The meaning of the Word Hebrew in Hebrew is "Crossing over", which means in "theology term" to *crossover* from the *traditions and rules of men* to the ***traditions and rules of YHVH***. This Jewish Hebrew rabbinical method will be introduced to better interpret and understand the Word of Ha Shem in the complete sense of the Word. The social-culture factors are reasons the existing *pattern* and layout of the BIBLE is not accepted or acknowledged by different believers, therefore is the historical and philosophical *context* when study or reading the BIBLE on eyesight of immense importance.

☆ Descriptive

The pattern of order will be proven in Scripture only from the Word. The systematic order and flow will also be described from various Scripture texts to emphasize the "flow" of the Word and to understand the deeper meaning of the Words of Mashiach. The Creator is a GOD of order!⁶⁵

☆ Literature review

The literature reviewed is predominantly literature (which includes evidence) from accredited authors, focusing on the historical existence of the Messiah as Jewish and the existence / arise of "Christianity". Literatures used by Christianity- and Judaism believers have been studied and will be mentioned throughout the studies. BIBLE exegesis as part of hermeneutics has to be taught to believers to ensure correct and true interpretation from

⁶⁵ CJB Mal 3:6: "***But because I, Adonai, do not change***, you sons of Ya`akov will not be destroyed." WOY John 8:57-58: "Why, you're not yet fifty years old," the Judeans replied, "and you have Avraham?" Yeshua said to them, "Yes, indeed! ***Before Avraham came into being, I AM!***" CJB Isa 45:18: "For thus says Adonai, who created the heavens, God, ***who shaped and made the earth***, who established and ***created it not to be chaos***, but formed it to be lived in: "I am Adonai; there is no other." CJB Num 8:4: "Here is how the menorah was made: it was hammered gold from its base to its flowers, hammered work, ***following the pattern Adonai had shown Moshe***. This is how he made the menorah."

Scripture is made and that own personal interpretation of the Word of GOD is not permitted at all. There is one principle from PaRDeS to be remembered and to be used by believers and it is that *Scripture has to be interpreted only from Scripture*.

Studies regarding the "church" and "Christianity" in the previous degree (Masters) forms a huge part for the decision and encouragement of this research. A *gap* has been identified between Orthodox Judaism and Christianity, and the reason for this *gap* is purely because of human's *own personal* interpretation of the BIBLE in totality; whereby certain *vital* Scripture / Texts are rejected. The matter of fact is that the literal Living Word of the Creator as His only Communication to humankind is then actually rejected, which makes one guilty of *idolatry*.

The *compilation* of the Tanakh and the Messianic Writings has to be understood by believers as the *creation* of GOD, to realise that the one cannot be read without the other. The Writings of Mashiach continues to *flow* from the Writings of the Prophets, to acknowledge the *truth* of the Prophecies given by the Creator!

The "New Testament" *is not* a new set of rules, instructions or teachings from GOD and can be a very confusing *term* introduced by *man*, but it *is in fact* Testimonies from GOD and the *fulfilment* of Prophecies and Prophecies to be for the Garden (Kingdom) of GOD the Creator. Prophecies like:

- ✧ The First Coming of the Messiah (Mashiach ben Yosef – the Suffering Messiah)⁶⁶,
- ✧ The Second Coming of the Messiah (Mashiach ben David – the Reigning Messiah)⁶⁷,
- ✧ The Way to follow in the *Footsteps* of haMashiach, the same Way of GOD the Creator,
- ✧ What it means to be a *Set-Apart* (Holy) nation to GOD,
- ✧ The *Oneness* of GOD the Eternal Father,
- ✧ Hidden secrets *revealed* of what it takes to be part of the *Bride to be*,
- ✧ Acknowledgement of the *existence* of sin,
- ✧ what it means to live according the exact *faith* of our Patriarchs to sit with them on the right hand of the Creator GOD,
- ✧ Hidden secret *revealed* why haMashiach had to Come as a *Suffering* Messiah before He could Come as the *Reigning* Messiah,

⁶⁶ Sixty five Prophecies fulfilled precisely according the Word to the Prophets exactly on the day and hour.

⁶⁷ Two Hundred fifty nine Prophecies partly already fulfilled and still to be fulfilled according the Word to the Prophets by the Creator, which will surely also happen on the day and hour as He Prophesied.

- ✧ The revelation of the House of Y'hudah (Judah) and Ephraim that becomes one House again, the *wholeness* of the House of Yisra'El (Ya'acov – Jacob),
- ✧ Consequences when neglecting / rejecting the Teachings and Instructions of GOD,
- ✧ Entering the Garden (Kingdom / Sanctuary) of GOD.

✧ **Developmental**

This study and research will be an investigation and proof of definite patterns and sequences mentioned within Scripture to understand and to interpret the Word correctly. This study will also be developmental as a *model* to use for the *restoration* of GOD's Word to use *all* Scripture for understanding, teaching and correction in our *walk of life* (halachah).

"All Scripture is God-breathed and is valuable for teaching the truth, convicting of sin, correcting faults and training in right living;" (2 Tim 3:16)

✧ **Qualitative**

An intensive study in the fundamental principles of the PaRDeS method will be included to verify if it is applicable to the field of research in conjunction with Scripture. Scripture has more than sufficient qualitative proof to cancel any research problems.

2.3.2 DEMARCATION OF RESEARCH

- ✧ The very Word of HaShem is the most important aspect of humankind and creation to know the Creator's *Character* for human's future existence and *Path* to the Kingdom.
- ✧ The Torah is the direct Word of HaShem spoken to man through Moshe and **it is the only** Way / Path for humankind and **it is** the literal Word to mankind by the Creator Himself; and the Prophets of HaShem elaborated the Torah in their Prophecies. Yahshua HaMashiach walked the Torah on earth and showed us how to do it (His yoke)⁶⁸, which must be [the] Light and is not heavy / burdensome⁶⁹.

⁶⁸ Matt 11:29-30

⁶⁹ 1 John 5:3

- ☆ To summarize, Jew and Greek (Gentile means all other nations apart from the Jews) need to study the Torah with correct *Hermeneutics* and *Exegesis* to understand the full meaning of the *renewal of the Covenant* from the "Lord our GOD". To realise the purpose of the TaNaKh and Messianic Writings and their intergration in *conjunction* with one another, meaning that the Prophecies within is ONE Book and not two separate Books, will prove to the reader together they form the **complete** Word of HaShem / BIBLE for:

- understanding,
- teaching of the truth,
- knowledge and wisdom between right and wrong,
- the convicting of sin,
- training in "right living";

because salvation will come from the **fruit**. Therefore, Torah (the literal Word of HaShem) is not the *root of salvation*, but Torah (the literal Word of HaShem) is the *fruit of salvation* (obedience).

2.3.3 Scope and limitations

Scope:

- ☆ The following Bibles will be utilised: E-Sword Electronic Bibles, Complete Jewish Bible, New King James Version Bible, Restoration Scriptures: The Word of YHVH, The Hebraic Roots Version Scriptures, The Interlinear Bible – Hebrew-Greek-English, Pad van Waarheid tot die Lewe, Aramaic English New Translation, exeGesis Companion Bible, exeGesis Ready Research Bible and other translations will be cited when they are utilised.
- ☆ Hebrew names and words will be used when ever needed for better interpretation.
- ☆ Definitions within the BIBLE will be identified and cited whenever necessary to proof and to motivate views of interest.
- ☆ The Torah will be used as the basis of the direct Word from HaShem.

- ✧ Literature regarding PaRDeS, Exegeses and Hermeneutics from various authors and institutions that have been used for BIBLE interpretation, and will be cited and explained. This research is not solely to prove the formulation of the BIBLE is according to one method, but to ensure that the complete BIBLE given to mankind in whichever language translated, are read and interpreted correctly by using the fundamental principles of the above rules as guidance for Biblical reading / studying / Exegesis.
- ✧ The BIBLE will be the only source to verify and to confirm a statement from the BIBLE. Anything in the Messianic Writings has to be confirmed / verified from the TaNaKh. Interpretation from any BIBLE Script has to come from the Holy Scriptures and Scriptures have to be ultimately acknowledged and accepted to read and understand Revelation.

Limitations:

- ✧ Limitation will be on the Islamic religion, but might be mentioned and cited for further self-study.

2.3.4. Choice of citation style

- ✧ Choice of citation will be the MLA Method.
- ✧ Footnotes will be used, as seen within this dissertation.
- ✧ For Bibliography, MLA style will be used.

2.4 INTRODUCTION

A II

2.5 THE ONENESS (ECHADNESS) OF THE CREATOR

The Creator made it very clear to humanity that there is and can be only One GOD and He is that One I AM. The Creator has based His Oneness as the Foundation and Pillar to love Him in the first three Commands within the Ten Commandments carved in Stone by His Works and with His Voice / Word:

*"Then **God said all these words:** ✕ **I am Adonai your God**, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the abode of slavery. ☐ **"You are to have no other gods before me.** You are not to make for yourselves a carved image or any kind of representation of anything in heaven above, on the earth beneath or in the water below the shoreline. You are not to bow down to them or serve them; **for I, Adonai your God, am a jealous God**, punishing the children for the sins of the parents to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me, but displaying grace to the thousandth generation of those who love me and obey my mitzvot. ♪*

***"You are not to use lightly the name of Adonai your God**, because Adonai will not leave unpunished someone who uses his name lightly." (CJB Exo 20.1-7)*

To know and to understand the Creator and His Almightyness, a person needs to really understand Genesis, but more so Genesis Chapter 1. The Creator's Heart and Character was perfectly defined and described in the *five* Books of Moshe (called the Chamash). Everything the Creator loves and all things that are not Set-Apart (Holy) to Him have been given to humankind / all people *literally* from His Voice / Word *direct* from Heaven, identifying and explaining the Character and Love of YAHUAH. *For* humankind to observe and to know / keep to be / become Set-Apart as He is, because He is Set-Apart (Holy)⁷⁰!

⁷⁰ For example: CJB Exo 20.8: ♪ *"Remember the day, Shabbat, to set it apart for God."*

BBE Lev 11.44: *"For I am the Lord your God: for this reason, make and keep yourselves holy, for I am holy; you are not to make yourselves unclean with any sort of thing which goes about flat on the earth."*

CJB Lev 19.2: *"Speak to the entire community of Isra'el; tell them, **'You people are to be holy because I, Adonai your God, am holy.'**"*

There are an enormous amount of text / Word spoken by YAHUAH Commanding people to be a Set-Apart, Holy, separate, divided or select nation to Him, because He is Holy and Set-Apart. HaMashiach Who dwelled on earth came to do *exactly* what the Creator Spoke and Commanded, never to change or to amend any of the given Instructions and sanctification or Holiness of the Word of YAHUAH. The precise Word became Flesh!

Now, pastors and preachers try to argue facts regarding the authenticity and sanctification of the creation(s) and if it was really written by Moshe. The fact is so many Prophets and Apostles (citing the *direct* Words of haMashiach while in Flesh on earth) confirm / cite these Books as the Torah / Law of Moshe or Moshe's Writings, which cannot be neglected / rejected. Whatever were created / made Holy by the Creator, through His Word, was honoured and observed as Holy (Set-Apart) by all the Prophets, Apostles and haMashiach, the Word in Flesh. It was and can never be changed:

*"If ye had known me, ye should have known my Father also: and from henceforth ye know him, and have seen him. Philip saith unto him, Master, show us the Father, and it sufficeth us. Yahshua saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? he that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Show us the Father? Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? **the words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth the works.** Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father in me: **or else believe me for the very works' sake.**" (WOY John 14.7-11)*

Moshe might not have been on earth during the creation, lifetime of Adam and Eve, Noah and the Flood or Avraham's life, but what cannot be argued is the fact that the Creator chose Moshe to Write down and teach everything *He wanted to be known* to humankind; in perfect order, because the end was set / declared *from* the very beginning.⁷¹

WOY Lev 20.7-8, 25-26: "Sanctify yourselves therefore, and **be ye holy: for I am Yahweh your Elohim.** 8 And ye shall keep my statutes, and do them: I am Yahweh which sanctify you. 25 Ye shall therefore put difference between clean beasts and unclean, and between unclean fowls and clean: and ye shall not make **your souls** abominable by beast, or by fowl, or by any manner of living thing that creepeth on the ground, **which I (Yahweh) have separated from you as unclean.** 26 And ye shall be holy unto me: **for I Yahweh am holy, and have severed** (separate / divide / select) **you from other people, that ye should be mine.**"

⁷¹ CJB Isa 46.10 "At the beginning I announce the end, proclaim in advance things not yet done; and I say that my plan will hold, I will do everything I please to do."

The Creator, the GOD Almighty (El Shaddai - אֵל שַׁדַּי), in His Name (Shem - שֵׁם) He is the One (Echad) and *only* Lord (Adonai / YHVH / YAHUAH - ⁷²יְהוָה) GOD (Elohim - אֱלֹהִים) and Eternity Father (Avinu Malkheinu), the first and last Who *exists*! This was mentioned and *explicitly commanded* from the very beginning *right through* till more mysticism was revealed in Revelations.

2.5.1 In THE NAME of I AM

The Creator *explicitly* said to Moshe He is *the* YHVH Elohim (LORD GOD) of our Patriarchs (fathers) Avraham, Yitz'chaq and Ya'acov. Moshe must teach the children of Yisra'el (Ya'acov) diligently **forever**⁷³ till *eternity* (olam) His Name (Shem), i.e.: I AM WHAT I AM (Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh). When Moshe addresses Yisra'el he must tell them I AM (Ehyeh from the root word Hayah) has send him to them and *every generation* must teach their children *diligently* the Name (HaShem) as Elohim has commanded till **eternity**:

"God said to Moshe, "Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh [I am/will be what I am/will be]," and added, "Here is what to say to the people of Isra'el: 'Ehyeh [I Am or I Will Be] has sent me to you.'" (CJB Exo 3.14)

The Creator introduces HaShem (The / His Name) to the people as **YHVH / YAHUAH Elohim** of their fathers (Patriarchs) and the Name he *had to* use was **EHYEH** (I AM), *forever and ever* His memorial / remembrance Name.

True believers, who listened to this Command *and* knew HaShem, had to teach their children for *generation after generation* (forever) YHVH Elohim is the *only* EHYEH (I AM). If it was so people would *still* today knew HaShem (The Name) as One Elohim (GOD)!

⁷² Hebrew Old Testament (Tanach) with Strong's numbers (exactly the same as the King James Version with Strong's numbers) HOT+ / KJV+ H3068: יְהוָה – y'hôvâh: From H1961; (the) *self Existent* or eternal; *Jehovah*, Jewish national name of God: - Jehovah, the Lord. Compare H3050, H3069.

⁷³ KJV+ H5769: עַלְמִים 'ôlâm: From H5956; properly *concealed*, that is, the *vanishing* point; generally time *out of mind* (past or future), that is, (practically) *eternity*; frequentative adverbially (especially with prepositional prefix) *always*: - always (-s), ancient (time), any more, continuance, eternal, (for, [n-]) ever (-lasting, -more, of old), lasting, long (time), (of) old (time), perpetual, at any time, (beginning of the) world (+ without end). Compare H5331, H5703.

For a moment, let's return to the Words of Elohim spoken to the Prophet in Isa 46.10 where He said He declared *everything* from the beginning and His *plan* / order will hold. HaShem was also declared from the very beginning as only One and will hold till the end *to be* One! YAHUAH Elohim said that He is I AM what I AM and it also means HE / I WILL BE what I WILL BE (Exo 3.14).

HE IS (I AM) the only Adonai YHVH / YAHUAH Elohim and HE WILL BE the only Adonai YHVH Elohim *forever*. Elohim in fact says HE WILL BE haMashiach EHYEH HaShem (HE / I WILL BE the Messiah in The Name of I AM)! With proper and correct Exegesis Scripture (of I AM) must be proved / interpreted with Scripture to verify what is said regarding I AM is haMashiach.

Yochanan (John) who was taught according the Torah⁷⁴ and knew the Torah⁷⁵ verified the I AM (EHYEH) is haMashiach with the *direct* Living Word (Words of Y'shua) to him. It was revealed to Yochanan from the very beginning from Chapter 1, and now haMashiach confirmed it with these *direct* Words as the Master Rabbi⁷⁶:

*"Avraham, your father, was glad that he would see **My** day; then he saw it and was overjoyed." "Why, you're not yet fifty years old," the Judeans replied, "and you have seen Avraham?" Yeshua said to them, "Yes, indeed! Before Avraham came into being, **I AM!**" (CJB John 8.56-58)*

⁷⁴ WOY John 5.45-47: *"But don't think that it is I who will be your accuser before the Father. Do you know who will accuse you? Moshe, the very one you have counted on! For if you really believed Moshe, you would believe me (Messiah); because it was about me (Messiah) that he wrote. But if you don't believe what he wrote, how are you going to believe what I (Messiah) say?"*

⁷⁵ The very first verse from Yochanan (*"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God"*) cites the very first verse of Beresheet (Genesis) (*"In the beginning God created [with His Word] the heavens and the earth"*) by acknowledging the Word came from Elohim and Elohim came to earth in the form of haMashiach just like it was Prophesied in 59 Prophecies by the Prophets, including Moshe. Yochanan knew the Prophecy given to Ya'acov regarding the gathering of Yisra'el (Ya'acov's children as many as the grains on the earth in Gen 28.14: *"Your descendants will be as numerous as the grains of dust on the earth"*) and the fact that Elohim speaks from Heaven (Gen 28.12) to all that belief in the One true YHVH Elohim.

Yochanan, a Jewish person, knew the *eternal command* of Pesach given to Moshe in HaShem of YHVH Elohim to teach the *descendants* of Ya'acov (Yisra'el) to keep this Feast as an *ordinance* forever: *"And this day shall be unto you for a memorial; and ye shall keep it a feast to Yahweh throughout your generations; ye shall keep it a feast by an ordinance for ever."* (WOY Exo 12.14)

Yochanan knew Elohim said in the Torah / Law to Moshe, a Prophet will *arise* and speak everything Elohim spoke and will be *known* in the Word of Elohim and it will be in HaShem (The Name) and Yochanan knew HaShem is haMashiach!

⁷⁶ Just to name one incident: CJB John 9.2: *"His talmidim asked him, "Rabbi, who sinned — this man or his parents — to cause him to be born blind?"*

Yochanan knew the end was declared / set from the beginning and everything Avinu Malkheinu (Eternity Father) said from the beginning has a plan in an order and will happen just as YAHUAH Prophesied through His Prophets⁷⁷. Yochanan knew everything Written in the Books by the Prophets and *confirmed* it in his Book and Elohim gave it to him to Wrote:

*"Philip found Natan'el and told him, "We've found the one that Moshe wrote about in the **Torah, also the Prophets** — it's Yeshua Ben-Yosef from Natzeret!" (CJB John 1.[46] 45)*

Surely then Yochanan knew the Script of Isaiah and the Prophecy regarding Avinu Malkheinu will come to earth and be born as a normal Child and will be forever El Shaddai (Almighty GOD), I AM, the "**BEING outside the world**":

"For unto us a Child is born, Unto us a Son is given; And the government will be upon His shoulder. And His name will be called Wonderful, Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace." (NKJV Isa 9.[6] 5)

Now that it was revealed with Scripture that the Great I AM⁷⁸ was *among* human lives as the Son of Man⁷⁹, more evidence must be gathered from Scripture to reveal the Great I AM is One ABBA, One YHVH / YAHUAH, One Elohim with One Word and One with the Messiah. They are *not* two separate identities nor three or more, but One:

"I and the Father are one." (CJB John 10.30)

Mashiach taught that He is GOD in the way the Jews understood GOD and the way the Hebrew Scriptures portrayed GOD, not in the way the New Age movement or religions understands GOD. There is only One I AM, and He was the One I AM on earth!

⁷⁷ WOY Amos 3.7: *"Surely the Sovereign Yahweh will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets."*

⁷⁸ Here follows commentary from the *Treasury of Scriptural Knowledge (TSK)*: "**I am**: That our Lord by this expression asserted **his divinity** and **eternal existence**, as the **great I AM**, appears evident from the use of the present tense, instead of the past tense, from its being in answer to the Jews, who enquired whether he had seen Abraham, and from its being thus understood by the multitude, who were exasperated at it to such a degree that they took up stones to stone him. The ancient Jews not only believed that the **Messiah** was superior to and Lord of all the patriarchs, **and even of angels**, but that his celestial nature existed with God from whom it emanated, **before the creation**, and that the creation was effected by his ministry." 27/02/2015

⁷⁹ CJB Matt 8.20: *"Yeshua said to him, "The foxes have holes, and the birds flying about have nests, but the Son of Man has no home of his own." Matt 18.11 "For the Son of Man came to save the lost."*

Mashiach said Himself He is a Jew and a Hebrew. All the Prophets were Hebrew and the Word was given in Hebrew to all the Prophets! Mashaich knew the Word through the Prophets definitely according the Hebrew Way YAHUAH Prophetised the Word.

YAHUAH Prophetised that He will reveal the "Son of Man" to the world:

"I was looking in the night visions. And behold! One like the Son of Man came with the clouds of the heavens. And He came to the Ancient of Days. And they brought Him near before Him. And dominion was given to Him, and glory, and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion which shall not pass away, and His kingdom that which shall not be destroyed." (LITV Dan 7.13-14)

Luke confirmed this Prophecy of Dani'el:

"And then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and much glory. Dan. 7:13" (LITV Luke 21.27)

YAHUAH explicitly said hundreds of times He is the only ELOHIM / GOD and no one is and can be like Him or equal to Him! Still people want to make "Jesus" *like* and *equal* to YAHUAH Elohim.

The "Son of GOD" is in fact a confirmation that Yah Shua haMashiach is YAHUAH Elohim and not another deity or person, because He is ONE and He is **THE** Avinu Malcheinu (Everlasting Father), El Shaddai (Almighty El / Yah), Prince of Shalom (Saviour) and the Alef (First / Alpha) and Tav (Last / Omega).

The Jewish leaders wanted to stone Mashiach to death when He said He is the Son of Elohim / GOD (John 10.36), because He announced Himself as YAHUAH Elohim (John 10.33). All the Prophecies explicitly said that the Creator will *generate* the Child and the Son of Man, but He will be with no exception the Almighty YAHUAH Elohim, known as the Mashiach who will Come and will Return to be the Everlasting Almighty YAHUAH Elohim!

When sheep is called a son of a sheep, the son stays a sheep. The same with a son of a dog is a dog and a son of a cat is a cat, a son of a pig is a pig. Therefore, Son of GOD is

GOD! The Instruction from the Creator to man was to go and multiply. Animals multiplied, but YAHUAH Elohim said He is the *only* YAHUAH Elohim. The first Three Commandments were explicitly created by Elohim to ensure humanity remember He is the ONLY Father and YAHUAH (Lord) and Elohim (GOD)!

"Christiannity" believes that there is a "three-in-one God" who exists in three distinct, equal Persons: the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit (trinity). "Christianity" accept freely that the Word became Alive in Flesh (which is in fact GOD in Flesh) and that the Word one and the same is as the Mashiach (their Jesus). Still so many times did the Word in Flesh say that He is ONE with the Father YAHUAH *and not another* GOD or deity, but a "belief system" was created and they split the Almighty Creator into two or three deities!

Dani'el, a Prophet of YAHUAH and the seed of Mashiach Prophesied that it will happen:

"He will speak words against the Most High and try to exhaust the holy ones of the Most High. He will attempt to alter the seasons and the law; and [the holy ones] will be handed over to him for a time, times and half a time." (CJB Dan 7.25)

Dani'el's Prophecy regarding the Coming of the Mashiach clearly illustrated that people will reject, corrupt and pervert the Torah of YAHUAH (Dan 9.4-9). This corruption and perversion of the Torah leads to not knowing the True Character and Authority of the Creator YAHUAH Elohim as the only "LORD GOD".

People will be *ashamed* before the Creator, the ONE who lead His people from the hands of the Egyptians (Dan 9.15), because of sin and unrighteousness. The ONE who said He is YAHUAH Elohim gave people His Torah to understand and to know the Creator and how to love another on earth, and to not live in sin / unrighteousness. When Mashiach comes He will know who were unholy and who were unrighteous because of sin: people who did not listen to YAHUAH Elohim's Voice / Word:

"We didn't listen to the voice of Adonai our God, so that we could live by his laws, which he presented to us through his servants the prophets." (CJB Dan 9.10)

*"And **He has confirmed His Words** which He spoke against us, and against our judges who judge us, by bringing on us a great evil. For under the whole heavens it has not been done as it has been done to Jerusalem. **As it is written in the Law of Moses**, all this evil has come on us. Yet we did not make our prayer before Jehovah our God **that we might turn from our perversities and understand Your truth**. And Jehovah has looked on the evil and has made it come on us. **For Jehovah our God is righteous in all His works which He does. For we did not obey His voice**. And now, O **Lord our God**, who brought Your people out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand and **made for Yourself a name, as it is this day**; we have sinned; we have done evilly. O Lord, I pray to You, **according to all Your righteousness**, let Your anger and Your fury be turned away from Your city Jerusalem, Your holy mountain. **For because of our sins and of our fathers' iniquities**, Jerusalem and Your people have become a reproach to all those around us." (LITV Dan 9.12-16)*

The "trinity" divided (split) ELOHIM / GOD into three "gods" and *replaced* the Word to the Prophets with the Word in Flesh, which is ONE and the same Word. If the Word / GOD in Flesh replaced the Word of YAHUAH to the Prophets (which is definitely not so), was the Word of YAHUAH Creator a lie and corrupt to His people for 4,000 years!

People reject the Word of YAHUAH and instead people belief that the Apostles wrote against the Word of YAHUAH. Just as Dani'el Prophesied before the coming of the Messiah. Dani'el saw the future things that was going to happen and the unrighteousness and lawlessness that is going to rule the world, which gave him a tremendous fright and he kept it all in his *heart* (Dan 7.28).

The Book of Revelation (Revealing of the Truth and of Prophecy) **reveals** the Prophecy of Dani'el of these beasts / animals in Chapters 11 to 13 and 17 that he spoke the truth. People cannot separate the Torah from the Prophecy (Rev 22.14-15), because then people separate the Word of YAHUAH from His Voice. People then also make another "god" equal to the ONE and only GOD by replacing the Alef and Tav YAHUAH (Isa 41.4; 44.6; 48.12) with another Alef and Tav deity.

Yochanan saw YAHUAHElohim as the Alef and Tav (אָלף וְתָו) – Hebrew New Testament) who came and will come as the Mashiach, and not as a separate Elohim:

"I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending, saith Yahweh El, which is, and which was, and which is to come, Shaddai." (WOY Rev 1.8)

*"And I heard as a sound of a numerous crowd, and as a sound of many waters, and as a sound of strong thunders, saying, Hallelujah! **Because the Lord God Almighty reigned.** And He has on His garment and on His thigh a name having been written: KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS." (LITV Rev 19.6, 16)*

*"And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and **Yahweh Elohim of the holy Prophets** sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. Behold, **I come quickly**: blessed is he that keepeth the sayings of the prophecy of this book." (WOY Rev 22.6-7)*

YAHUAH Elohim can be who and what He desires to be. He said that He is I AM and that He WILL BE who He wants – EHYEH ahser EHYEH! He is EHYEH: I AM! No one else!

No earthly analogy can adequately explain how YAHUAH EHYEH can exist as the Creator and as Mashiach and as the Ruach haQodesh. Humanity must believe it with *faith* from the Voice / Word of the Father, and not argue His **Authority**!

However, there are two scientific examples that illustrate how one entity can exist in multiple forms. Light exists in nature in a *duality* and appear as both a wave and a particle. The other is a H₂O molecule, which is one essence, yet the molecule can exist as steam, water, and as ice.

The Creator, who is the Living Word of the Bible, is beyond comprehension. YAHUAH Elohim is a Being outside of world: infinite, eternal, immutable, omniscient, omnipresent, omnipotent, whatever He desires to be. HE IS ONE and not "they are two or three"!

2.5.2 PROPHECIES OF ONENESS

It was Prophesied that One will exist *forever* and never can there be two or more. The same Avinu Malkheinu El Shaddai haMashiach will Come again as One as the Melech (King) of kings and the Lion of Zion of Y'hudah, from the Root of David!

Prophecies (Word from the Prophets) were given by YAHUAH to be *fulfilled* and to prove His Word Spoken is Truth, also to be used and to assist to reveal mysticism. Prophecies are not just history, whereby people "shelf" these Books under Apocrypha, but is the Word Spoken to educate people, to teach the Truth, to correct wrong doings; *therefore* training in correct living:

*"And that from a child thou hast known the **Holy Scriptures**, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in the Messiah Yahshua. All **Scripture** given by inspiration of Yahweh, indeed is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of Elohim may be complete, thoroughly furnished unto all good works."* (CJB 2 Tim 3.15-17)

The only Scriptures available then at that time were the Scripts by the Hebrew Prophets! The Apostolic Scripts were only combined and canonized completely during the fifth decade. All the Apostles, and the Word in Flesh, *read and taught* from the Scripts by the Prophets in the Synagogues and when they gave teachings regarding YAHUAH / Y'shua.

Here follow Prophecy from Isaiah regarding the Oneness of the Creator YAHUAH:

*"41:25 I stirred up **one** from the north, and **he** (Mashiach) has come, from the rising of the sun, and he shall call upon My Name; he shall trample on rulers as on mortar, as the **potter** treads clay. Isa 26 Who declared it from the beginning, that we might know, and beforehand, that we might say, "He is right"? There was none who declared it, none who proclaimed, none who heard your words. 27 **I was the first** to say to Zion, "Behold, here they are!" and I give to Jerusalem a **herald of good news**. 42:1 "Look at **My Servant**, whom I strengthen. **He is My Chosen One**, who pleases Me. **I have put My Spirit upon Him**. He will bring justice to the nations. 2 He will not shout or raise His voice in public. 3 He will not crush the*

weakest reed or put out a flickering candle. **He will bring justice to all who have been wronged.** 4 He will not falter or lose heart until justice prevails throughout the earth. Even distant lands beyond the sea will wait for His instruction." 5 God, the LORD, created the heavens and stretched them out. He created the earth and everything in it. He gives breath to everyone, life to everyone who walks the earth. And it is He (GOD / Elohim) who says, 6 "I, the LORD, have called you ((Mashiach) to demonstrate My righteousness. I will take you by the hand and guard you, and I (Elohim) will give you (Mashiah) to **My people, Israel**, as a **symbol of My covenant with them**. And you will be a light to guide the nations. 7 You will open the eyes of the blind. You will free the captives from prison, releasing those who sit in dark dungeons (darkness). 8 **"I (YAHUAH) am the LORD; that is My name!** I will not give My glory to anyone else, nor share My praise with carved idols. 9 **Everything I prophesied has come true, and now I will prophesy again. I will tell you the future before it happens.**" (NKJV Isa 41.25 – 42.9)

Prophecy by the Creator is so important and interesting that it commands more prove for the verification of the *Unity* of YAHUAH:

"46:3 "Listen to me, house of Ya`akov, all who remain of the house of Isra'el: I have borne you from birth, carried you since the womb. 4 Till your old age I will be the same — I will carry you until your hair is white. I have made you, and I will bear you; yes, I will carry and save you. 5 To whom will you liken me and equate me? With whom will you compare me, as if we were similar?" 8 **Remember this, and stand firm. Keep it in mind, you [who] rebels.** 9 "Remember things that happened at the beginning, long ago — **that I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like Me.** 10 **At the beginning I announce the end, proclaim in advance things not yet done; and I say that my plan will hold, I will do everything I please to do.** 12 Listen to me, you stubborn people, so **far from righteousness:** 13 I am bringing **My justice nearer**, it is not far away; **My salvation will not be delayed**, I will place My salvation in Tziyon (**mainland**) for Isra'el (**nation** of Ya'acov and Yisra'el) My glory." (CJB Isa 46.3-13

"48.12 "Listen to me, Ya`akov; Isra'el, whom I have called: I am he who is first; I am also the last. 13 My hand laid the foundation of the earth, my right hand spread

out the heavens; when I summoned them, at once they rose into being. 14 "All of you, assemble and listen: which of you has foretold what is coming? Adonai's friend will do his will against Bavel, using his arm against the Kasdim. 15 **It is I (YAHUAH) who have spoken**, I have summoned him, I have brought him, and he will succeed. 16 "Come close to me, and listen to this: since the beginning I have not spoken in secret, since the time things began to be, I have been there; and now Adonai Elohim has sent me and his Spirit." 17 Thus says **Adonai, your Redeemer, the Holy One of Isra'el: "I am Adonai, your God, who teaches you for your own good, who guides you on the path you should take.** 18 If only you would heed **My mitzvot (commandments)!** Then your peace would flow on like a river, and **your righteousness** like the waves of the sea." (CJB Isa 48.12-18)

Do we need to say anything further? A Child, a Son will be born and HE IS [I AM] and WILL BE the Eternity Father, Redeemer, Wonderful and Almighty GOD the Saviour! Who other than the Creator Himself as haMashiach on earth! When He Comes as the Reigning Messiah ben David He will come as ONE and not as two or three!

When YAHUAH gave the Prophecies Himself that He is the only YHVH / Adonai (LORD) and only Elohim (GOD) for *eternity*, how can Adonai (Lord) Y'shua be also LORD and GOD as a *dual* or *triune* identity? It is absolute not Scriptural and an *idolatry* to the Creator YAHUAH!

More Prophecies of the Oneness were revealed and *testified* through haMashiach in His Shem (Name):

"Because you have known me, you will also know my Father; from now on, you do know him — in fact, you have seen him." Philip said to him, "Lord, show us the Father, and it will be enough for us." Yeshua replied to him, "Have I been with you so long without your knowing me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father; so how can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" (CJB John 14.7-9)

*"so that if I am delayed, you may know how one should behave in the household of God, which is the Messianic Community of the living God (assembly of the living Elohim), the **pillar and support of the truth**. Great beyond all question is the*

formerly hidden truth underlying our faith: He (Elohim / GOD) **was manifested physically** (in Flesh) and *proved righteous spiritually* (justified in the Spirit), seen by angels and proclaimed among the nations (preached unto the Gentiles), trusted throughout the world and raised up in glory to heaven." (CJB 1 Tim 3.15-16)

"For there are three that bear witness in heaven: the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit; and these three **are one**. And there are three that bear witness on earth: the Spirit, the water, and the blood; and these three **agree as one**." (NKJV (1 John 5.7-8)

Elohim, Ruach and Messiah cannot be "split" into two or three and not even into a fourth, the Word separate. Scripture identified the Word became Flesh and the Word that became Flesh is the Messiah. Why is it so difficult to see (and hear in fact, because it is in fact the *only* Communication from Elohim) the identification from Y'shua Himself that haMashiach and Avinu Malkheinu (Eternity Father) is One from One Mouth and in One Walk of Life?

It can be because of people were *doctrinated* for centuries and bullied into the belief of Trinity, a three-in-one concept *that is totally not Scriptural*. It can also be Prophecy of the hearts that are *hardened* by Elohim and is still in progress, again Yochanan warned people of this Prophecy from Isaiah:

"But although He had done so many signs before them, **they did not believe in Him**, that the word of Isaiah the prophet might be fulfilled, which He spoke: "LORD, WHO HAS BELIEVED OUR REPORT? AND TO WHOM HAS THE ARM OF THE LORD BEEN REVEALED?"⁸⁰ Therefore they could not believe, because Isaiah said again: "HE HAS BLINDED THEIR EYES AND HARDENED THEIR HEARTS, LEST THEY SHOULD SEE WITH THEIR EYES, LEST THEY SHOULD UNDERSTAND WITH THEIR HEARTS AND TURN, SO THAT I SHOULD HEAL THEM."⁸¹ (NKJV John 12.37-40)

⁸⁰ CJB Isa 53.1: "Who believes our report? To whom is the arm of Adonai revealed?" Even Sha'ul interpreted this Prophecy of Isaiah with the same Words: WOY Rom 10.16: "But they have not all obeyed the good news. For Isaiah saith, Yahweh, who hath believed our report? So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of Yahweh."

⁸¹ CJB Isa 6.9-10: "He said, "Go and tell this people: 'Yes, you hear, but you don't understand. You certainly see, but you don't get the point!' "Make the heart of this people [sluggish with] fat, stop up their ears, and shut their eyes. Otherwise, seeing with their eyes, and hearing with their ears, then understanding with their hearts, they might repent and be healed!" Isa 29.10: "**For Adonai has poured over you a spirit of lethargy; he has closed your eyes (that is, the prophets) and covered your heads (that is, the seers).**"

The Creator closes the eyes by concealing / hides what is Written by the Prophets and it will not be in the knowledge and minds / heads of people by not seeing the Written Word through the Prophets. Yochanan and Sha'ul (Paul) had the knowledge of the Prophets and warned people with their Prophecies from Elohim.

If people do not want to read or want to understand the truth Written in the Books of the Prophets, will the Books Written by the Apostles not make sense at all! Therefore are there so many different Christian denominations in the world today, more than 41,000 and still growing. Every denomination or sect has its own *belief system* and because of their differences, a new "church" is easily started with *their own* rules and regulations for their followers to abide by.

If people just wanted to listen to the Word in Flesh to know what Moshe and the Prophets Wrote and abide by their Rules and Regulations of Elohim, fewer differences would have been on earth and better knowledge and understanding of the Heart and Character of Elohim the Creator would have existed. Better knowledge and *true* Faith would have been gained in knowing the True Mashiach:

"But don't think that it is I (Mashiach) who will be your accuser before the Father. Do you know who will accuse you? Moshe, the very one you have counted on! For if you really believed Moshe, you would believe Me; because it was about Me that He wrote⁸². But if you don't believe what he wrote, how are you going to believe what I (Mashiach) say?" (CJB John 5.45-47)

2.5.3 ONE LIGHT

When the Creator Spoke, He gave *meaning and existence* with His Word(s). Elohim created lights only during the fourth day of creation⁸³ as *signals and signs* for all His creations to know when a day begins and to know the difference between night and day; and also to have light during the nights. Elohim also said the *lights* were created to *divide light* from the darkness.

⁸² Gen 49.10; Num 24.17; Deut 18.15-18

⁸³ Gen 1.14-19

Here is a proven fact that the Word of the Creator is **literal and direct** *first* and not Spiritual first. To understand the Spiritual in Scripture must the literal and direct Word from the Creator first be taken on eyesight as it is given to humankind in that context before *further* interpretation are seeking for. Humankind is **not permitted** to pick and choose what Word(s) of the Creator should be seen first as Spiritual, because by spiritualising a person chooses which Word(s) is / are to be obeyed.

The Creator *Spoke "Light"* into existence **before** He started with His creation pattern and before He even created the two *great* lights, the moon (with the stars as smaller light) and the sun. Elohim **literally** divided Light from darkness. YHVH Elohim divided Himself from other gods, the darkness / evil. Anything which is not of the Almighty Creator is of darkness and if a person does not belief in everything the Creator *did and said*, such a person in actual fact belief in another god or other gods; said the Creator Himself:

*"But be careful not to let yourselves be seduced, **so that you turn aside**, serving other gods and worshipping them."* (CJB Deut 11.16)

The 1965 Bible in Basic English (BBE) translated the Words in the following wording, which is the best translation for further elaboration:

*"But take care that your **hearts are not turned to false ways** so that you become servants and worshippers of other gods;"* (Deut 11.16)

Moshe wrote these Words from Elohim to emphasise the importance of the Character of the Creator and to keep all the Ways of YHVH Elohim, and if a person *deviate* from any of His Word / Way to mankind, a person then turns to another elohim (god).

The exeGeses Companion Bible (ECB) translated this verse to the following:

*"Guard yourselves, **lest you delude your heart**, and turn and serve other elohim and prostrate (reach) to them;"* (Deut 11.16)⁸⁴

⁸⁴ exeGeses Ready Research Bible (ERRB) Deut 28.13-15: "And thou shalt not go [**turn**] aside from any of the words which I command [**misvah**] thee this day, to the right hand, or to the left, to go after other gods [**elohim**] to serve them. **THE CURSINGS OF DISOBEDIENCE:** But [**so be**] it shall come to pass, if thou wilt [**shalt**] not hearken unto the voice of the LORD [**Yah Veh**] thy God [**Elohim**], to observe [**guard**] to do [**work**] all his commandments [**misvoth**] and his statutes which I command [**misvah**] thee this day; that all these curses [**abasements**] shall come upon thee, and overtake thee:"

The Ways and Character of the Creator are *clean and clear* spelled out in the Books of Moshe, **direct** from the Mouth (Word) of Elohim (GOD). Whoever deviates from any of these Words will walk in *darkness / evil* and will not walk in the *Light*!

*"And now, Israel, what doth Yahweh thy Elohim require of thee, but to fear Yahweh thy Elohim, **to walk in all His ways**, and to love Him, and to serve Yahweh thy Elohim with **all thy heart** and with all thy soul, To keep the commandments of Yahweh, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good?"* (WOY Deut 10.12-13)

After Elohim divided *light* from darkness in Beresheet (Genesis) He continued with His creation and whereafter He continued to lead the *righteous* people (Noah and Abraham⁸⁵) on His Path / Way according the Light.

Yochanan again explained clearly the Echadness also in the Light:

*"And this is the message which we have heard from him and proclaim to you: **God is light**, and there is no darkness in him — none!"* (CJB 1 John 1.5)⁸⁶

HaMashiach is the Light (John 1.4-9), Elohim is the Light and the Torah is also the Light:

*"For the mitzvah is a lamp, Torah is light, and reproofs that **discipline are the way to life**."* (CJB Prov 6.23)⁸⁷

This is no coincidence! It makes perfectly sense. YAHUAH GOD *is* Light and He will only *speak* Light from His Word, and the Torah came from His Mouth and the Word and Torah became Flesh who walked *according* the Light and Who has no darkness in Him. YAHUAH divided from the very beginning darkness from Himself, the Light. HaMashiach represents a seven candle light Menorah⁸⁸ as the Eyes of YAHUAH⁸⁹.

⁸⁵ WOY Gen 26.5: "Because that Abraham **obeyed My voice**, and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes, and My laws."

⁸⁶ WOY Job 29.3: "When His candle shined upon my head, and when **by His light I walked through darkness**;"

⁸⁷ CJB Psalms 119.105: "יְיָ (Nun) Your Word is a lamp for my foot and light on my path."

⁸⁸ CJB Rev 1.12-13: "I turned around to see who was speaking to me; and when I had turned, I saw seven gold menorahs; and among the menorahs was someone like a Son of Man, wearing a robe down to his feet and a gold band around his chest."

2.5.4 THE WORD CAME ALIVE

The Light will *not be* with the unrighteous / lawless people. The Light will depart from them and they will be left for darkness / evil / other gods, as Prophesied by the Prophets and Revealed by the Word:

*"Moreover I will take from them the voice of mirth, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones, and **the light of the candle.**" (WOY Jer 25.10)*

*"And the **light of a candle shall shine no more at all in thee**; and the voice of the bridegroom and of the bride shall be heard no more at all in thee: for thy merchants were the great men of the earth; for by thy sorceries were all nations deceived." (WOY Rev 18.23)*

Sin represents walking in darkness and means not according the Word given by the Creator, His Torah. Sin is being Torahlessness and *not* following the righteous Way / Path, the Way of YHVH Elohim. People who *claim* they walk in the Footsteps of the Light, but wander in a Torahless life, is actually wandering in *darkness*:

*"If we claim to have fellowship with Him while we are walking in the darkness, we are lying **and not living out the truth.** But if we are walking in the light, **as He is in the light**, then we have fellowship with each other, and the blood of His Son Yeshua purifies us from all sin. **If we claim not to have sin, we are deceiving ourselves, and the truth is not in us.** If we acknowledge our sins, then, since He is trustworthy and just, He will forgive them and purify us from all wrongdoing. **If we claim we have not been sinning, we are making Him out to be a liar, and His Word is not in us.**" (CJB 1 John 1.6-10)*

⁸⁹ CJB Zech 4.2, 10: "4 and asked me, "What do you see?" I answered, "I've been looking at a menorah; it's all of gold, with a bowl at its top, seven lamps on it, and seven tubes leading to the lamps at its top. 10 For even someone who doesn't think much of a day when such minor events take place will rejoice at seeing the plumbline in the hand of Z'rubavel. So these seven are the eyes of Adonai that range about over all the earth."

These Words are extremely crucial *for* understanding, because so many people want to *bind* a Torah observing life to "*legalism*" and nowhere in the complete BIBLE does the Word say such a thing.

On the contrary! YAHUAH said His Torah is Light, He Himself is Light, haMashiach is Light and His Word is Light. How can it be legalism if a person is walking in the Light? Darkness exists because of sin and without Torah people will not know sin⁹⁰, and sin is Torahlessness:

"Everyone who makes a practice of sinning also practices lawlessness; sin is lawlessness." (ESV & NKJV 1 John 3.4)⁹¹

Following in the Footsteps of haMashiach is to follow the Word of YAHUAH and the Light of the Torah to follow as the Lamp shining the Way of Life. The Light which was divided from darkness / evil / sin / other gods!

HaMashiach verified that He came down / descended from Heaven⁹² not to abolish or to destroy the Torah, but to *interpret* the Torah by fulfilling everything in the Torah given by YAHUAH:

*"Don't think that I have come to abolish⁹³ the Torah or the Prophets. **I have come not to abolish but to complete** (fulfil⁹⁴). Yes indeed! I tell you that until heaven and earth pass away, not so much as a yud (י) or a stroke will pass from the*

⁹⁰ CJB Rom 7.7: "Therefore, what are we to say? That the Torah is sinful? Heaven forbid! Rather, the function of the Torah was that without it, I would not have known what sin is. For example, I would not have become conscious of what greed is if the Torah had not said, "Thou shalt not covet."

⁹¹ CJB: "Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, sin is violation of Torah."

KJV: "Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law."

BBE: "Everyone who is a sinner goes against the law, for sin is going against the law."

ISV: "Everyone who keeps living in sin also practices disobedience. In fact, sin is disobedience."

⁹² LITV John 6.38: "For I have come down out of Heaven, not that I should do My will, but the will of Him who sent Me."

⁹³ In Greek, "kataloo", KJV Strong's G2647: "to loosen down (disintegrate), that is, (by implication) to demolish (literally or figuratively); specifically (compare G2646) to halt for the night: - destroy, dissolve, be guest, lodge, come to nought, overthrow, throw down."

The Hebrew word kataloo was translated from, "levatel": "to undermine the law by misinterpreting it".

⁹⁴ In Greek, "pleroo", KJV Strong's G4137: "to make replete, that is, (literally) to cram (a net), level up (a hollow), or (figuratively) to furnish (or imbue, diffuse, influence), satisfy, execute (an office), finish (a period or task), verify (or coincide with a prediction), etc.: - accomplish, X after, (be) complete, end, expire, fill (up), fulfil, (be, make) full (come), fully preach, perfect, supply." The right wording from Hebrew is actually "to make full".

The ancient Word in Hebrew, "lekayem": "uphold, establish, fulfil, complete or accomplish".

*Torah — not until everything that must happen has happened. So **whoever disobeys the least of these mitzvot** (commandments) and teaches others to do so will be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven. **But whoever obeys them and so teaches will be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven.** For I tell you that unless your righteousness is far greater than that of the Torah-teachers and P'rushim, you will certainly not enter the Kingdom of Heaven!" (CJB Matt 5.17-20)*

*"Let there be no thought that I have come to put an end to the law or the prophets. I have not come for destruction, **but to make complete.** Truly I say to you, Till heaven and earth come to an end, not the smallest letter or part of a letter will in any way be taken from the law, till all things are done. **Whoever then goes against the smallest of these laws,** teaching men to do the same, will be named least in the kingdom of heaven; **but he who keeps the laws, teaching others to keep them, will be named great in the kingdom of heaven.** For I say to you, If your righteousness is not greater than the righteousness of the scribes and Pharisees, you will never go into the kingdom of heaven." (1965 BBE Matt 5.17-20)*

The Creator gave the Torah through His Word. HaMashiach lived the Torah in *perfect* Halachah (walk of life) according the Works of ABBA, because He is in ABBA and ABBA is in Him. One (Echad) is He the Wonderful, Councillor, Avinu Malkheinu (Eternity Father), El Shaddai (YAHUAH Almighty) and Redeemer (Prince of Peace): the Lion of Zion from the House of Y'hudah!

HaMashiach, the Word from the beginning, the Master Rabbi used well known rabbinic terminology (the Extraordinary Word of YAHUAH) and He emphasized *clearly* the fact that the Torah from the Mouth of YAHUAH will **never** be *abolished or destroyed* while Heaven and earth still exist, which in actual fact means Torah will exist till *eternity* and will be the *Light* for our path.

The Word from YAHUAH to Luke also clearly explains that Heaven and earth would first be destroyed before a letter of the Torah will be destroyed:

"But it is easier for the heaven and the earth to pass away than one point of the Law to fail." (LITV Luke 16.17)

Therefore is the correct translation for Matt 5.17 *direct* from the Word in Flesh:

*"Do not think that I came to **undermine** the Law or the Prophets **by misinterpreting it**; I did not come to **undermine**, but to **interpret the Law and Prophets in full / complete**."*

HaMashiach *descended* from Heaven and the Word of YAHUAH *literally* became Flesh, whereby YAHUAH *literally* made His spoken Word Alive! Alive in the Form of Mashiach, full Man incarnated in the *Image* of the Son of Man, very Man / Flesh and very GOD.

Adonai Y'shua could not and would never speak against the Word of YAHUAH, because then He would speak Himself as a lie / falsehood. Neither would He ever have contradicted Himself / His Word when He spoke from Heaven and while He walked as Flesh on earth.

HaMashiach was surely on earth to *interpret* the Word / Torah correctly on to His *Followers* and never would He have undermine / contradict His own Word / Torah by *misinterpreting* what came from the Mouth / Word of YAHUAH when He created / instructed His Torah. The Creator YAHUAH has only One Voice and spoke One Word; and His Word *is* Echad with haMashiach in Flesh!

David N Bivin gave the following translations for this specific verse from literal Greek to dynamic Hebrew:

"Greek (Codex Vaticanus):

Μὴ νομίσητε ὅτι ἦλθον καταλῦσαι τὸν νόμον ἢ τοὺς προφῆτας οὐκ ἦλθον καταλῦσαι ἀλλὰ πληρῶσαι (me nomisete hoti elthon katalysai ton nomon e tous prophetas ouk elthon katalysai alla plerosai).

Literal Translation of the Greek:

"Do not think that I came to destroy the law or the prophets. I did not come to destroy, but to fill."

Conjectured Hebrew Reconstruction:

לְקַיִּים אֵלָּא לְבַטֵּל בָּאתִי לֹא הַנְּבִיאִים וְאֵת הַתּוֹרָה אֵת לְבַטֵּל שֶׁבָּאתִי תַחֲשֹׁבוּ אֵל
(*al takhshevu shebati levatel et hatorah ve-et hanevi'im lo bati levatel ela lekayem*).

Literal Translation of the Hebrew Reconstruction:

"Do not think that I have come to cancel the Torah [the five books of Moses] and the Prophets [the second section of the Hebrew canon]. I have not come to cancel, but to sustain."

Idiomatic Translation of the Hebrew Reconstruction:

"Do not think that I have come to weaken the Torah and the Prophets. I have not come to weaken them, but to strengthen them."

Dynamic Translation of the Hebrew Reconstruction:

"Do not suppose that I have any intention of undermining **Scripture** by misinterpreting it. My purpose is to establish and maintain the knowledge and observance of God's Word not undermine it."⁹⁵

2.5.5 PROOF IS IN THE NAME

As was demonstrated thus far, the Word given by YAHUAH from the beginning *is* valid and also is the Word of the Creator for all generations till the end of time; and can it not be rejected. The *Instructions were given to show love to Elohim with everything* humanly possible and to love thy neighbour as yourself. Instructions were given by the Voice / Word for guidance in this world and as direction to stay on the right Path / Way of YAHUAH, and for protection against evil and *not to wander from His Instructions* given out of love.

To know and to understand the *fullness* of love from Elohim would not have been known if Torah / Law was not given from His Voice / Word, because the multitude / performance of love towards Elohim and our fellow person / neighbour was *completely* explained in Torah:

"Love does not do harm to a neighbor; therefore love is the fullness (completeness / multitude / performance from KJV+ Strong's G4138) of Torah." (CJB Rom 13.10)

⁹⁵ <http://www.jerusalemerspective.com/2062/>; 03/03/2015

"Hidden secrets" or mysticism in the Word exist, but YAHUAH said that mysteries will be revealed to the righteous and believers in the One:

*"At that day ye shall know that I am in My Father (that I am One), and ye in Me, and I in you. **He that hath My commandments, and keepeth them**, he it is that loveth Me: and he that loveth Me shall be loved of My Father, and I will love him, **and will manifest Myself to him**. Judah saith unto Him, not Iscariot (not the one from K'riot), Master, how is it that thou wilt manifest thyself unto us, and not unto the world? Yahshua answered and said unto him, **If a man love Me, he will keep My words**: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him. He that loveth Me not keepeth not my sayings: **and the word which ye hear is not Mine**, but the Father's which sent Me. These things have I spoken unto you, being yet present with you. But the Comforter, which is the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in My Name, **He shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance**, whatsoever I have said unto you."* (WOY John 14.20-26)

*"For from the first making of the world, **those things of God which the eye is unable to see, that is**, His eternal power and existence, **are fully made clear**, He having given the knowledge of them through the things which He has made, so that men have no reason for wrongdoing: Because, having the knowledge of God, they did not give glory to God as God, and did not give praise, but their minds were full of foolish things, **and their hearts, being without sense**, were made dark. Seeming to be wise, they were in fact foolish,"* (BBE Rom 1.20-22)

There are many texts declaring that the hidden secrets / mysteries have to be revealed through knowing haMashiach and the spoken Word, through the wisdom and knowledge of / from Elohim. Wisdom from / of the world through education is not necessarily the *true* wisdom and knowledge referred by the Word of YAHUAH, because Elohim stated clearly in perfect harmony how *true* wisdom and knowledge will be gained *through* Him.

Hear the Words of the Nevi'im (Prophets) of YAHUAH Prophesied regarding *wisdom and knowledge*, which so many "believers" rejected for centuries by *shelving* these GODSEND

Words through canonized (created through the Works of Elohim) Books as Apocrypha (not valid Words to obey as Scriptural, just as mere historical and philosophical evidence):

*"I will proclaim the decree: Adonai said to Me (Son of Man), 'You are my Son; today I became your Father. Ask of Me, and I will make the nations your inheritance; the whole wide world will be your possession. You will break them with an iron rod, shatter them like a clay pot.'" Therefore, kings, **be wise**; be warned, you judges of the earth. **Serve Adonai with fear**; rejoice, but with trembling."* (CJB Psa 2.7-11)

Fear for the Creator is explained throughout the whole BIBLE, but let's concentrate on the Words direct from YAHUAH from the very beginning, which so many people neglect to consider valid currently and for centuries:

*"And now, Israel, what does the LORD your God require of you, **but to fear the LORD your God, to walk in all His ways**, to love Him, to serve the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul, and to keep the commandments and statutes of the LORD, which I am commanding you today **for your good**?"* (ESV Deut 10.12-13)

Sha'ul knew exactly what the *fear* of Elohim meant and how to fear Him, and it is shown through his teachings regarding the faith in haMashiach in Acts 28.23-24 where he taught people from the *direct* Word of Elohim. Sha'ul even said to the Corinthians to cleanse them in body / flesh and Ruach / Spirit to *become Holy in the fear* of Elohim:

"Because God, then, will give us such rewards, dear brothers, let us make ourselves clean from all evil of flesh and spirit, and become completely holy in the fear of God." (BBE 2 Cor 7.1)

Let us return to wisdom and knowledge and see if the above text is valid to gain perfect truth through knowing the Torah (Law / Statutes / Ordinances / Testimonies / Commandments):

*"The **Torah** of Adonai is **perfect, restoring the inner person** (soul). The **instruction** (testimony) of Adonai is **sure, making wise the thoughtless** (wisdom*

to the foolish). The **precepts** of Adonai **are right**, rejoicing the heart. The **mitzvah** (commandment) of Adonai is **pure, enlightening the eyes**. The **fear** of Adonai is **clean, enduring forever**. The **rulings** (judgements) of Adonai are **true, they are righteous altogether**," (CJB Psa 19.7-9)⁹⁶

It cannot be argued here that the complete Torah is perfect, sure, right, clean, true and pure; with the understanding that to fear YAHUAH is to be obedient to everything He demanded and in return wisdom and knowledge will be gained.

The Torah was Commanded by the Creator⁹⁷ just as He Commanded the Heavens into existence⁹⁸ through the deeds / thoughts / fruit of His heart⁹⁹, and still people choose to abolish what was Commanded by the Creator as *eternity* after He explicitly *declared / interpreted* that it cannot be destroyed or abolished or made into non-existence.¹⁰⁰

David, the father of haMashiach and the son of Avraham¹⁰¹ kept on confirming the Way of YAHUAH to be true and that it is *taught* by ABBA Himself, and every human should follow His Way / Torah by keeping it in the hearts:

*"27 If you turn from evil and do good, you will live safely forever. 28 For Adonai loves justice (From His own given Law / Torah)¹⁰² and will not abandon his faithful; they are preserved forever. But the descendants of the wicked will be cut off. 29 The righteous will inherit the land and live in it forever. 30 The **mouth of the righteous articulates wisdom**, his tongue speaks justice. 31 **The Torah of his God is in his heart**; his footsteps do not falter. 34 Put your hope in Adonai, **keep to His way**, and He will raise you up to inherit the land. When the wicked are cut off, you will see it."* (CJB Psa 37.27-34)

"For Elohim is the King of all the earth: sing ye praises with understanding (knowledge)." (WOY Psa 47.8)

⁹⁶ AOV verses 8-10

⁹⁷ CJB Psa 33.9: "For he spoke, and there it was; he commanded, and there it stood."

⁹⁸ CJB Psa 33.6: "By the word of Adonai the heavens were made, and their whole host by a breath from his mouth."

⁹⁹ CJB Psa 33.11: "But the counsel of Adonai stands forever, his heart's plans are for all generations."

¹⁰⁰ CJB Matt 5.17: "Don't think that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete."

¹⁰¹ CJB Matt 1.1: "This is the genealogy of Yeshua the Messiah, son of David, son of Avraham:"

¹⁰² CJB James 4.12: "There is but **one Giver of Torah; He is also the Judge**, with the power to deliver and to destroy. Who do you think you are, judging your fellow human being?"

The whole Psalms 119 can be cited from David to understand the Heart of the Creator and to know the Torah from His Voice is the explanation of His Way, to follow by those who are *righteous*. Unrighteousness is to *wander* from His Torah and not keeping His Way:

*"How happy are **those whose way of life is blameless, who live by the Torah of Adonai!** How happy are **those who observe His instruction**, who seek Him **wholeheartedly!** They do nothing wrong (no wickedness / iniquity) but live by His ways. You laid down **your precepts** for us **to observe with care.**" (CJB Psa 119.1-4)*

*"I have sought You with my (a) **whole heart; do not let me wander from Your Commands.** (b) **I have hidden Your Word in my heart, that I might not sin** against You. Blessed are you, O Jehovah; (c) **teach me Your Statutes.** I have declared all the **judgments of Your mouth** with my lips; (d) I have rejoiced in the **way of Your Testimonies** as over all riches. (e) **I will meditate in Your Precepts** and I will regard **Your paths.** (f) **I will delight myself in Your Statutes.** I will not forget **Your Word.**" (LITV Psa 119.10-16)*

- (a) Elohim says clearly above, when a person search Him with the *whole heart*, then that person does not want to be led astray / wander from His Commands (Torah).
- (b) When the Word (Torah) of Elohim is in the *heart*, it will prevent a person to *sin* against the Almighty.
- (c) His Statutes / Laws (Torah) from His Voice will enable a person to know the Rulings / Judgments He set / spoken / declared in His Torah.
- (d) People must rejoice in His Way of His *unchanging* Word when His Word *Testifies* / *witnesses* through fulfilment / interpretation of the truth.
- (e) A person will speak / pray / talk all the Commandments (Torah) of Elohim and will therefore have respect for His Ways / Paths by keeping eyes on His Ways.
- (f) Remembering the Word of Elohim will lead to have delight in His Rules / Ordinances / Statutes / Decrees / Regulations (Torah).

To know YAHUAH Elohim, is also to know the wonders from knowing His Word from His Voice, and the whole heart will be overwhelmed with His Torah^{103 104 105 106 107 108}, broadness¹⁰⁹, rejoice¹¹⁰, wisdom¹¹¹, etc:

"Open my eyes, so that I will see wonders from your Torah." (CJB Psa 119.18)

"Help me understand the meaning of Your commandments, and I will meditate on Your wonderful deeds." (NLT Psa 119.27)

The Creator YAHUAH taught humankind His Way / Heart by means of His Voice / Word through the Torah, and still ironically people try to pervert His Torah into *legalism*. Listen how beautiful Prophet David a Servant of Elohim puts the Words direct from the Voice:

*"26 I have declared my ways, and You answered me; teach me Your Statutes. 30 I have chosen **the way of truth**; I have held Your judgments level; 33 O Jehovah, teach me the way of Your Statutes, and I will keep it to the end. 34 Make me understand and I will keep Your Law, and observe it with the whole heart. 35 Make me walk in the way of Your Commands, for in it I delight. 64 O Jehovah, the earth is full of Your mercy; teach me Your Statutes. 66 Teach me good judgment and knowledge, for I have believed Your Commands. 67 Before I was afflicted I went astray; but now I have kept Your Word. 68 You are good and do good; teach me Your Statutes. 72 The Torah you have spoken means more to me than a fortune in gold and silver. 77 Let Your mercies come to me that I may live; for Your Law is my delight. 93 I will never forget Your Precepts; for with them You gave me life. 102 I turned not from Your judgments; **for You have taught me**. 124 Deal with your servant in accordance with your grace, and teach me your laws. 125 I am your servant; give me understanding, so that I can know your instruction. 142 Your righteousness is eternal righteousness, **and your Torah is truth**. 171 Let my lips speak praise, **because You teach me Your Laws**." (LITV & CJB Psa 119)*

¹⁰³ Psa 119.34:

¹⁰⁴ Psa 119.69:

¹⁰⁵ Psa 119.112:

¹⁰⁶ Psa 119.145:

¹⁰⁷ Prov 3.1, 3:

¹⁰⁸ Prov 4.4:

¹⁰⁹ Psa 119.32:

¹¹⁰ Psa 119.111:

¹¹¹ Prov 10.8:

Yochanan also knew the Word Spoken to the Prophets regarding the *fear* of YAHUAH and that YAHUAH spoke the Word to *Teach* people the difference between *good and evil*. Yochanan cited the direct Word from YAHUAH through the Teaching of the Word in Flesh:

*"No one can come to me unless the Father — the One who sent me — **draws him**. And I will raise him up on the Last Day. It is written in the Prophets (Books by the Prophets), '**They will all be taught by Adonai**.' Everyone who listens to the Father and learns from him comes to me."* (CJB John 6.44-45)

The Creator YAHUAH has given His Way through His Word (Torah) and miraculously the Word of YAHUAH became Flesh. The Way of the Word in Flesh is exactly according the Way of YAHUAH without missing even a Letter from the Torah. The Word in Flesh indeed said that He is and will be the fulfilment / interpretation of the Torah from the Word Spoken:

"Don't think that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete. Yes indeed! I tell you that until heaven and earth pass away, not so much as a yud (י) or a stroke will pass from the Torah — not until everything that must happen has happened. (a) So whoever disobeys the least of these mitzvot and teaches others to do so will be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven. But whoever obeys them and so teaches will be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven." (CJB Matt 5.17-19)

(a) YAHUAH Spoke these exact Word before the Word became Alive:

*"I will raise up for them a Prophet like you from among their brethren, and **will put My words in His mouth, and He shall speak to them all that I command Him**. And it shall be that whoever will not hear My words, which He speaks in My name, I will require it of him. But the prophet who presumes to speak a word in My name, **which I have not commanded him to speak**, or who speaks in the name of other gods, that prophet shall die."* (NKJV Deut 18.18-19)

The Torah became Alive when the Word became Flesh, because by knowing the Torah a person will know who the real Word in Flesh is. Sha'ul taught this also through his

teachings and like today still, people's hearts are still hardened to find truth in it like in the days of Mashiach:

*"When they had appointed a day for him, they came to him at his lodging in greater numbers. From morning till evening he expounded to them, testifying to the kingdom of God and **trying to convince them about Jesus both from the Law of Moses and from the Prophets**. And some were convinced by what he said, but others **disbelieved**." (ESV Acts 28.23-24)*

Yochanan even said people will not know Mashiach if they did not know the Torah of YAHUAH and people will not belief the Word Spoken when the Word is Flesh:

"For if you were believing Moses, you would then believe Me; for that one wrote concerning Me. But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My Words?" (LITV John 5.46-47)

Torah of YAHUAH Teach humankind there is only One YAHUAH Elohim (LORD GOD) and He is the only Saviour, no one else is like Him. Still people want / try to *pervert* His Glorious Almighty Name as two or three and want to make Him a Tri-une GOD.

From the Voice / Mouth of YAHUAH He taught His people through His Torah and the Prophets that He alone can be YAHUAH Elohim (LORD GOD) and that He is the only Alvinu Malkheinu (Eternity FATHER)¹¹² and El Shaddai (Almighty GOD) and Saviour of all:

*"10 ... Before me no god was formed, nor shall there be any after me. 11 **I, I am the LORD, and besides me there is no savior**. 12 **I declared and saved** and proclaimed, when there was no strange god among you; and you are my witnesses," declares the LORD, **"and I am God**. 13 Also henceforth I am he; there is none who can deliver from my hand; I work, and who can turn it back?" 14 Thus says the LORD, your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel: "For your sake I send to Babylon and bring them all down as fugitives, even the Chaldeans, in the ships in which they rejoice. 15 I am the LORD, your Holy One, the Creator of Israel, your King." (ESV Isa 43.10-15)*

¹¹² CJB Isa 40.28: "Haven't you known, haven't you heard that the everlasting God, Adonai, the Creator of the ends of the earth, does not grow tired or weary? His understanding cannot be fathomed."

There cannot be another Saviour or Elohim (GOD), but ONE! Therefore did He *descend* from Heaven *in the Name of*: Yeshua / Y'shua / Yahshua! It is all in HaShem (the Name).

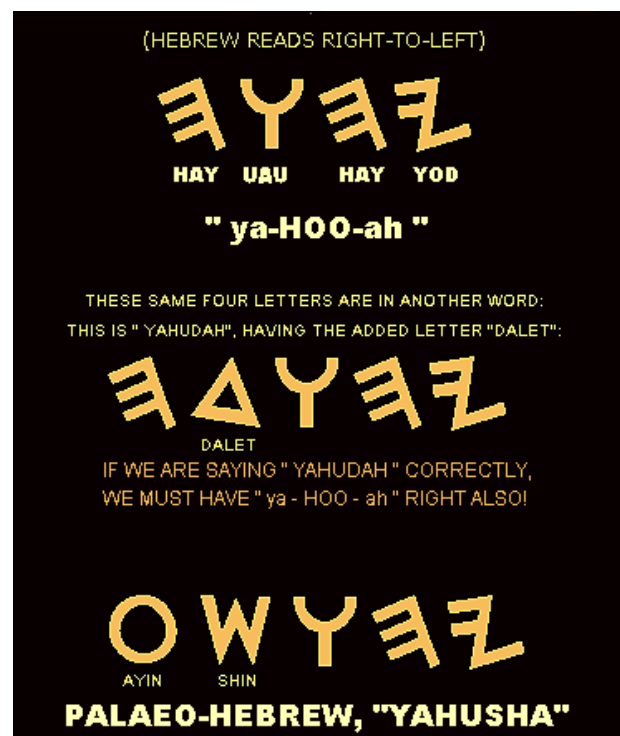
The Name Yeshua / Yahshua means Yah is Salvation and ye'shuah means salvation. The Father came in The Name like He Prophesied as the Salvation to the believer: "*in The Name of GOD (Yah) is Salvation, The Saviour*"!¹¹³

It is one of the mysteries found in the Name of the Creator. The Name on the Stake of the Word in Flesh as the Suffering Mashiach was Written, again by the Works of YAHUAH Elohim: Yahoshua the Netzarin King of the Jews i.e. Yahshua HaNetzare'i V'Melech HaY'hudim¹¹⁴.

YHVH = Yod Hey Vav Hey. Every letter as a breath, therefore the pronunciation of: YAHUAH. YAHUAH the Creator died on the Stake for humanity as the Saviour through the Body of Mashiach He send to earth as Prophesied.

The Name of Yahshua makes perfect sense = Yah / YAHUAH is Salvation the Mashiach, as the Son of Righteousness. When a person follows the exact Footsteps of the Word in Flesh as Mashiach, as He Interpreted, Preached and Followed the exact Way the Word was Spoken by YAHUAH the Creator, then such a person will also be called a *son of righteousness* and will enter the Garden of Eden / YAHUAH (Rev 21) with the Almighty:

"He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his Elohim, and he shall be my son." (WOY Rev 21.7)



¹¹³ In the Masters Dissertation citing can be found for proof of the Name Yahshua.

¹¹⁴ WOY John 19.19: "And Pilate wrote a title, and put it on the stake. And the writing was, YAHSHUA OF NAZARETH THE KING OF THE JEWS."

2.5.6 PROPHECY OF THE STONE / ROCK

Torah, the Word direct from YAHUAH from the very beginning explicitly Instructed there *is* and *can only be* One YHVH / YAHUAH Elohim (LORD GOD), EHYEH Asher EHYEH (I AM / WILL BE what I AM / WILL BE). No one else is like Him and can be like Him. He is the Avinu Malkheinu (Eternity Father) and El Shaddai (Almighty GOD):

The Creator Spoke the Word and everything was formed from His Voice He Spoke. The Word He Spoke will be the *Stumbling Stone* for many, but the Stone will also be the *Cornerstone* of the Foundation. The *Stone / Rock* created by the Creator YAHUAH, like everything else that exists (as with the BIBLE) was created by the One Elohim: YAHUAH!

YAHUAH compared Himself with the Stone, where He said to His believers / followers "He is the Stone / Rock"; and when He uses the Stone in His Prophecies (BIBLE), He is talking of Himself through Parables and Testimonies. NONE IS LIKE HIM AND WILL NEVER BE!

YAHUAH said, and is the First Commandment of the Ten Words / Commandments¹¹⁵:

"I am Adonai your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the abode of slavery." (CJB Exo 20.2)

And the Second Commandment from His Voice / Word:

"Thou shalt have no other gods [elohim] before me [above my face]... for I the LORD [Yah Veh] thy God [Elohim] am a jealous God [EI]..."! (ERRB Exo 20.3, 5)

¹¹⁵ CJB Exo 34.28: "Moshe was there with Adonai forty days and forty nights, during which time he neither ate food nor drank water. [Adonai] wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the Ten Words." And to prove to people Moshe / Elohim did not make a mistake with the Words: CJB Deut 4.13: "He proclaimed his covenant to you, which he ordered you to obey, the Ten Words; and he wrote them on two stone tablets. "

How many Christians really know the Ten Commandments, which truly is only Ten Words in the Hebrew language, and what the real meaning of each is? Is it not maybe the reason why the Word came and *interprets* Himself through the Word in Flesh as Mattiyahu cited His *direct* Words?

"All of the Torah and the Prophets are dependent on these two mitzvot." (CJB Matt 22.40)¹¹⁶

Even Sha'ul who followed the Master Rabbi and knew He was the Word Spoken from the beginning and became Flesh, said the love of GOD Almighty and to your neighbour as you love yourself, *comes* from the *fullness / completeness* of the Torah:

"Love does not do harm to a neighbor; therefore love is the fullness of Torah." (CJB Rom 13.10)¹¹⁷

Because of lack of knowledge of the Word Spoken in the beginning people try to *pervert* the Torah / Law of Elohim (GOD) as *legalism*, which is in fact a shame and must the question arise with people, is GOD the Creator happy when people read these Words and still *disobey* His Teachings / Words? Elohim will never contradict anything from His Word!

The *perversion* of His Word through people's own interpretation from the Almighty's Word is the reason people use the "concept" Trinity / Tri-une GOD and see the Creator as three different gods-in-one. This "concept" was never spoken through any of the Prophets or Elohim Himself, He even made Commandments to verify He is One and Jealous thereof!

In the Masters Dissertation proof of the origin of Trinity was given and was it a "concept" / *doctrine* started by man, in actual fact by Roman-Catholic Christianity, and unfortunately all other *denominations* took this man-made doctrine with them, just as many other man-made doctrine continued in Christianity.

¹¹⁶ NLT Matt 22.40: "The entire law and all the demands of the prophets are based on these two commandments."

¹¹⁷ NLT Rom 13.10: "Love does no wrong to others, so love fulfills the requirements of God's law."

It is time to continue with YAHUAH as the Stone / Rock from His Prophecies, He is the Rock / Stone and His Ways *reflects* through the Rock:

*"The Rock, his work is perfect, **for all his ways are justice** (divine Law)¹¹⁸: a God of faithfulness and without iniquity, just and right is he." (AESV TORAH Deut 32.4)*

*"No one is holy like the LORD (YHVH / YAHUAH)! **There is no one besides You; there is no Rock like our God** (Elohim)." (NLT 1 Sam 2.2)*

*"For who is God **but** Adonai, and who is a Rock **but** our God?" (CJB 2 Sam 22.32)*

"For who is God but Adonai? Who is a Rock but our God?" (CJB Psa 18.[31]32)¹¹⁹

"In the memory that God was their Rock, and the Most High God their saviour." (BBE Psa 78.35)

The Creator YAHUAH called Himself many times the Rock and that the Rock / GOD Almighty / El Shaddai must be in the heart of every person, He is the Saviour / Salvation. YAHUAH will make him who preserves this Rock and keep all His Ways / Torah, a *firstborn* son, just as His Voice / Word made the promise in Exo 4.22: *"Then you are to tell Pharaoh: 'Adonai says, "Isra'el is my firstborn son." (CJB).* David was a fulfilment of this Prophecy and Prophesied it to believers of the Rock / GOD:

*"He will call to me, '**You are my Father, my God, the Rock of my salvation.**' I will give him the **position of firstborn** (Exo 4.22), the highest of the kings of the earth. I will keep My grace for him forever, and in My covenant be faithful with him. I will establish his dynasty forever, and his throne as long as the heavens last. **"If** his descendants abandon My Torah and fail to live by My rulings, if they profane My regulations and don't obey My mitzvot, **I will punish their disobedience with the rod and their guilt with lashes.** But I won't withdraw My grace from him or be false to My faithfulness. I will not profane My covenant or change what My lips have spoken. I have sworn by My holiness once and for all; I will not lie to David - his dynasty will last forever, his throne like the sun before Me. It will be established*

¹¹⁸ KJV+ Strong's H4941: Decree; Ordinance; Order

¹¹⁹ CJB Psa 18.[46]47: "Adonai is alive! Blessed is my Rock! Exalted be the God of my salvation,"

 Research is the process of elimination, whatever remains is the truth *Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx*
forever, like the moon, **which remains a faithful witness in the sky.**" (Selah)"
(CJB Psa 89.26-37)

Again, this is a verification / confirmation of the Word in Flesh' Words He Spoke in Matt 5.17-19, directly cited from the Word of YAHUAH. To obey these Words never means Torah obedience is *legalism*; rather it is *guarding* the Rock in the heart *for* salvation!

YAHUAH Commands to keep His Torah by keeping Him as the Rock in the inner self (heart), because if it is forgotten or disregarded or wandered from, the Rock will be a *stumbling block* to a person. The Word in Flesh gave this exact interpretation in His Teachings, and today still is it proof of being a stumbling block to people:

*"And He becomes for a holies; and for a **stone of stubbing** and for a **rock of offence** to **both the houses of Yisra El** for a snare; and for a snare to the settlers of Yeru Shalem: and among them, many falter and fall - broken and snared and captured. Bind up the witness, **seal the Torah among my disciples**. And I await Yah Veh who hides his face from the house of Yaaqov, and I await him."*¹²⁰ (ECB Isa 8.14-17)

*"Isaiah also cries out concerning Israel: "THOUGH THE NUMBER OF THE CHILDREN OF ISRAEL BE AS THE SAND OF THE SEA, THE REMNANT WILL BE SAVED. FOR HE WILL FINISH THE WORK AND CUT IT SHORT IN RIGHTEOUSNESS, BECAUSE THE LORD WILL MAKE A SHORT WORK UPON THE EARTH." And as Isaiah said before: "UNLESS THE LORD OF SABAOTH (Heavenly Armies) HAD LEFT US A SEED, WE WOULD HAVE BECOME LIKE SODOM, AND WE WOULD HAVE BEEN MADE LIKE GOMORRAH." What shall we say then? That **Gentiles, who did not pursue righteousness, have attained to righteousness, even the righteousness of faith**; but Israel, pursuing the law of righteousness, has not attained to the law of righteousness. Why? Because they did not seek it by faith, but as it were, by the works of the law. **For they** (both Gentile and Israel) **stumbled at that stumbling stone**. As it is written: "BEHOLD, I LAY IN ZION A **STUMBLING STONE AND ROCK OF OFFENSE**, AND*

¹²⁰ **Hab 1:12** Is U dan nie uit die voortyd nie, o HERE, my God, my Heilige? Ons sal nie sterwe nie. HERE, tot 'n strafoordeel het U hom bestel en, o Rots, tot 'n tugroede het U hom bestem!

WHOEVER BELIEVES ON HIM WILL NOT BE PUT TO SHAME." (NKJV Rom 9.27-33)

Sha'ul *interpreted* the Prophecy precisely as the Prophet Isaiah to *both* Gentile who has to become the House of Israel and the Jewish people who is the House of Y'hudah. The Torah of YAHUAH Creator has to be *sealed* in the hearts when they are disciples of Him, because righteousness (and unrighteousness) comes from the heart. As Elohim said many times in the BIBLE, the fruit (good or bad) comes from the heart and the deeds and what comes from the mouth, is the *proven fruit* from the heart.

Why then will Elohim say that the Torah will be a *Stumbling Stone* and why does He *compare* the Torah with Mashiach? This question has a few answers, but several Apostles (Sha'ul, Matthiyahu, Kepha / Peter) interpreted and explained it exactly according the Prophecies of the Prophets. It is obvious the Prophets knew that the Torah from the direct Word of YAHUAH will be the Stumbling Stone to people when Mashiach will be / live the Living Torah on earth; when people still will *pervert* Torah as legalism! People will not believe it, or they will be misleded to not believe in Torah and people will reject Torah as valid and alive when the Heavens and the earth are still alive¹²¹:

"Jesus said to them, Did you never read in the Scriptures, "A Stone which the builders rejected, this One became the Head of the Corner? This was from the Lord, and it is a wonder in our eyes?" (LITV Matt 21.42)

Prophet David, the root of Mashiach, Prophesied also the same Word given to Isaiah:

"The stone which the builders refused is become the head stone of the corner. This is Yahweh's doing; it is marvellous in our eyes." (WOY Psa 118.22-23)

It should be *marvellous* in the eyes of the believer and not a *stumbling stone* to obey or to belief the Prophecy of YAHUAH: Mashaich the Torah is the Rock that should not be rejected, but the Cornerstone of obedience and belief:

¹²¹ LITV Matt 5.18: *"Truly I say to you, Until the heaven and the earth pass away, in no way shall one iota or one point pass away from the Law until all comes to pass."*

*"Therefore it is also contained in the Scripture, "BEHOLD, I LAY IN ZION A CHIEF CORNERSTONE, ELECT, PRECIOUS, AND HE WHO BELIEVES ON HIM WILL BY NO MEANS BE PUT TO SHAME." Therefore, to you who believe, He is precious; **but to those who are disobedient**, "THE STONE WHICH THE BUILDERS REJECTED HAS BECOME THE CHIEF CORNERSTONE," and "A STONE OF STUMBLING AND A ROCK OF OFFENSE." They stumble, being disobedient to the word, to which they also were appointed." (NKJV 1 Pet 2.6-8)*

There can be no argument anymore when the BIBLE is taken as the only form of *interpretation*, which explains and fully interprets the meaning of the Word Rock used by El Shaddai (Elohim Almighty).

YAHUAH made it explicitly clear through the Prophets that He is the Rock and Elohim, no one besides Him! He went even further and said that what came from the Voice of the Rock is the very same Rock (Torah), which will be a Stumbling Rock when people are disobedient to His Word / Voice / Torah.

Now brothers and sisters who are believers in Christianity, the Apostles knew this Prophecy of the Rock as they directly cited / interpreted the Word(s) given to the Prophets. The Prophecy was even further explained by the Apostles where they gave further interpretation that the Testimony of the Rock is Mashiach (the Messiah).

Within this Chapter is proven several times the Oneness of our Creator and when He says He is One and the Only Elohim, He means it, because He is a Jealous GOD (part of the Second Commandment). Elohim is the Rock. The Word Spoke the Torah and will be the Rock of Stubbing to the *disbelieving / disobedient* people. The same Stumbling Rock is haMashiach to disbelieving people. When all interpretation of the Prophecy of the Rock in the BIBLE is taken and put together, is it clear that Elohim is the Rock, Torah the Word of Elohim is the Rock and the Messiah is the precise Rock of the Prophecy.

The Word Spoke through Isaiah and said His children must be as a *sign and wonder / miracle* (Isa 8.18) to Elohim of Sabaoth (Heavenly Armies – Rom 9.29 KJV) Who lives on Mount Zion, but many will be caught and trapped by the Rock who does not *bind* this **Testimony** to them and who does not *seal* the Torah in the hearts as a disciple (Isa 8.16).

This Word of the Rock is the Prophecy of the Torah and of the Testimony. The Testimony of Mashiach as it is given through the Apostles / Disciples in the first century:

"To the Law and to the Testimony! If they do not speak according to this Word, it is because there is no dawn (light) to them!" (LITV Isa 8.20)

Everything has to make more sense to people in this Chapter and is it impossible to separate Elohim from light and Torah, and YAHUAH Elohim from the Rock and Mashiach, as it is impossible to separate the Voice from His Owner YAHUAH Creator.

Sit ook die Prophecy van die Rock van Daniel se vision in...! – Open 1 – 2 ook...

2.5.7 TORAH IS THE WAY

The Torah has Authority / Power, because Torah was Spoken by the Author YAHUAH! YAHUAH explained to people in *many* ways that His Torah (the Light and the Rock) cannot be perverted into legalism or be destroyed / rejected, because *only* through obedience / faith will Torah be kept / guarded in the heart to guide, direct and protect a believer to *righteousness*.

People must start to understand the meaning of the "*fear of Elohim*" to know how to obey the only Way He Instructed His followers to follow in righteousness.

The Prophets in the TaNaKh Prophesied the Word from the Voice of YAHUAH and the Apostles Testified the Truth of the Prophecies *with* the Word (Torah) in Flesh as their Testimony.

Everything Elohim (GOD) Spoke in the TaNaKh became Truth and Alive through Mashiach and it is verified through Yochanan in John 14.6 when Mashiach said: "*He the Word in Flesh is the Way, the Truth and the Life*" and it is because of the *works* of YAHUAH (14.10). He continued to say that *if* people *love* Him, people *will* keep His Torah (14.15) and those people who *protect / guard* His Torah will the Mashiach be *revealed* to them (14.21).

Think of this very carefully and read John 14 again with all of the above in mind. The Ruach (Spirit) is the Ruach of Elohim (GOD) and knows everything from the Word / Voice of Elohim and will Testify everything as the Truth. Therefore will the *Ruach of the Truth* be with every believer and will Teach (14.26) the believer *only* the Truth which came from the Word of Elohim the Father (14.24).

How many people know that YAHUAH Elohim Taught the Ruach everything and He *generated* the Ruach (just like He generated Mashiach – Isa 9.5-6):

*"Who has measured the Spirit of Adonai? **Who has been his counselor, instructing him?** Whom did he consult, to gain understanding? Who taught him how to judge, taught him what he needed to know, showed him how to discern?"*
(WOY Isa 40.13-14)

The Word of YAHUAH Elohim is *eternal* (40.8) and whatever He said stands forever! YAHUAH has placed *His* Ruach *upon* His Servant, which He generated through His Prophecy and became Truth through His Testimonies as the Messiah.¹²² The Ruach been Taught by the Creator is the very same Ruach, the Teacher of the believer who loves Elohim and who will love the Truth and Way of the Word in Flesh, which is the *Works* of Elohim the Father.

This is the Ruach who will Teach every person the Torah to *understand* righteous justice from the Master Giver of the Law / Torah and the meaning of His Instructions.¹²³ The Torah is not Taught by the Ruach to be burdensome¹²⁴ or to make His Yoke heavy, but to understand righteousness, love and grace from knowing Torah.

¹²² NLT Isa 42.1: "Look at My Servant, whom I strengthen. He is My Chosen One, who pleases Me. I have put My Spirit upon Him. He will bring justice to the nations."

¹²³ NLT Isa 42.3-9: "A bruised reed shall he not break, and the smoking flax shall he not quench: **He shall bring forth judgment unto truth.** He shall not fail nor be discouraged, till He have set judgment in the earth: and the isles shall wait for His Law. Thus saith El Yahweh, He that created the heavens, and stretched them out; He that spread forth the earth, and that which cometh out of it; He that giveth breath unto the people upon it, **and spirit to them** that walk therein: I Yahweh have called thee in righteousness, and will hold thine hand, and will keep thee, and give thee for a covenant of the people, **for a light** of the Gentiles; **To open the blind eyes,** to bring out the prisoners from the prison, and them that sit in darkness out of the prison house. I am Yahweh (YHVH / YAHUAH): that is my name: and my honour will I not give to another, neither my praise to graven images. Behold, the former things are come to pass, and new things do I declare: before they spring forth I tell you of them."

¹²⁴

*Knowing Torah is setting a person free from being under the Law of sin, while Torah in
 *actual fact brings a person under the *grace* of the Law / Torah.

Torah was given by Elohim through His direct Word *to know and to understand* sin and the *unrighteousness* that comes from sinning! Without Torah people will *wander* from YAHUAH Elohim and will not know the righteousness he *planned* for His people.

YAHUAH Elohim will *not* contradict Himself when He Spoke His Word to the Prophets with His Word in Flesh that YAHUAH *created*¹²⁵ when He Spoke to the Apostles! Nor can any Word from any Prophet *be in contrast* to a Word from any Apostle in the first century. Some texts will follow to verify Torah *cannot be perverted* as "legalism" and that Torah cannot be abolished / done-away-with, because then the Word is in contrast with the Word given to the Prophets and Apostle:

*"But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter in the Torah to become void. But he (**Avraham**) replied, 'If they won't listen to Moshe and the Prophets, they won't be convinced **even** if someone rises from the dead!'"*
 (CJB Luke 16.17, 31)

*"Does it follow that we abolish Torah by this trusting? **Heaven forbid!** On the contrary, we confirm Torah." (CJB Rom 3.31)*

"Therefore, what are we to say? That the Torah is sinful? Heaven forbid! Rather, the function of the Torah was that without it, I would not have known what sin is. For example, I would not have become conscious of what greed is if the Torah had not said, "Thou shalt not covet." But sin, seizing the opportunity afforded by the commandment, worked in me all kinds of evil desires — for apart from Torah, sin is dead." (CJB Rom 7.7-8)

¹²⁵ Isa 9.5(6): "For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty El, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace." (Psa 2.7; Heb 1.5, 5.5) – John 1.14: "And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his majesty, the majesty as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth." The Testimony of Mashiach was known to Yochanan (John 1.15) through the witness of the Word that became Flesh: "John **bare witness of Him**, and cried, saying, This was He of whom I spoke, He that cometh after me is preferred before me: for He was before me." And everybody know Mashiach's earthly birth was 6 months after Yochanan's birth (Luk 1.36)

"So the Torah is holy; that is, the commandment is holy, just and good. For we know that the Torah is of the Spirit; but as for me, I am bound to the old nature, sold to sin as a slave." (CJB Rom 7.12, 14)

"For in my inner self (my heart) I completely agree with God's Torah; but in my various parts, I see a different "torah," one that battles with the Torah in my mind and makes me a prisoner of sin's "torah," which is operating in my various parts. What a miserable creature I am! Who will rescue me from this body bound for death? Thanks be to God [he will]! — through Yeshua the Messiah, our Lord! To sum up: with my mind, I am a slave of God's Torah¹²⁶; but with my old nature, I am a slave of sin's "Torah." (CJB Rom 7.22-[26]25)

"The sting of death is sin; and sin draws its power from the Torah;" (CJB 1 Cor 15.56)

** "Now, **"Adonai" in this text means the Spirit.** And where the Spirit of Adonai is, there is freedom. So all of us, with faces unveiled, see as in a mirror the glory of the Lord; and we are being changed into His very image, from one degree of glory to the next, by Adonai **the Spirit.**"* (2 Cor 3.17-18)

*"But the **fruit of the Spirit** is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, humility, self control. **Nothing in the Torah stands against such things.**"* (CJB Gal 5.22-23)

*"Furthermore, you who heard the message of the truth, the Good News offering you deliverance, and put your trust in the Messiah were **sealed** by Him with the promised Ruach HaKodesh,"* (CJB Eph 1.13)

☆ The seal of the Ruach as in Isaiah 8.16 explained above on p.44 and p.66.

*"And they were both (Zecharyah and Elisheva) **righteous** before Elohim, walking in **all** the commandments **and** ordinances of Yahweh blameless."* (WOY Luke 1.6)

¹²⁶ KJV Rom 7.25: "I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind **I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin.**"

"Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, sin is violation of Torah." (CJB 1 Joh 3.4)

*"For if we deliberately **continue** to sin **after** receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, but only the terrifying prospect of Judgment, of raging fire that will consume the enemies. Someone who disregards the **Torah** of Moshe is put to death without mercy on the word of two or three witnesses." (CJB Heb 10.26-28)*

"Indeed, this is what you were called to; because the Messiah too suffered, on your behalf, leaving an example so that you should follow in His steps. "He committed no sin, nor was any deceit found on his lips." (1 Pet 2.21-22)

To understand Torah is to understand why a person needs the *gift of grace* from Elohim. Grace is not a "free-be", but a *gift* from the Almighty when sin is *acknowledged* and the person *offer* repentance of his sin(s) **and** he / she *returns* to Elohim for *forgiveness*, whereby Elohim in return gives His *gift of mercy / grace* of forgiveness.

When the knowledge of sin is rejected or unknown, does unrighteousness *prevail* and does a person in retrospect turn the *gift of grace* from Elohim into *cheap-grace*!

Grace must be sought from Elohim and because a person turns away from sin, Elohim will give His gift of grace in return because of your faith in righteousness. Thus, by rejecting or abolishing sin a person in actual fact abolish or reject grace. Therefore, by "killing" Torah is to "killing" sin, and when sin is "killed" by a person, a person "kills" the *gift of grace*.

The Ruach will never abolish, reject or destroy the Torah, nor will the Ruach Teach that Torah is not necessary anymore, because then the Ruach will be in *contrast* with what YAHUAH Taught and Instructed the Ruach (Isa 40.13-14). The Ruach will not and cannot be in contrast with YAHUAH His Teacher / Instructor / Counsellor, nor will Mashiach, the Living Word be in contrast with Himself. The following verse from Y'hudah explains how unrighteous / Godless / Torahless people try to *pervert* the *grace* of Elohim into a *license* for licentiousness / debauchery / uncleanness / lewdness / ungodliness / wantonness / sensuality / lechery / lasciviousness:

*"For certain individuals, the ones written about long ago as being meant for this condemnation, have wormed their way in — **ungodly people who pervert God's grace** into a license for debauchery and disown our only Master and Lord, Yeshua the Messiah." (CJB Jude 1.4)*

Above are just *some* examples by the Apostles from the knowledge they received from the *only* Scripture available to them then: the TaNaKh, the Hebrew BIBLE.

To also verify and prove (as from start of Chapter 2.5) the complete Oneness of YAHUAH ABBA the Creator who *generated / created* Mashiach through the Testimonies / Witnesses of His Word Spoken, further prove follow with the Word of YAHUAH that promised and explicitly said people / generations will be blessed through Avraham. Also, the BIBLE explains those people who is *part of* Yisra'el and who is like the Patriarch Avraham the abba of Yisra'el in word and deed, will be righteous with Elohim.

Avraham's halachah (walk of life) was righteous and he was a follower exactly according the Way of YAHUAH. Mashaich was also the *perfect* Testimony / Witness of the Way of YAHUAH He Spoke from His Word / Voice. Therefore, all the Apostles and disciples who followed haMashiach, followed the exact Way the Word in Flesh Followed / Walked, according the *already set / established* Way of / by YAHUAH!

First, let's confirm the Way in the TaNaKh and by the Living Word, and then return to see how Avraham followed this Way and how the Apostles *interpreted* the Way to the people; how the Way must be followed according Avraham as a Patriarch. Within the Torah YAHUAH gave His likes and dislikes in the form of Rules / Instructions, Ordinances / Judgements, Statutes and Laws *direct* from His Voice, which is His Word Spoken to His Servant the Prophet Moshe¹²⁷. All compiled in the Torah by Moshe with the *Works* of YAHUAH in the Chamash (five Books of Moshe):

¹²⁷ CJB Num 12.7: "But it isn't that way with my servant Moshe. He is the only one who is faithful in my entire household." CJB Josh 1.7: "Only be strong and very bold in taking care to follow all the Torah which Moshe my servant ordered you to follow; do not turn from it either to the right or to the left; then you will succeed wherever you go." CJB Neh 9.13-14: "'You descended on Mount Sinai and spoke with them from heaven. You gave them right rulings and true teachings, good laws and mitzvot. You revealed to them your holy Shabbat and gave them mitzvot, laws and the Torah through Moshe your servant.'" WOY Neh 10.28-29: "And the rest of the people, the priests, the Levites, the porters, the singers, the Nethinims, and all they that had separated themselves from the people of the lands unto the law of Elohim, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, every one having knowledge, and having

"And now, Israel, what doth Yahweh thy Elohim require of thee, but to fear Yahweh thy Elohim, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve Yahweh thy Elohim with all thy heart and with all thy soul, To keep the commandments of Yahweh, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good? Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens is Yahweh's, thy Elohim, the earth also, with all that therein is." (CJB Deut 10.12-14)

This is the very same reason why the Living Word (Word in Flesh, Word became Alive) *interpreted* the exact direct Word of YAHUAH on earth and why the Followers of Mashiach also *taught / interpreted* these exact Words:

"Think not that I (Mashiach) am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil. For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled. Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven." (WOY Matt 5.17-19)

When the Living Word *interpreted* these Words exactly, surely the Word also knew the rest of the Word Spoken in the beginning, like the following:

*"Moshe cried to Adonai; and Adonai showed him a certain piece of wood, which, when he threw it into the water, made the water taste good. There Adonai made laws and rules **of life for them, and there he tested them.** He said, **"If you will listen intently to the voice of Adonai your God, do what He considers right, pay attention** to His mitzvot and observe His laws, I will not afflict you with any of*

*understanding; They clave to their brethren, their nobles, **and entered into a curse, and into an oath,** to walk in Elohim's law, which was given by Moses the servant of Elohim, and to observe and do all the commandments of Yahweh our Sovereign, and his judgments and his statutes;" CJB Dan 9.11: "Yes, all Isra'el flouted your Torah and turned away, unwilling to listen to your voice. Therefore the **curse and oath** written in the Torah of Moshe the servant of God was poured out on us, because we sinned against him." WOY Mal 4.4: "Remember ye the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments." CJB Heb 3.5: "Also, Moshe was faithful in all God's house, as a servant giving witness to things God would divulge later." CJB Rev 15.3: "They were singing the song of Moshe, the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb: "Great and wonderful are the things you have done, Adonai, God of heaven's armies! Just and true are your ways, king of the nations!"*

the diseases I brought on the Egyptians; because I am Adonai your healer." (CJB Exo 15.25-26)

Adonai the Healer, He healed people through the Word He Spoke and the Spoken Word Who Healed from the beginning became Alive and Healed people again on earth; *through the Works of the Father*¹²⁸. Luke the Follower of the Spoken Word interpreted exactly the same direct Living Word of Moshe:

"But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter in the Torah to become void." (CJB Luke 16.17)

The Apostle Sha'ul followed the exact Way of YAHUAH that He Spoke to Moshe and Sha'ul was raised as a child according this Way, the same Way the Prophets Prophesied¹²⁹ in the TaNaKh. Here follow various texts from the Book of Acts interpreting to Congregations the Way of YAHUAH is the correct Way:

"He has to remain in heaven until the time comes for restoring everything, as God said long ago, when he spoke through the holy prophets. For Moshe himself said, 'Adonai will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your brothers. You are to listen to everything he tells you. Everyone who fails to listen to that prophet will be removed from the people and destroyed.' Indeed, all the prophets announced these days, starting with Sh'mu'el and continuing through all who followed. "You are the sons of the prophets; and you are included in the covenant which God made with our fathers when he said to Avraham, 'By your seed will all the families of the earth be blessed.'" (CJB 3.21-25)

"And he went into the Synagogue, and for three months he was preaching there without fear, reasoning and teaching about the kingdom of God. But because some of the people were hard-hearted and would not give hearing, saying evil words about the Way before the people, he went away from them, and kept the

¹²⁸ LITV John 14.10-11: "Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me? The Words which I speak to you I do not speak from Myself, but the Father who abides in Me, He does the works. Believe Me that I am in the Father, and the Father is in Me; but if not, believe Me because of the works themselves."

¹²⁹ WOY Rom 1.1-2: "Paul, a servant of Yahshua the Messiah, called to be an apostle, separated unto the **good news of Yahweh**, Which he had promised afore by **His prophets in the holy scriptures**,"

Ⲛⲕ Research is the process of elimination, whatever remains is the truth *Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx*
disciples separate, reasoning every day in the school (yeshivah) of Tyrannus."
(CJB Acts 19.8-9)

This Way was the same Way Sha'ul persecuted before:

*"Meanwhile, Sha'ul, still breathing murderous threats **against the Lord's** (Adonai) **talmidim** (disciples), went to the cohen hagadol (high priest) and asked him for letters to the synagogues in Dammesek, authorizing him to arrest any people he might find, whether men or women, **who belonged to "the Way,"** and bring them back to Yerushalayim."*

After the repentance of Sha'ul's sins of persecuting the Way of YAHUAH, he received a Vision from Elohim stated that he persecuted the Way of the Living Word as Mashiach on earth. Sha'ul started to teach people (in his Hebrew language) the Way he persecuted was in fact the only and correct Way to understand everything about the Mashiach and to believe who He is comes from the Torah and TaNaKh:

*"When they heard him speaking to them in Hebrew, they settled down more; so he continued: "I am a Jew, born in Tarsus of Cilicia, but brought up in this city and trained at the **feet of Gamli'el in every detail of the Torah** of our forefathers. I was a **zealot for God**, as all of you are today. I persecuted to death the **followers of this Way**, arresting both men and women and throwing them in prison. 14 He said, 'The **God of our fathers** determined in advance that you **should know His will**, see the Tzaddik (Righteous One) and **hear His voice**;"* (CJB Acts 22.2-4, 14)

*"But this I do admit to you: I worship the God of our fathers **in accordance with the Way (which they call a sect)**. I continue to believe everything that **accords with the Torah and everything written in the Prophets** (in the TaNaKh / O.T.)."* (CJB Acts 24.14)

What is to follow is the ultimate interpretation and reason why the Word Spoken to Moshe, the Torah and the Word to the Prophets (rest of TaNaKh / O.T.) are so vitally important to understand, and not to pervert into legalism. This is the Way so many people *still today persecute* like Sha'ul persecuted the Way by not believing the Word of YAHUAH in the Torah from Moshe and the Word to the Prophets:

*"But we do think it would be appropriate to hear your views from you, yourself; for all we know about this sect is that people everywhere speak against it." So they arranged a day with him and came to his quarters in large numbers. From morning until evening he explained the matter to them, giving **a thorough witness** about the **Kingdom of God** and making use of both the **Torah of Moshe and the Prophets** to **persuade them about Yeshua**. Some were convinced by what he said, **while others refused to believe**. So they left, disagreeing among themselves, after Sha'ul had made one final statement: "The Ruach HaKodesh (Set-Apart Spirit) spoke well in saying to your fathers through **Yesha`yahu the prophet**," (CJB Acts 28.22-25)*

Might this not be the reason why so many people have "their own interpretation" of what Mashiach / Messiah *really / truly* means and what the Testimonies of YAHUAH actually imply / mean by the Witnesses of the Word in Flesh Himself? Did the Ruach HaKodesh of YAHUAH make a mistake when He *revealed* the Truth of the Child YAHUAH will generate as the Mashiach, through the Prophet Yesha'yahu / Isaiah:

"For a Child is born; to us a Son is given; and the government is on His shoulder; and His name (Character and Authority) is called Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace." (LITV Isa 9.5)

Acts 7 confirms the beginning of the Torah from the Living Word of YAHUAH, starting at the Patriarch father Avraham to where Moshe received the whole Torah on the Mountain (the same Mountain where the Apostles received the Teachings from the Living Word, also forty days – Acts 1.3). Stefanos was eventually persecuted, because he was a Torah-observant believer (Acts 7.59), which he received from the *Angels* of YAHUAH as many in the first century:

*"Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute? They killed those who told in advance about the coming of the Tzaddik (Righteous), and now you have become His betrayers and murderers! — you! — **who receive the Torah as having been delivered by angels** — but do not keep it!"*

More prove follow that the Apostles and followers of the Way knew the Torah and observed the Word of YAHUAH to the Prophets. Acts 10 clearly stated that Kefa / Peter knew to be Set-Apart before YAHUAH by not eating unclean animals, because he wanted to be Kodesh / Holy as YAHUAH is Kodesh and as He Testified with Mashiach to be Kodesh as He is Kodesh / Holy. Kefa wrote the Book of Acts and surely he knew every text cited above from Acts:

*"14 But Kefa said, "No, sir! Absolutely not! **I have never eaten food that was unclean or treif (unholy).**" 26 But Kefa pulled him to his feet and said, "Stand up! I myself am just a man." 27 As he talked with him, Kefa went inside and found many people gathered. 28 He said to them, "You are well aware that for a man who is a Jew to have close association with someone who belongs to another people, or to come and visit him, is something that just isn't done. But God has shown me not to call any person **common (unholy) or unclean;**" (CJB Acts 10.14, 25-28)*

See, the dream was never about "it is ok to eat unclean food", because Sha'ul surely tested him in his dream, but it was rather calling someone unholy or unclean. Kefa knew Torah and what written in the Prophets as it was proven with the Way he followed.

Leviticus 11 contains exactly all the Instructions and Laws of YAHUAH of what animals are clean and what kind of animals are unclean *to eat*. YAHUAH gave these Torah Instructions not to be a *burden* or heavy, but to show His love to humankind by explaining in detail what animals are good / clean to eat, to be Kodesh to Him, because He is Kodesh:

"You are not to make yourselves detestable with any of these swarming, crawling creatures; do not make yourselves unclean with them, do not defile yourselves with them. For I am Adonai your God; therefore, consecrate yourselves and be holy, for I am holy; and do not defile yourselves with any kind of swarming creature that moves along the ground. For I am Adonai, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt to be your God. Therefore you are to be holy, because I am holy. "Such, then, is the law concerning animals, flying creatures, all living creatures that move about in the water, and all creatures that swarm on the ground. Its purpose is to distinguish between the unclean and the clean, and between the creatures that may be eaten and those that may not be eaten." (CJB Lev 11.43-47)

It was confirmed in Deuteronomy 14

"Ye are the children of Yahweh your Elohim: ye shall not cut yourselves, nor make any baldness between your eyes for the dead. For thou art an holy people unto Yahweh thy Elohim, and Yahweh hath chosen thee to be a peculiar people unto himself, above all the nations that are upon the earth. Thou shalt not eat any abominable (disgusting) thing." (WOY Deut 14.1-3)

Kefa knew to be clean and Kodesh to YAHUAH is to be *righteous* to Him, because He is the Righteous One, and Kefa taught it to the people also in Acts 10:

*"34 Then Kefa addressed them: "I now understand **that God** (Elohim) does not play favorites, 35 but that whoever fears Him (Elohim) and **does what is right** is acceptable to Him, no matter what people he belongs to. 36 "Here is the message that He (Elohim) sent to the sons of Isra'el announcing shalom **through** Yeshua the Messiah, He (Elohim) who is Adonai of everything. 43 All the prophets bear witness to Him, that everyone who puts his trust in Him receives forgiveness of sins through His name (Character and Authority of Elohim)." (CJB Acts 10.34-36, 43)*

The Apostles kept the Appointed Times (Mo'edim) of YAHUAH, the Pesach *together with* the Feast of Unleavened Bread (Acts 12), because it is exactly as the name says, "it is an Appointed Time *with* YAHUAH Elohim" and what makes it more special is that it is a type and shadow of Mashiach. The Shadow / Body of Mashiach of the Appointed Times created by YAHUAH is the Witness in the Feasts of Pesach / Passover (Crucifixion), Hag haMatzah / Unleavened Bread (Tree days in the Grave) and Bikkurim / First Fruits (Ressurrection).

They even kept the most Kodesh Appointed Time Sabbath. It is obviously as they knew the Word according the Prophets and the Torah, and because these Appointed Times are types and shadows of the Body of Mashiach (Col 2.16-17):

*"After passing through Amphipolis and Apollonia, Sha'ul and Sila came to Thessalonica, where there was a synagogue. **According to his usual practice,***

*Sha'ul went in; and on **three Shabbats** he gave them drashes from the **Tanakh**," (CJB Acts 17.1-2)*

"For they that dwell at Jerusalem, and their rulers, because they knew him not, nor yet the voices of the prophets which are read every sabbath day, they have fulfilled them in condemning him."

If Sha'ul and the Apostles knew the Torah and what is Written in the TaNaKh by the Prophets, they then obviously knew the Book of Chronicles, which confirms the **creation** of the Appointed Times, the Sabbaths and the New Moon by the Creator YAHUAH:

*"Even after a certain rate every day, offering according to the commandment of Moses, **on the sabbaths**, and on the **new moons**, and on the **solemn feasts**, three times in the year, even in the feast of unleavened bread, and in the feast of weeks, and in the feast of tabernacles."*

The Word in Flesh even attended the Appointed Time of the Solemn Feast of Sukkot (Tabernacles), which was created *through* the Word of YAHUAH, yes in the Torah:

*"1 After this, Yeshua traveled around in the Galil, intentionally avoiding Y'hudah because the Judeans were out to kill him. 2 But the **festival of Sukkot in Y'hudah** was near; 14 Not until the festival was half over did **Yeshua go up to the Temple courts and begin to teach**. 15 The Judeans were surprised: "How does this man know so much without having studied?" they asked. 16 So Yeshua gave them an answer: "My teaching is not my own, it comes from the One who sent me. 17 **If anyone wants to do His will**, he will know whether My teaching is from God or I speak on my own. 37 Now on the last day of the festival, Hoshana Rabbah, Yeshua stood and cried out, "If anyone is thirsty, **let him keep coming to me and drinking!**" (CJB John 7.1-2, 14-17, 37)*

2.5.8 CONNECTION BETWEEN AVRAHAM AND THE WAY

The importance between Avraham and the Way is the exact connection the BIBLE interprets *for* the faith of the peoples and to the Way Mashiach Witnessed to His followers. YAHUAH *instructed* His Way in the Torah to Avraham (four hundred and thirty years

before YAHUAH gave it to Moshe on the Mountain and instructed him to write it down) **for** Avraham and His children Yisra'el to be *righteous and just / fair*:

*"inasmuch as Avraham is sure to become a great and strong nation, **and all the nations of the earth will be blessed by him?** For I have made **Myself** known to him (YAHUAH's Character and Authority), so that he will give orders to his children and to his household after him **to keep the way of Adonai and to do what is righteous and just**, so that Adonai may bring about for Avraham what he has promised him." (CJB Gen 18.18-19)*

Sha'ul confirms his teachings come from the TaNaKh and that he knew the Torah which Moshe wrote:

*"The reason the **promise is based on trusting** is so that it may come as **God's free gift**, a promise that can be relied on **by all the seed**, not only those who live within the framework of the Torah (the Jewish people), but also those with the kind of trust Avraham had — **Avraham avinu (father) for all of us**. This accords with the Tanakh, where it says, "I have appointed you to be a father to many nations." **Avraham is our father in God's sight because he trusted God** as the one who gives life to the dead and calls nonexistent things into existence. For he was past hope, yet in hope he trusted that he would indeed become a father to many nations, in keeping with what he had been told, "So many will your seed be." (CJB Rom 4.16-18)*

Avraham kept the Way of YAHUAH Elohim and therefore did YAHUAH kept His Propmise and will YAHUAH keep His promise till today; to the ones who keep the Way (Promise) of YAHUAH. How could Avraham keep the Torah if YAHUAH only gave the Torah to Moshe four hundred and fifty years later? YAHUAH Elohim *said* so and obviously put it in the mind of Avraham and written it on his heart, and Avraham *proved* it by his actions / deeds / fruits:

*"And I will increase your seed like the stars of the heavens, and I will give to your seed all these lands. **And all the nations of the earth shall bless themselves in your Seed, because** Abraham listened to My voice and heeded My charge (requirements), My commands, My statutes, and My laws." (LITV Gen 26.4-5)*

"That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Yahshua the Messiah; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith." (WOY Gal 3.14)

This is the exact faith every person has to have to receive the promise of YAHUAH. A person will be blessed as the *seed of Avraham* when a person keeps the Way of the Creator. Most people think that the New Covenant has "arrived", but it did not! Why? Because if it did, every person would have known the Covenant / Torah in their minds and also would it have been written on the hearts and would it be lived from the heart / fruit:

*"For God does find fault with the people when he says," 'See! The days are coming,' says Adonai, 'when I will establish over the house of Isra'el and over the house of Y'hudah a new Covenant. " 'It will not be like the covenant which I made with their fathers on the day when I took them by their hand and led them forth out of the land of Egypt; because they, **for their part, did not remain faithful to My Covenant**; so I, for My part, stopped concerning myself with them,' says Adonai. "'For this is the Covenant which I will make with the house of Isra'el after those days,' says Adonai: **'I will put my Torah in their minds and write it on their hearts; I will be their God, and they will be My people.** "'None of them will teach his fellow-citizen or his brother, saying, "Know Adonai!" For all will know Me, from the least of them to the greatest," (CJB Heb 8.8-11)*

If a person sees him- or herself as part of Yisra'el, then the person is part of the people of YAHUAH; and then the Torah will be fixed in their minds, which means the person has the knowledge and wisdom of Torah. Also does YAHUAH say that the Torah will be written on the heart of the person who has the new Covenant, which means whatever comes from the mouth and the deeds a person shows, is the *fruit from the heart*.

Therefore did the new Covenant not "arrive" yet, because every person does not know the Torah like Yisra'el is supposed to and is it still today necessary to teach each other Torah! For, if the Torah was in the mind and in the heart, people would not have to teach our fellow-citizen Torah. Every person would have known the *completeness and fullness of love* (Rom 13.10) if people knew the Character and Authority of YAHUAHElohim, which is the Testimonies in / of the Torah.

The Creator wants every person to know the Truth and to keep / guard the Torah He Instructed with His Voice / Word within each one's *innerself*, because He gave it out of love for His creation and not to be a burden. Avraham, our Patriarch avinu had the Torah in his mind (the knowledge and understanding) and in his heart (proven from his fruit / faith), and YAHUAH said it will be again the same as with Avraham. Everyone who guard and protect the Torah in the heart will be called His people, Yisra'el.

Mashiach Testified / Witnessed the Way through showing humanity how Torah should be lived and how a person should be kodesh (holy) as He was Kodesh. By following the Way / Will / Desire of YAHUAH as the Living Word was the Witness of His Will, a person is Kodesh / Holy and a person *does* what Elohim / GOD approves.¹³⁰

The Ruach HaKodesh of YAHUAH will make a person Kodesh (Heb 10.14) and He will be the Witness of the Torah in the hearts and minds of every person (Heb 10.16). Therefore, when the heart of a person is circumcised and he / she received the knowledge of the Truth / Living Torah, and a person keeps on sinning through rejecting / neglecting what is written in the Torah, such a person will die and not see everlasting life. No forgiveness will be left and his / her Judgment will be a child of the Adversary / Satan:

"For if we deliberately continue to sin after receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, but only the terrifying prospect of Judgment, of raging fire that will consume the enemies. Someone who disregards the Torah of Moshe is put to death without mercy on the word of two or three witnesses." (CJB Heb 10.26-28)

Remember what the Word Taught his children what is sin:

"Everyone practicing sin also practices lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness." (LITV 1 John 3.4)

There are always three Witnesses already for a person's Judgment, the First Witness is YAHUAH Who is the Torah-giver, the Second Witness is the Ruach HaKodesh of Elohim

¹³⁰ CJB Heb 10.9-10: "and then, "Look, I have come to do your will"; he takes away the first system in order to set up the second. It is in connection with this will that we have been separated for God and made holy, once and for all, through the offering of Yeshua the Messiah's body. "

within a person and the Third Witness is the Living Word of YAHUAH Who left His *Print* behind as Witness.

By boasting Torah is kept, thus a person boasting the works of the Torah, without the meaning / knowing of the Torah is being without faith. Faith is being righteous before the Creator and to be righteous is to show the fruit / deeds received *through* the wisdom and knowledge of Torah (Gal 3.10-12).

Avraham had such a faith and every person who has the same faith, will be blessed with avinu Avraham (Gal 3.9).

Avraham guarded the Torah / Way in his heart (Gen 26.5), he received grace / favour / mercy from YAHUAH, his faith is the benchmark / milestone for every person who wants to be a firstborn (Yisra'el) to YAHUAH and he is the example to be part of the inheritance of the promise, a brother and sister of the free / unrestrained. Not free from the Torah (Avraham was never free from Torah), but free from the flesh / sin / unrighteousness:

"Nevertheless, what does the Tanakh say? "Get rid of the slave woman and her son, for by no means will the son of the slave woman inherit along with the son of the free woman!" So, brothers, we are children not of the slave woman, but of the free woman." (CJB Gal 4.30-31)

Sarah, the wife of Avraham, and *her* children (Yitz'chaq and Ya'acov / Yisra'el) were the *obedient* ones to YAHUAH and their faith proved their knowledge and wisdom of the Torah, but the wife Hagar and her children (Ishmail's descendants) were unfaithful / lawless / Toraless / unrighteous and will not inherit with the free from sin (obedient Yisra'el).

Being a slave is being birthed to the flesh (Gal 4.23), which is a *son of sin*. To be a son of the free woman is to be a son of the Ruach (Spirit – Gal 4.29), free from sinning / the flesh. If someone reads the BIBLE 1,000 years from now, will they also read "*so it is now*" as people read it today and as it was in the first century and as it was in the time of Avraham.

The lawless / unrighteous (slaves of the flesh / wantonness ones) ones always wanted to persecute (be cruel) the righteous and free from sin ones who lived according the

guidance of the Ruach. Ishmail against Yitz'chaq, Esav against Yisra'el, unrighteous Jews against the Righteous Jew, Gentiles (Roman and Greeks in BIBLE) against the righteous ones (Stefanos, Sha'ul, Kepha / Peter, Ya'acov / James, etc) and as it is today *new Covenant* slave "rejectors" of Torah / Righteousness against *new Covenant* faith in Torah shows fruit of free from sin belief.

The Author of Hebrews knew exactly what he meant with the flesh will always be against the Ruach (free from the flesh), because Sha'ul also knew the Way of the Creator means *freedom* from flesh / sin, because the Ruach's Master Taught the Ruach Righteousness (Isa 40.13-14):

"Yes, till today, whenever Moshe is read, a veil lies over their heart." But," says the Torah (Exo 34.34), "whenever someone turns to Adonai, the veil is taken away." Now, "Adonai" in this text means the Spirit. And where the Spirit of Adonai is, there is freedom." (CJB 2 Cor 3.15-17)

People must live in the Image (Character) of Elohim and the Ruach of YAHUAH will be the Guidance through the Word YAHUAH Spoke to the Ruach, and YAHUAH generated the Word to be the Light (John 1.4-5) within the hearts of the ones who has the knowledge of the Glory (Sh'kinah) of Elohim (2 Cor 4.6).

The Glory of YAHUAH that was in the *Face* of Mashiach Yah Shua, the Living Word of YAHUAH, must be the Witness / Testimony in every person's innerself; and the fruit will *reveal* the truth (2 Cor 4.10)¹³¹. The Witness that was in Avraham's heart and his fruit was proof of the Way of YAHUAH he followed, because he guarded / protected the Torah (the Word of YAHUAH in his heart).

Every person is *under the power of sin*, but through the Torah, the Spoken Word of YAHUAH, knowledge and wisdom of sin is gained / gathered. Sin will then not be a person's master anymore, but the Way of the Spoken Word of YAHUAH will be the Light. YAHUAH said from the very beginning that sin is crouching / waiting at the door –

¹³¹ LITV Isa 42.6-7: "I, Jehovah, have called You (Mashiach, the Word YAHUAH will create into Flesh) in righteousness, and will hold Your hand, and will keep You, and give You for a covenant of the people, for a Light of the nations; to open blind eyes, to lead out the prisoner from the prison; those who sit in darkness from the prison."

wantonness of the flesh – sin wants to possess a person (Satan wants children), but every person *can be the master of sin* (can rule over sin – Gen 4.7):

*"For in his sight no one alive will be considered righteous on the ground of legalistic observance of Torah commands, **because what Torah really does is show people how sinful they are.**" (CJB Rom 3.20)*

*"Because by the works of the law no man is able to have righteousness in his eyes, **for** through the law comes the knowledge of sin." (BBE Rom 3.20)*

YAHUAH created the Torah through His Word.

The Word of YAHUAH was made Alive, created into Flesh.

YAHUAH Councelled and Taught the Ruach the Torah.

The Torah will be the Light to people's life.

The Ruach will shine the Light in people's hearts.

YAHUAH is the Light

The Living Word was made Alive and will be the Light within people.

YAHUAH is the Rock.

Torah is the Rock.

Mashiach is the Rock.

The Way of YAHUAH was Spoken by His Voice / Word.

The Ruach will be the Guidance of the Way of YAHUAH

The Living Word was the perfect Witness / Testimony of the Way of YAHUAH through Mashiach.

All the above is YAHUAH Elohim and all of the above was created by YAHUAH. There is and always will be only one GOD / Elohim and YAHUAH says he is the only LORD GOD / YAHUAH Elohim. YAHUAH said HE IS *the* I AM and HE WILL BE *the* I AM. Therefore, did, YAHUAH manifested Himself as Mashiach on earth.

YAHUAH is the Ruach, because it is the Ruach of YAHUAH.

YAHUAH is the Mashiach, because YAHUAH created the Child as the Word of YAHUAH Alive. The Testimonies of YAHUAH are Prophecies of YAHUAH fulfilled and to be fulfilled.

YAHUAH is the Torah, because He Spoke it with His Voice / Word, and the Torah became Living Proof.

The first Three of the Ten Commandments is proof that there can be only One YAHUAH Elohim:

Then Elohim said all these words:

*" ⚡ **"I am Adonai your God**, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the abode of slavery. ☐ **"You are to have no other gods before me.** You are not to make for yourselves a carved image or any kind of representation of anything in heaven above, on the earth beneath or in the water below the shoreline. You are not to bow down to them or serve them; for **I, Adonai your God, am a jealous God**, punishing the children for the sins of the parents to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me, but displaying grace to the thousandth generation of those who love me and obey my mitzvot. ⚡ **"You are not to use lightly the name of Adonai your God**, because Adonai will not leave unpunished someone **who uses His Name lightly.**" (Exo 20.1-7)*

The Torah (Commandments of YAHUAH) was Created / Instructed for humanity to love GOD and to know who He is and to know His Character and Authority. Plus, He gave His Torah for humanity because He loves His creation. Therefore, did He Spoke His Torah for guidance, direction and protection, because He knew Satan is at the door and wants GOD's creation to be children of the Adversary. But, YAHUAH said every person who has faith in what He spoke / said from His Word / Voice, can be the master of sin / Satan.

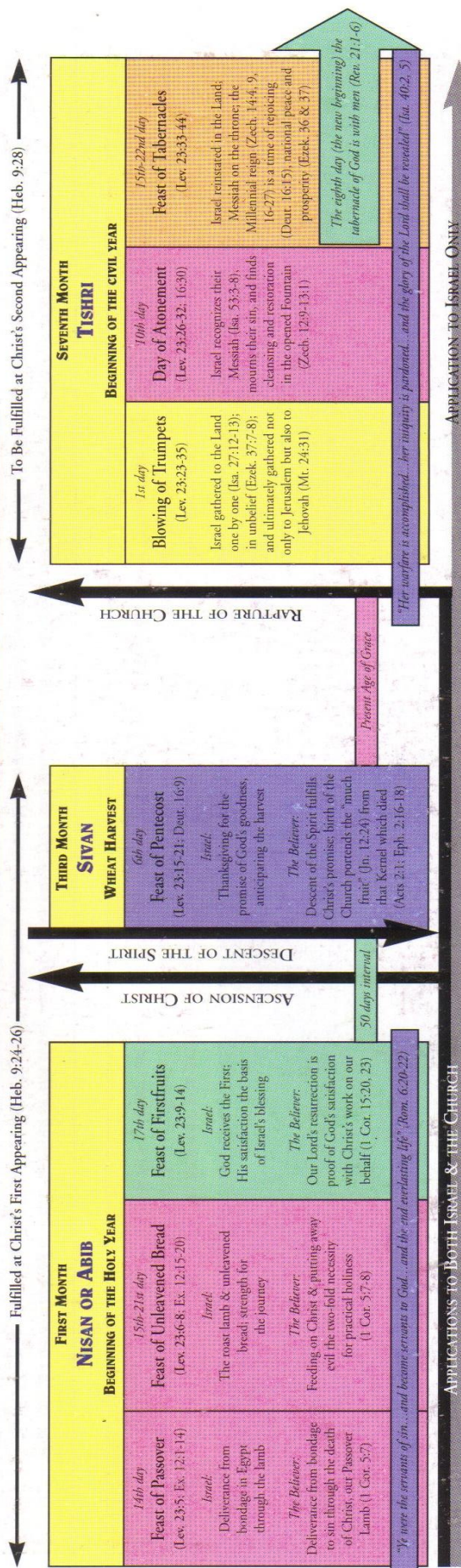
Therefore, YAHUAH Prophesied (Jer 8.8-10 etc) and knew that people will keep on protest against His Word / Torah, even after He has send with love His Testimony of Mashiach, the Living Word of YAHUAH, that He will put the knowledge of the Torah in every person's mind and write it on every person's heart, *when He Comes* as the Reigning Mashiach. Everybody will know Him then and every person will not have to teach each other Torah anymore, because a person will understand Torah and will live Torah.

GOD / YAHUAH is Love, Torah is the knowledge love and Mashiach came to live Love. When the knowledge of this is known, then the understanding of the fullness of love will be known.

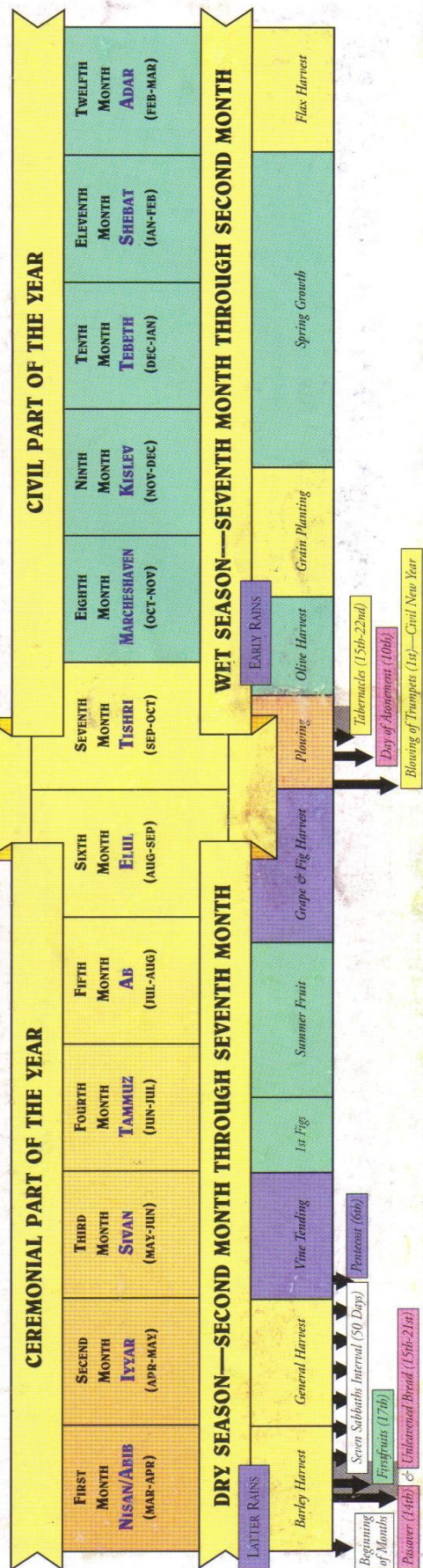
*"and one of them who was a Torah expert asked a sh'eilah to trap him: "Rabbi, which of the mitzvot in the Torah is the most important?" He told him, " 'You are to love Adonai your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.' (Deut 6.5) This is the greatest and most important mitzvah. And a second is similar to it, 'You are to love your neighbor as yourself.' (Lev 19.18) **All of the Torah and the Prophets are dependent on these two mitzvot.**" (CJB Matt 22.35-40*

"Love does not do harm to a neighbor; therefore love is the fullness of Torah." (CJB Rom 13.10)

The Feasts of Jehovah (Leviticus 23)



Jewish Calendar Months



Sit die res tekse in wat bewys die Torah onderhou word.

2.4.2 THE GARDEN OF EDEN

Eschatology or End-time Prophecy can be dangerous to those: who are not prepared to walk (halachah) the *proper* Way of YAHUAH and who does not know the *true meaning* of "the Fear of YAHUAH".

The BIBLE explicitly makes it clear that when a person does not *do* and *keep* **all** the Ways of Creator YAHUAH, he or she will not enter the "Gan of Elohim" – the Paradise of Eden:

"Those who have ears, let them hear what the Spirit is saying to the Messianic (believers in Mashiach) communities. To him winning the victory (who overcomes with El)¹³² I will give the right to eat from the Tree of Life which is in God's Gan-`Eden." (CJB Rev 2.7)

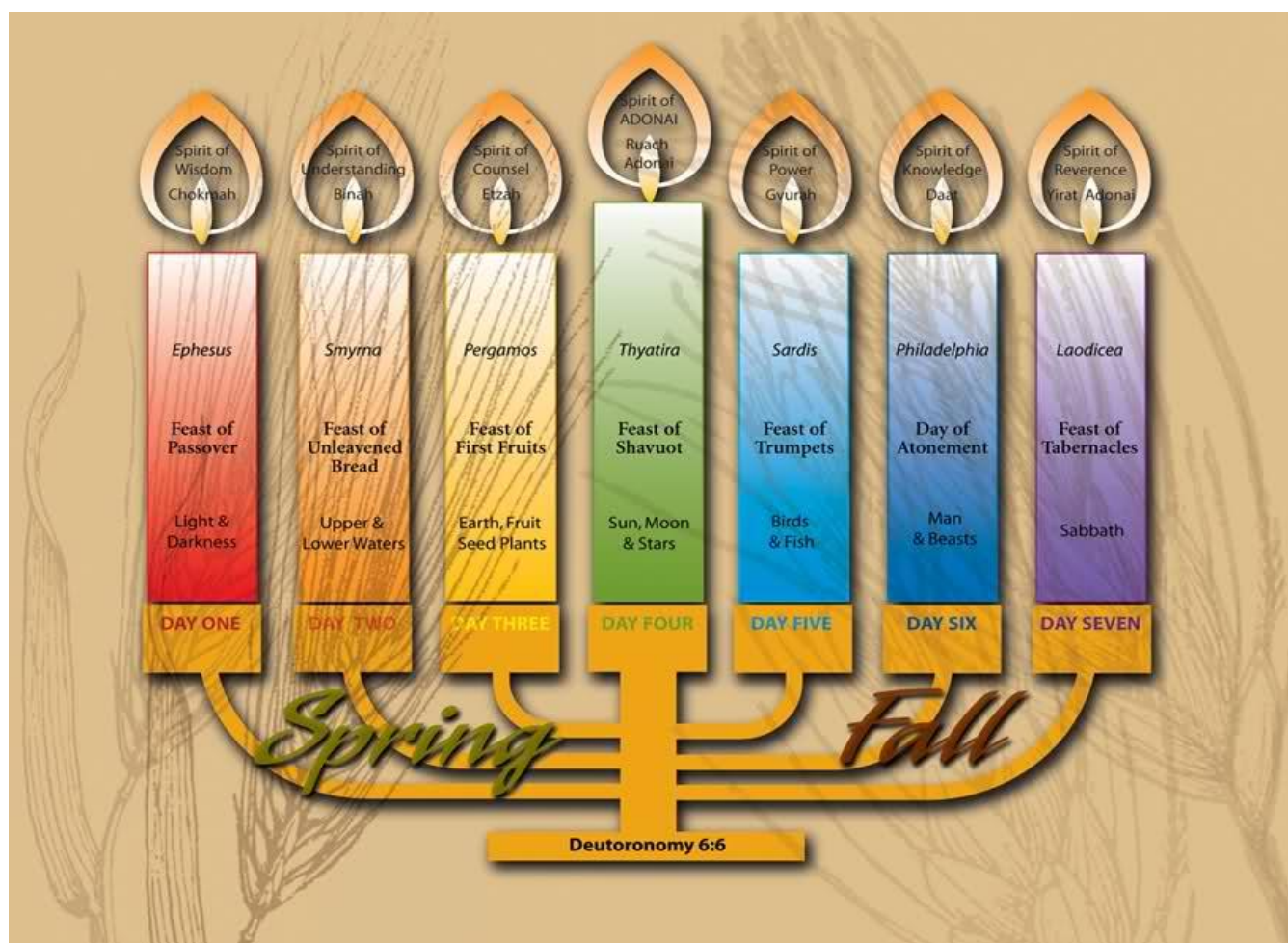
In Revelation 2:1 – 3:22 YAHUAH spoke specific of seven (7) **Works** Mashiach believers / communities have to understand to be able to enter the Gan / Paradise of Eden, which refers to the Kingdom of Elohim.

In the Word of YAHUAH, these Communities are not divided from each other in the sense that only the Command or Instruction given to each of them individually is only what they have to attend to. No! All the Words to each of them are Commands and Instructions for understanding of what the Creator YAHUAH expects from all the other Communities also.

All seven Communities had their "flaws" and they have to rectify these unrighteousness, *if* they have ears to *listen* to what the Ruach teaches them! They have to return *from* their wandering from YAHUAH's Way and *repent, listen to His Words* to enter His Kingdom.

Interesting is that these *seven* Communities who are Mashiach Followers, relates also directly to the *seven* days of Creation and the *seven* Feasts YAHUAH **created**.

¹³² Yisra'El means to "overcome with Elohim", to "wrestle with Elohim and to overcome": to receive His blessings as well as favour / mercy / grace in His eyes! In the same manner Noah, Avraham, Yitz'chaq and Ya'acov searched favour / grace in the eyes of their Creator YAHUAH!



The foundation of *belief* to every human creation of YAHUAH the Creator is to *keep / guard* the Way and Will of YAHUAH in the **heart**, and to *fear* the Almighty! Fear of Elohim will lead every human to *not* fall in the hands of Satan. Fear will *encourage* people to distinguish between good and bad (evil / sin), between holy and unholy, because YAHUAH gave explicit Instructions and Commands (Teachings) to be the *ruler / master* of sin (bad / evil). Through accepting YAHUAH's Character of Heart people will find favour, grace and mercy in His eyes.

YAHUAH sends **His** Ruach *down* to His people to *fill* their **hearts** to guide them to *follow* **His Will and Way**; to not wander and stray from what He has given to *obey* out of love. YAHUAH is the Teacher, Instructor and Preacher of His Ruach (Spirit) and He surely **directs** His Ruach according His Way so that His people know not to sin / wickedness.

People who reject or abolish any part of YAHUAH's Way will not enter the prepared Garden, Paradise, Sanctuary or Kingdom of YAHUAH, because His Living Word He gave to everyone to understand what He expects from His people.

To continue to the different *works* every Community has to **rectify** that YAHUAH exposes, people have to understand with what **Authority** the Ruach are *directed* by Almighty:

*"See, the **Master יהוה** comes with a strong hand, and **His arm rules for Him**. See, His reward is with Him, and His recompense before Him. He feeds His flock like a shepherd, He gathers the lambs with His arm, and carries them in His bosom, gently leading those who are with young. Who has measured the waters in the hollow of his hand, and measured the heavens with a span, and contained the dust of the earth in a measure, and weighed the mountains in scales and the hills in a balance? **Who has meted out the Spirit of יהוה**, or as **His counsellor** taught Him? With whom did He take counsel, and **who instructed Him, and taught Him in the path of right-ruling?** Who taught Him knowledge, and **showed Him the way of understanding?**" (Scriptures 1998+ Isa 9.10-14)*

Master YAHUAH is the **Teacher, Instructor and Preacher (Counsellor)** of the Ruach. YAHUAH TIP the Ruach in His Works in every human who wants to *walk In the Ways* of El Shaddai (Almighty Father).

The *hearts* of every human is the source of every *fruit* a human produces! This might maybe be the most important fact to remember to reproofs every person's actions and also is it the only part of the human body that proofs *love* to Avinu Melcheinu (Everlasting Father). Every person's actions and deeds generates from their hearts.

YAHUAH Creator loved His creation so much that He showed His Character to everyone, which is His Way He Commanded to follow through His Authority. YAHUAH spoken with His Voice the following Words:

*"And now, Yisra'el, **what is יהוה your Elohim asking of you, but to fear יהוה your Elohim, to walk in all His ways and to love Him, and to serve יהוה your Elohim with all your heart** and with all your being, to guard the commands of יהוה and His laws which I command you today for your good? "See, the heavens and the*

heaven of heavens belong to יהוה your Elohim, also the earth with all that is in it.

"יהוה" delighted only in your fathers (Avraham, Yitz'chaq, Ya'acov), **to love them.**

And He chose **their** seed after them, **you above all peoples**¹³³, as it is today."
(Scriptures 1998+ Deut 10:12-15)

YAHUAH also spoke these exact Words (for Christians, this Word became Life in Flesh) when He Taught His people (who wants to follow Him), in the case of them *repenting of their sins* He will keep His promise by giving them His favour and grace. Just as He showed and proved His promise when Noah and Avraham had to seek favour and grace in the eyes of Almighty YAHUAH. Yes, in the Book of Deuteronomy already:

*"Behold, I have set before you today life and good and death and evil, in that I am commanding you today **to love Jehovah your God, to walk in His ways, and to keep His commands and His statutes, and His judgments, and you shall live and multiply, and Jehovah your God shall bless you in the land where you are going in, to possess it.**" (LITV Deut 30.15-16)*

YAHUAH Almighty also promised that He will *affirm* His **blessings** to His people as a *holy nation* when keeping His Ways, **but** if people *ignore* His Words they will be *doomed*:

*"8 The LORD (YAHUAH) **will command the blessing** on you in your storehouses and in all to which you set your hand, and **He will bless you** in the land which the LORD your God (Elohim) is giving you. 9 "The LORD will **establish you as a holy people to Himself, just as He has sworn to you**, if you keep the commandments of the LORD your God and walk in His ways. And the LORD will make you the head and not the tail; you shall be above only, and not be beneath, if you heed the commandments of the LORD your God, which I command you today, **and are careful to observe them.** 14 So you shall **not turn aside from any of the words** which I command you this day, to the right or the left, to go after other gods to serve them. 15 "But it shall come to pass, **if you do not obey** the voice of the LORD your God, **to observe carefully** all His commandments and His statutes which I command you today, that all these curses will come upon you and overtake you:*

¹³³ See also 7:6, 14:2, 26:18, Ps. 135:4 and Amos 3:2.

16 "Cursed shall you be in the city, and cursed shall you be in the country."

17 "Cursed shall be your basket and your kneading bowl."

18 "Cursed shall be the fruit of your body and the produce of your land, the increase of your cattle and the offspring of your flocks."

19 "Cursed shall you be when you come in, and cursed shall you be when you go out."

20 "The LORD will send on you cursing, confusion, and rebuke in all that you set your hand to do, until you are destroyed and until you perish quickly, because of the wickedness of your doings in which you have forsaken Me."

The choice to accept these Words of YAHUAH Elohim the Creator is every human being's own personal choice. Rejecting these Words is also every person's own choice he or she will have to *account for*!

The Living Word of YAHUAH in Flesh confirmed His Words in the Testimony of Mashiach while He was on earth. Yes indeed, in the early years of His existence in Flesh:

*"Do not think that I came to destroy the Torah or the Prophets.¹³⁴ I did not come to destroy but to complete. "For truly, I say to you, till the heaven and the earth pass away, one jot or one tittle shall by no means pass from the Torah till all be done. "Whoever, then, breaks one of the least of these commands, and teaches men so, shall be called least in the **reign of the heavens** (Kingdom, Paradise); but whoever does and teaches them, he shall be called great in the reign of the heavens."*

The Word lived in Flesh on earth and surely remembered the Words He Instructed Moshe to teach all of Israel *diligently*, to love the Almighty Creator YAHUAH with all the heart. When that love is in the heart of every human, then to love every foreigner who is not part of a person's own culture will be understood. Because, by showing that love known from YAHUAH's Character will be the *fruit* of your own love:

"Teacher, which is the great command in the Torah?"

¹³⁴ The Law and the Prophets is a term used for the pre-Messianic Scriptures. Luke said the same Words in shorter explanation: "And it is easier for the heaven and the earth to pass away than for one tittle of the Torah to fall." (Scriptures 1998+ Luke 16:17)

"And יהושע said to him, '**You shall love יהוה your Elohim with all your heart, and with all your being, and with all your mind.**' This is the first and great command. And the second is like it, 'You shall love your neighbour as yourself.' **On these two commands hang all the Torah and the Prophets.**" (Scriptures 1998+ Matt 22.36-40)

There are an enormous amount of texts in the BIBLE, and yes in the Books by the Apostles, to confirm YAHUAH's Torah from His Word was not done away with. In fact, it can never be, because heaven and earth still exist and the Prophets said these Torah Commandments will even exist in His Kingdom Reign.

Let's return now to the Works YAHUAH expect of His people who are in holy Community with Him and who is lead by the Ruach [who YAHUAH directs] in the hearts of His people.

First, YAHUAH shew that people who adhere and obey what He says will be living in His Paradise, the Kingdom to Come.

Second, YAHUAH Almighty Commanded Yochanan to Write to the Angle who Guards the Community.

Third, the Ruach and the Angle is One and the same (Rev 2.7) and will Guard His people as YAHUAH directs (Isa 40.13-14) His Ruach; yes to live within His Paradise.

1) YAHUAH to the Community of Ephesos: the Metropolis.

New Beginnings Start with "Eight"

While the number seven represents completion (such as God's creation of the universe), the number eight often represents new beginnings:

- The eighth day is a type of anniversary of the Creation.
- On the seventh day, God rested and blessed it, declaring it as a set-apart, holy day of rest. On the eighth day, however, work resumed once more—only this time, human beings began stewardship of God's creation by tending and caring for the Garden of Eden.
- Eight souls were saved during the **Mabul HaGadol (Great Flood)**.
- The eighth day is considered a day of **covenant (brit)**, for it is on this day that every Jewish male infant is to be brought into covenant with the Almighty God through the rite of **circumcision** (called **Brit Milah** in Hebrew).
- David was the eighth son of Jesse and Israel's first great king from whose lineage HaMashiach (the Messiah) would come.

The Creator YAHUAH started with the creation of Eden, His Garden the Paradise, when He started with the creation of the earth. YAHUAH created everything according His will and everything He created were according His pleasure; and everything was *wholly and speedily*¹³⁵ (very good) in the *widest sense* beautiful and best¹³⁶ (Gen 1.31).

In six days the Creator **fulfilled** (כָּלָה – kalah: complete, accomplish, end) all His Works and He *blessed* (בָּרַךְ – barak: an act of adoration) the seventh (שְׁבִיעִי – Shebi'i) day (יּוֹם – yom) and He *sanctified* (קִדְּשׁ – qadash: keep / pronounce or observe as clean, holy, hallow, wholly, set-apart), and He had *complete* rest (שַׁבָּת – shabat: to cease or resist from any form of exertation¹³⁷) from all His Work.

The importance of the six day Work and the seventh day (yom shebi'i) rest of YAHUAH in the creation of His Garden, Eden His Sanctuary, is **GOD created** everything in *excellence* and according His plan of His Sanctuary. Humanity must follow His pattern / Footsteps!

YAHUAH said everything He created in the beginning **declares** the end!¹³⁸

What did the Creator then declare from the beginning if we look at His creation and His Garden / Sanctuary of Eden (also known as the Paradise of YAHUAH / GOD)?

The Creator YAHUAH *declared*:

¹³⁵ KJV+ Strong's: "H3966 נָאֵד – m^e'ōd meh-ode': From the same as H181; properly vehemence, that is, (with or without preposition) vehemently; by implication wholly, speedily, etc. (often with other words as an intensive or superlative; especially when repeated): - diligently, especially, exceeding (-ly), far, fast, good, great (-ly), X louder and louder, might (-ily, -y), (so) much, quickly, (so) sore, utterly, very (+ much, sore), well."

¹³⁶ KJV+ Strong's: "H2896 טוֹב – ṭōb tobe: From H2895; good (as an adjective) in the widest sense; used likewise as a noun, both in the masculine and the feminine, the singular and the plural (good, a good or good thing, a good man or woman; the good, goods or good things, good men or women), also as an adverb (well): - beautiful, best, better, bountiful, cheerful, at ease, X fair (word), (be in) favour, fine, glad, good (deed, -lier, liest, -ly, -ness, -s), graciously, joyful, kindly, kindness, liketh (best), loving, merry, X most, pleasant, + pleaseth, pleasure, precious, prosperity, ready, sweet, wealth, welfare, (be) well ([-favoured])."

¹³⁷ KJV+ Strong's: "H7673: A primitive root; to repose, that is, desist from exertion; used in many implied relations (causatively, figuratively or specifically): - (cause to, let, make to) cease, celebrate, cause (make) to fail, keep (sabbath), suffer to be lacking, leave, put away (down), (make to) rest, rid, still, take away."

¹³⁸ CJB Isa 48.3: "I announced things that happened at the beginning, long ago; they issued from my mouth, I proclaimed them. Then suddenly I acted, and they occurred." And very important is...

CJB Isa 46.10: "At the beginning I announce the end, proclaim in advance things not yet done; and I say that my plan will hold, I will do everything I please to do."

- ✧ The Holiness of His Creation / Works.
- ✧ The Shabat, the seventh day (Yom Shebi'i) His Sanctification.
- ✧ The **seventh day** as Holy, Set-Apart and clean and to observe / keep it wholly!
- ✧ To rest and cease all works on the seventh day Shabat.
- ✧ To **act in worship / adoration** on the *seventh day Shabat* **only** as Holy!
- ✧ He created every living thing from the earth and brought it to His Garden.
- ✧ The Garden of Eden as His Paradise.
- ✧ He walked in the Garden (Gen 3.8)
- ✧ Humanity must be the guardian and caretaker of His Garden
- ✧ Sin will crouch at "every door" (Gen 4.7) when you do not know sin!
- ✧ Humankind must *always* be the ruler of / over sin, when tested by evil / Satan!

The list can carry on and on what was declared from the Creation of the Universe of the End. The essence is that humanity must be / has to be the *caretakers, bearers, keepers* and *guardians* of the Garden / Paradise YAHUAH the Creator created to *exist* in the Paradise. The ones who corrupt the Garden will not live in His perfect Paradise!

How can people do that if no one is allowed to enter the Garden, the Paradise of YAHUAH if He guards it by His Angels / Cherubs after the sinful act of *disobedience* of mankind?

To enter this beautiful, miraculous, wonderful, perfect and longing Garden / Paradise of YAHUAH **again**, a person must be *obedient* and Holy (Set-Apart) to Elohim as He is Set-Apart; by being the *ruler of sin* that crouches around every corner and be righteous to the Almighty according the Way He **created** for humanity, because He loves His creation!

How can humanity be able to be a ruler over sin?

Through the example of the *righteous* Way of ABBA YAHUAH will people be *victorious* over sin / unrighteousness. By *guarding* righteousness and not *giving in* to sin / unrighteousness, a person will receive **grace / mercy / favour** in the eyes of YAHUAH. By *following* this example of life on earth a person will / must walk (הלך – halak) righteous / lawful / upright / *wholehearted* / *without blemish* in his / her generation / times / family **with** YAHUAH Elohim:

"Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, sin is violation of Torah." (CJB 1 John 3.4)

An example of a righteous father¹³⁹ who kept an obeyed the righteous Way of YAHUAH was Noah. Noah was a righteous (you cannot be righteous or just or follow a righteous or just way of life if there is no justice or law) and wholehearted (followed the Way of Elohim with his *whole heart* and mind and soul) man in his times under his generation.

Even Noah had to *find* this *gift of favour* (mercy / grace) from YAHUAH through his righteous living by being a ruler over sin and not to be *corrupt* like the rest of the world!

Today, almost five thousand (5,000) years after Noah – after YAHUAH gave the example of a righteous man and how he had to receive favour / grace in His eyes – people want to take this **precious gift** of YAHUAH for granted:

"A Person died for me / us, He died for my / our sins, I do not need to know sin anymore, because I / we will only be saved by His grace".

Above quote is the *general* belief of mainstream Christianity. Does this quotation reflect what YAHUAH spoke in His Voice / Word to Moshe as Prophecy?

YAHUAH spoke to the righteous Noah and said:

"God saw the earth, and, yes, it was corrupt; for all living beings had corrupted their ways on the earth."¹⁴⁰ (CJB Gen 6.12)

Corrupt is quite the opposite of sanctified!

Corrupt (שָׁחַת – Shachat): *"A primitive root; to decay, that is, (causatively) ruin (literally or figuratively): - batter, cast off, corrupt (-er, thing), destroy (-er, -uction), lose, mar, perish, spill, spoiler, X utterly, waste (-r)."*

¹³⁹ CJB Gen 6.9: *"Here is the history of Noah. In his generation, Noah was a man righteous and wholehearted; Noah walked with God."*

¹⁴⁰ NLT: *"God observed all this corruption in the world, for everyone on earth was corrupt."*

Sanctify (שָׁדַשׁ – Qadash): "A primitive root; to be (causatively make, pronounce or observe as) clean (ceremonially or morally): - appoint, bid, consecrate, dedicate, defile, hallow, (be, keep) holy (-er, place), keep, prepare, proclaim, purify, sanctify (-ied one, self), X wholly."

In this Chapter above it was proven that Avraham was *wholehearted* towards YAHUAH and he also walked (halak) with YAHUAH according His Way:

"because Abraham listened to My voice and heeded My charge, My commands, My statutes, and My laws." (LITV Gen 26.5)

Even Avraham (the Patriarch father of a believer in the GOD of Avraham, the GOD of Yitz'chaq, the GOD of Ya'acov, who is the GOD of Yisra'el) had to receive favour / grace from Almighty Elohim.¹⁴¹ Satan says grace is "free", people will get it anyway. There is no need to listen or to observe, just as Satan *corrupted* Chavah / "life" (חַוְוָה – Chavvah: lifegiver, the first woman, Eve) from the very beginning.¹⁴²

YAHUAH was from the beginning with His righteous people¹⁴³ and they had to receive favour / grace from (in the eyes of) YAHUAH to receive *what is pleasing to Him!* Avraham had to show his generations (the House after him) the Way of Almighty Father YAHUAH and it was an Instruction from Him, in order to stay / keep **righteousness and justice**:

*"For I know him, that **he will command** his children and his household after him, and they shall **keep the way of Yahweh**¹⁴⁴, to do justice and judgment (right and just); that Yahweh may bring upon Abraham that which he hath spoken of him."*
(CJB Gen 18.19)

¹⁴¹ CJB Gen 24.12: "He said, "Adonai, God of my master Avraham, please let me succeed today; and show your grace to my master Avraham."

WOY Gen 18.2-3: "...and bowed himself toward the ground, And said, my Yahweh, if now I have found favour in thy sight, pass not away, I pray thee, from thy servant."

¹⁴² Gen 3.13

¹⁴³ Another example is Rachel who searched for grace / favour from YAHUAH. CJB Gen 30.6: "Rachel said, "God has judged in my favor; indeed he has heard me and given me a son." Therefore she called him Dan [Dan means "he judged"]."

¹⁴⁴ WOY Deut 10.12-13: "And now, **Israel**, what doth Yahweh thy Elohim require of thee, but to fear Yahweh thy Elohim, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve Yahweh thy Elohim with all thy heart and with all thy soul, To keep the commandments of Yahweh, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good?"

YAHUAH instructed / ordered Moshe to write everything He spoke from His Voice / Word what the Way of YAHUAH is, *to Yisra'el the sons and nations of Ya'acov*, a Patriarch YAHUAH appointed as a father of a believer in the Almighty Father.

When people *accept* the Way of YAHUAH and say "I do" to the Groom YAHUAH, to keep and obey all His given Torah / Law / righteousness wholeheartedly, people will find favour in His eyes and will enter *again* the Garden of Eden, the Paradise of GOD, to walk (halak) with Him.

People must guard and protect and take care of everything He created, because it all was from His Works. Neglecting, rejecting and disobeying the things YAHUAH created according His Works / Voice / Word, will *corrupt* the Garden of YAHUAH. The god of corruption is the *destroyer* of the world.

To corrupt is to destroy, i.e. to destroy life (chavah) and Satan's work is to destroy the Lifegiver' Work / Word. Satan wants to sit on the Throne of the Lifegiver YAHUAH.¹⁴⁵

To sanctify is to set-apart, to be holy and not to [be] corrupt! Evil wants to *overrule* Good, but good can be the ruler of evil / sin if and when good is known and observed:

- Corrupt against (vs) Sanctification
- Darkness vs Light (Gen 1.3-4)
- Unrighteousness vs Righteousness
- Disobedient vs Obedient (Gen 26.5; 6.9)
- Lawlessness vs Lawgiver (1 John 3.4)
- Sin vs not to sin (Gen 4.7)
- Pervertion of Torah into legalism vs Knowing Torah to escape Sin (1 Cor 15.56)
- Torah is the end (kalah / tello)¹⁴⁶ vs Torah is the goal/purpose/result/fulfilment of

¹⁴⁵ NKJV Isa 14.12-14: ""How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! How you are cut down to the ground, You who weakened the nations! For you have said in your heart: 'I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will also sit on the mount of the congregation On the farthest sides of the north; I will ascend above the heights of the clouds, I will be like the Most High.'"

¹⁴⁶ KJV+ Strong's: "**Greek**5056 – **telos**: From a primary word τέλλω tellō (**to set out for a definite point or goal**); **properly the point aimed at as a limit**, that is, (by implication) the conclusion of an act or state (termination [literally, figuratively or indefinitely], **result** [immediate, ultimate or prophetic], **purpose**); specifically an impost or levy (as paid): - + continual, custom, end (-ing), finally, uttermost." KJV+ Strong's: "**Hebrew**3615 – **kalah**: A primitive root; to end, whether intransitively (to cease, be finished, perish) or transitively (**to complete**, prepare, consume): - **accomplish**, cease, consume (away), determine,

Mashiach (Rom 10.4)

- In the world vs Set-Apart from the world (Gen 18.19)
- Man's own / personal interpretation vs YAHUAH's Word only as Interpretation
- Rest of the world vs Garden of Eden (Gen 3.24)
- Free (Satan the giver) grace vs Gift (YAH the Giver) of grace
- Lifetaker / Corrupter vs Lifegiver / Sanctifier
- Satan / Trinity vs "I AM" / "I AM YAHUAH Elohim" / "I AM Jealous"
- Adversary vs the Almighty GOD and Everlasting Father

Things that can and will *corrupt* the Garden of YAHUAH and that **will prevent** the creation (mankind) of YAHUAH to enter again His Paradise / Kingdom is pointed out here from His Word only. People who will not take care of- and guard the Garden / Paradise to **keep it** (halak) Sanctified, will not be given grace / mercy to walk with YAHUAH in His Sanctuary / Kingdom, because those people will corrupt His Tabernacle / Sanctuary / Paradise / Kingdom.

People who corrupt and pervert His Word / Torah (e.g. into legalism) and make it as destroyed and abolished will be left outside His City Jerusalem / Kingdom / Paradise / Tree of Life (Rev 22.15). The writer of Hebrews surely did not make a mistake when he wrote

*destroy (utterly), be (when . . . were) done, (be an) end (of), expire, (cause to) fail, faint, finish, **fulfil**, X fully, X have, leave (off), long, bring to pass, **wholly reap**, make clean riddance, spend, quite take away, waste."*
 Fact: when YAHUAH said in the beginning He "kalah" (end[ed]) His Work, He did not say He *abolished* or *took away* or *destroyed* or *does not exist anymore*! No! But He in fact said He accomplished and fulfilled His goal and purpose, which He aimed at. He then rested, reached His limit, accomplished His purpose and rested and ended His Work, but when He ended He surely did not abolish, destroy, take away or terminate what He did! If it was true, then heaven and earth, moon/stars/sun, man and woman **and** His love was/must have been "ended" (Rom 13.10)! That is why He never intended to *end* His Torah (no person can end what He created), but He is the purpose and goal of His spoken Word, the Torah! Unfortunately did the very first translators (Greek from Hebrew) translated the word "kalah" or "saka" from Aramaic into the smallest word "end", which does not *justify* the purpose of the meaning. Rather, the translation confused people and fortunately for some religions it suit their doctrine to preach abolishment and destruction of GOD's Law / Torah by also "nailed to the cross" (Col 2.14), again misinterpretation, because only the "**bill or record of charge**" the Law/Torah *causes* was nailed to the Stake. So that, a believer who repents his/her sin does not feel *charged* by his/her sin, but forgiveness *cleans* that *knowledgable* sin! Mashiach came to *interpret* the Word spoken for people to understand how to follow Him to enter His Sanctuary/Paradise with Him. If He came to abolish or destroy what the Word spoke in the beginning, then He came *in vain*, because Heaven and earth will then also be destroyed and purpose of life on earth was for darkness/destruction: "**Don't misunderstand why I (Messiah) have come. I did not come to abolish the law of Moses or the writings of the prophets. No, I came to accomplish their purpose. I tell you the truth, until heaven and earth disappear, not even the smallest detail of God's law will disappear until its purpose is achieved. So if you ignore the least commandment and teach others to do the same, you will be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven. But anyone who obeys God's laws and teaches them will be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven.**" (NLT Matt 5.17-19) Believers in GOD Almighty YAHUAH Elohim, teach people GOD's Law/Torah to enter His Garden/Kingdom, because if you don't you will be left outside with the dogs and idolators against YAHUAH (Rev 22.15)!

the Words of YAHUAH, because he surely knew the Words taught to Matthiyahu, Luke, Sha'ul and Yochanan:

*"Dear friends, if we deliberately **continue sinning** after we have received ***knowledge of the truth**, there is no longer any sacrifice that will cover these sins. There is only the terrible expectation of **God's judgment and the raging fire** that will consume His enemies. **For anyone who refused to obey the *law of Moses was put to death without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses**. Just think how much worse the punishment will be for those who have trampled on the Son of God, and have treated the **blood of the covenant, which made us holy** (sanctify qadash), **as if it were common and unholy, and have insulted and disdained the Holy Spirit who brings God's mercy to us**. For we know the **One** who said, "I will take revenge. I will pay them back." He also said, "The LORD will judge His own people." (Deut 32.35-36) **It is a terrible thing to fall into the hands of the living God.**" (NLT Heb 10.26-31)*

Thus, *the knowledge of truth = *the Law of Moshe!

Surely the Prophets and the Apostles knew the Words of YAHUAH. It is confirmed throughout the BIBLE with their citations and referencing that everyone knew the same Message of the Creator YAHUAH. Surely they knew the above Words of YAHUAH, because it was spoken in the Torah, by the Prophets and by the Apostles. They did not teach that Elohim's (GOD's) Torah / Law is to be destroyed or abolished or *perverted in legalism*, but quite the *opposite* and if they did speak *against* His Torah / Law they will be left "outside" by the *Consuming Fire*! Exactly as it was *Revealed* by Yochanan (Rev 22.14-15)

They never did teach the least of YAHUAH's Torah (e.g. Matt 5:19), because they knew the Kingdom of YAHUAH is their Home and they want to enter His Garden / Sanctuary after their life on earth where they were daily *tested* by Satan to corrupt the Word of YAHUAH and where Satan pervert the Torah into legalism. Why? Satan wants people to continue to sin by not want to know the Justice of YAHUAH by rejecting / abolishing YAHUAH's Justice / Law / Torah and not to live a *clean* and holy (set-apart) life to YAHUAH Almighty Creator!

YAHUAH's Paradise was created and His plan for His near future Paradise (where lion and sheep will lie with each other and where a baby will sit next to a snake) was declared from the beginning.

- ☆ YAHUAH loved His creation so much that He gave from His Voice / Word Instructions what He loves (righteousness / no sin) and what He hates (unrighteousness / sin). No sin will be allowed in His Paradise / Kingdom (Heb 8.8-10)
- ☆ YAHUAH's Instructions were given to ensure people have no excuse of how to take care of- and guard His Garden / Paradise to keep it qadosh / holy / set-apart from the world (Matt 5.17-19; Rev 22.14-15).
- ☆ YAHUAH's Character and Authority was laid-out by His Word to teach people to know Him and to understand the completeness of His love (Gen to Deut; Rom 13.10; Heb 10.26-31).
- ☆ YAHUAH's Paradise / Kingdom is the fulfilment from His complete Word (BIBLE). Not just certain parts of His Word and not His Word replaced by His Word! Not the interpretation of man's view, but *only* interpretation from His Word.

The BIBLE is the Way and Path to YAHUAH's created Paradise and His complete Living Word (BIBLE) was given to humanity according an orchard / garden "grows" into a perfect *paradise*.

PARDES

The reach the Paradise everything in the BIBLE must be obeyed and observed.

The Paradise is the creation of YAHUAH.

The BIBLE is the creation of YAHUAH.

To live in the Paradise YAHUAH gave rules to enter.

The BIBLE contains (is) the rules of YAHUAH to enter the Paradise.

The Paradise's fruit is the result of Salvation.

The BIBLE's fruit leads to Salvation.

Fruit is the Paradise.

Fruit is from the BIBLE.

Paradise:

YAHUAH created Paradise according His Way, His Word (root)

YAHUAH confirmed the Way the Paradise should be observed / walked with Him (growth)

YAHUAH Witnessed / Testified the Way Paradise should be observed (fruit)

YAHUAH Revealed how and who is destined to live forever in His Paradise (harvest)

Understanding the BIBLE in the same pattern given above, will assist in reading and interpreting the BIBLE, and to use the complete BIBLE for Revelation of His Word.

The BIBLE is in fact the Way to Paradise, and by following the Way will enhance growth with good fruit as prove of the harvest to enjoy at a feast.

BIBLE:

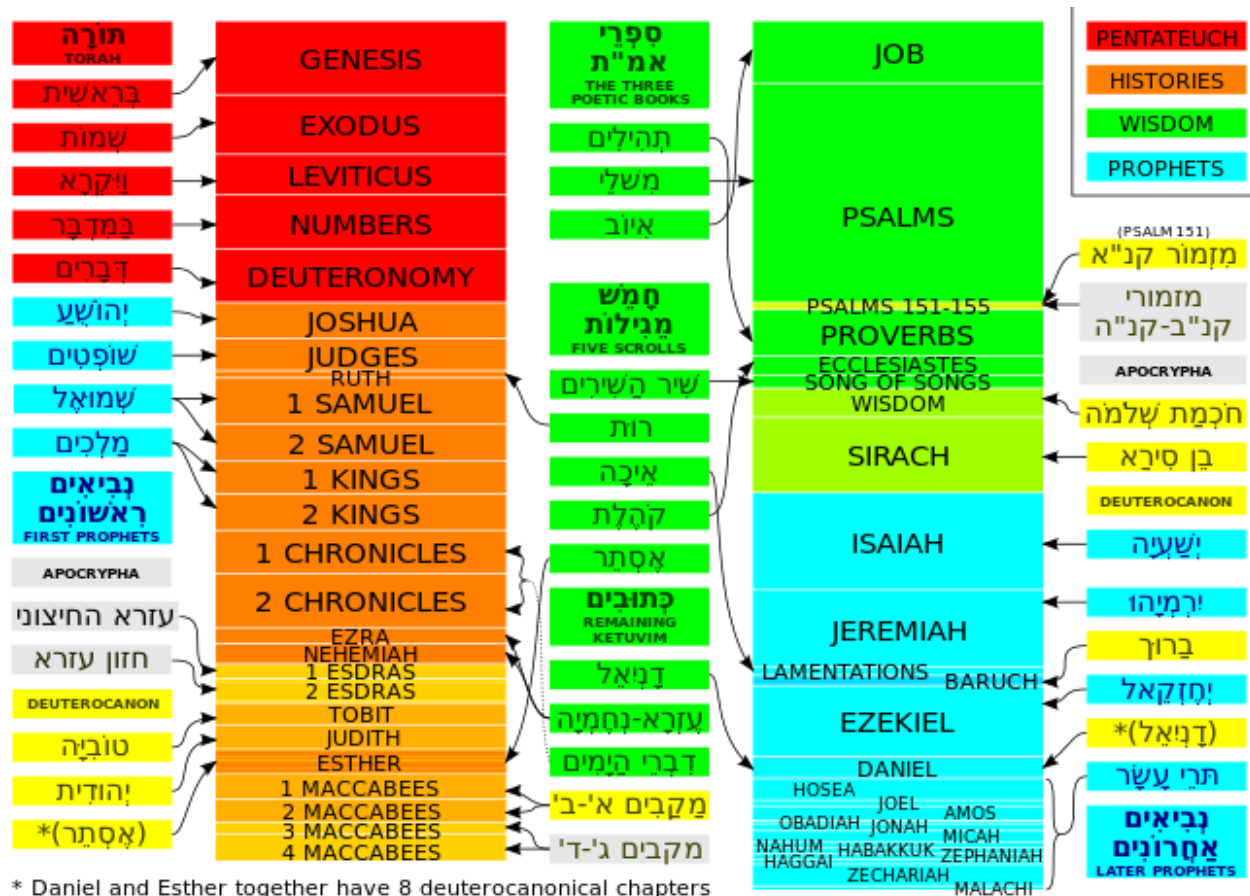
Hebrew Letters¹⁴⁷

¹⁴⁷ Hebrew alephbeit reading from right to left:

א ב ג ד ה ו ז ח ט י כ (ך) ל מ (ם) נ (ן) ס ע פ (ף) צ (ץ) ק ר ש ת

GEMATRIA, The Trugmans - <http://thetrugmans.com/word-and-gematria-search/>; 26/05/2014:

Letter	Value	Letter	Value	Letter	Value
Alef	א 1	Yud	י 10	Kuf	ק 100
Bet	ב 2	Kaf	כ 20	Reish	ר 200
Gimel	ג 3	Lamed	ל 30	Shin	ש 300
Dalet	ד 4	Mem	מ 40	Tav	ת 400
Hei	ה 5	Nun	נ 50	Final kaf	(ך) 20 (or 500)
Vav	ו 6	Samech	ס 60	Final mem	(ם) 40 (or 600)
Zayin	ז 7	Ayin	ע 70	Final nun	(ן) 50 (or 700)
Chet	ח 8	Pei	פ 80	Final pei	(ף) 80 (or 800)
Tet	ט 9	Tzadik	צ 90	Final tzadik	(ץ) 90 (or 900)



"The books of the Old Testament, showing their positions in both the **Tanakh** (Hebrew Bible, shown with their names in Hebrew) and Christian Bibles. The Deuterocanon or Apocrypha are colored differently from the Protocanon¹⁴⁸ (the Hebrew Bible books considered canonical by all)."¹⁴⁹



¹⁴⁸ <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Protocanon>; 10/06/2014.

¹⁴⁹ http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Books_of_the_Bible; 26/05/2014.

Source: The Prophet Zechariah -

<http://www.yeshuatyisrael.com/Zechariah.htm>

Believers, who are part of Yisra'el, listen to this:

"Yeshua answered, 'The most important is, 'Sh'ma Yisra'el, Adonai Eloheinu, Adonai echad [Hear, O Isra'el, the Lord our God, the Lord is one], and you are to love Adonai your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your understanding and with all your strength.' The second is this: 'You are to love your neighbour as yourself.' There is no other mitzvah greater than these.'" The Torah-teacher said to him, "Well said, Rabbi; you speak the truth when you say that he is one, and that there is no other besides him;" (AESV Matt 22:37-38)

"Sh'ma, Yisra'el! Adonai Eloheinu, Adonai echad [Hear, Isra'el! Adonai our God, Adonai is one]; and you are to love Adonai your God with all your heart, all your being and all your resources. These words, which I am ordering you today, are to be on your heart; and you are to teach them carefully to your children. You are to talk about them when you sit at home, when you are traveling on the road, when you lie down and when you get up. Tie them on your hand as a sign, put them at the front of a headband around your forehead, and write them on the door-frames of your house and on your gates." (CJB Deut 6:4-9)

*"So, what are we to say? This: that Gentiles, even though they were not striving for righteousness, have obtained righteousness; but it is a righteousness grounded in trusting! However, Isra'el, even though they kept pursuing a Torah that offers righteousness, did not reach what the Torah offers. **Why? Because they did not pursue righteousness as being grounded in trusting but as if it were grounded in doing legalistic works.** They stumbled over the stone that makes people stumble." (CJB Rom 9:30-32)*

*"For this is the **covenant** which I will make with the **House of Isra'el** after those days,' says Adonai: **I will put my Torah in their minds and write it on their hearts; I will be their God, and they will be my people.**" (CJB Heb 8:10)*

Yahshua will be the Light to Yisra'el:

"For I have seen with my own eyes your yeshu`ah (salvation), which you prepared in the presence of all peoples — **a light that will bring revelation to the Goyim** (Nations) **and glory to your people Isra'el**. Yeshua's father and mother were marvelling at the things Shim`on was saying about him." (CJB Luke 2:30-33)¹⁵⁰

"For the mitzvah is a lamp, Torah is light, and reproofs that discipline are the way to life." (CJB Prov 6:23)

*"Yeshua spoke to them again: **"I am the light** of the world; whoever follows me will never walk in darkness but will have the light which gives life." (CJB John 8:12)*

Believers of the Twelve Tribes of Yisra'El will rule over the Nations during the 1,000 years:¹⁵¹

"The New Yeru Shalem:

And in spirit, he bears me to a mega and high mountain and shows me that megalopolis the holy Yeru Shalem descending from the heavens from Elohim; having the glory of Elohim: and her light is like to a stone most precious as a jasper stone, crystalline; having a wall mega and high, having twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names epigraphed, being the twelve scions of the sons of Yisra El: by the rising three gates; by the north three gates; by the south three gates; and by the lowering three gates. And the wall of the city has twelve foundations and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb." (exeGesis Companion Bible Rev 21:10-14)

All the Biblical Writers in the *Common Era* (A.D.) were Apostles or very close associates of the Apostles. All of them had to read, speak and understand Hebrew to read from the Scriptures of the Hebrew Prophets and to teach from their Writings. The Apostles were:

1. **Matthiyahu** — an Apostle
2. **Mark** — a close associate of the Apostle Kepha
3. **Luke** — a close associate of Sha'ul

¹⁵⁰ Isa 42:6, 49:6

¹⁵¹ Rev 20:4

4. **Yochanan** — an Apostle
5. **Sha'ul** — an Apostle
6. **Kepha** — an Apostle (Leader of the Apostles)
7. **Ya'acov** — a half-brother to Yahshua and leader of the 'Community' in Jerusalem¹⁵²
8. **Y'hudah** — a half-brother to Yahshua
9. **The Writer of Hebrews** — though unknown to us today, was associated with the Ministries of the Apostles (Hebrews 2:3-4). Sha'ul could have written some letters.

Yochanan (John) the Immerser was a cousin of Yahshua and he had no rabbinical training like rabbi Sha'ul (Paul). He was in the eyes of Jewish scholars like Kepha (Peter) and the other talmidim (disciples), "an unlearned and ignorant man", but his fervor and strong intimacy with YHVH the Creator was of excellence.¹⁵³ Yochanan was the *biggest* Prophet of all the Prophets according to Scriptures.¹⁵⁴

Isaiah prophesied that there is only One "Lord" GOD *forever* and that this "Lord" will come to bring *righteousness* and establish *righteousness*¹⁵⁵, because He is the *Keeper and Protector* of *righteousness*, He is the Saviour / Salvation who will bring *justice* through *righteousness*, and no one is or will be like this "Lord":

I, yes I, am Adonai; besides me there is no deliverer. (CJB Isa 43:11)

I - I - Yah Veh; and except me, there is no saviour. (ECB Isa 43:11)

I, yes I, am the LORD, and there is no other Saviour. (NLT Isa 43:11)

Remarkable! Hallel Yah: "Praise ye YAHUAH ",¹⁵⁶ who has no beginning or end, who always have been and always *will be* YAHUAH Elohim Shaddai / Lord GOD Almighty. YAHUAH will be what He wants to be and what He will be!

EHYEH Asher EHYEH – I AM what I AM and I WILL BE what I WILL BE!

¹⁵² Acts 15

¹⁵³ Peter, the Jewish apostle of authority, - http://www.ccel.org/s/schaff/history/1_ch07.htm; 28/05/2014.

¹⁵⁴ CJB Matt 11:9-13: "Nu, so why did you go out? To see a prophet! Yes! **and I tell you he's much more than a prophet.** This is the one about whom the Tanakh says, 'See, I am sending out my messenger ahead of you; **he will prepare your way before you.**' Yes! I tell you that among those born of women there has not arisen anyone greater than Yochanan the Immerser! Yet the one who is least in the Kingdom of Heaven is greater than he! From the time of Yochanan the Immerser until now, the Kingdom of Heaven has been suffering violence; yes, violent ones are trying to snatch it away. **For all the prophets and the Torah prophesied until Yochanan.**"

¹⁵⁵ Isa 43:1-4, 6; Rev 19:8, 11.

¹⁵⁶ <http://123hallelujah.wordpress.com/2010/05/29/the-meaning-of-hallelujah/>; 23/05/2014.

CHAPTER 3

METHODOLOGY AND PROBLEM IDENTIFICATION

3.1. Aims and Objectives of the Research	69
3.2. Research Questions	70
3.3. Procedure and Timeframe	71
3.4. Demarcation	72
3.5. Introductory paragraph	73
3.6. Exegesis / Exegeses	74
3.7. Exegesis used by Sha'ul	77
3.8. Hermeneutics	85
3.9. Principles of Hermeneutics	87
3.10. Applying Hermeneutics	92
3.11. The Jewishness of the Messiah	96
3.12. Anti-Semitism	103
3.13. Christendom and Christianity – Christian Theology	114
3.13.1 Christian and church history	114
3.13.2 Basics of Christianity	122
• Christmas	122
• Sunday or Sabbath	129
• Days of the week	150
• Easter	156
3.14. Trinity or Echad	160
• YHVH is Yah Shua	160
• Origin of Trinity	162
3.15. Infant baptism	165
3.16. Dog is meat	166
3.17. Correct interpretation of Scripture	176
1. Torah is not part of the Word	176
2. Torah impossible to observe	191
3. Grace and the Word	198
4. Israel and the church	203
5. Feasts of YHVH have been abolished	214

3.18. Messiah will come as a thief	219
3.19. Summary of facts established	223

3.1 AIMS AND OBJECTIVES OF THE RESEARCH

☆ *Steps to follow to resolve the research questions:*

1. Emphasize the **fact** that Yahshua – *YHVH is Salvation* – is a Jewish Hebrew Rabbi and that He is Echad (One) with the Creator of all things, Who lives in us through the Ruach, which makes the Creator also Hebrew and Rabbinical minded, because He is One with YHVH.¹⁵⁷
2. PaRDeS principles must be explained in full detail.¹⁵⁸
3. Show what it really means to understand the Word of our Father like a child and why people misinterpret His Word.
4. Scripture to proof the four different levels of understanding and interpreting of the BIBLE with the Exegesis method of PaRDeS.
5. Hidden secrets revealed in Revelation (fourth deepest level) from using the different levels of PaRDeS for interpretation.
6. Formulation of the BIBLE proven from Scripture.

☆ The immediate project outcome is to utilise PaRDeS as a method to interpret Scripture with Exegesis and Hermeneutics as study tools to ensure GOD's Prophecy is understood from Scripture within the BIBLE. This will enhance searching the truth and finding revelation within Scripture from Scripture. The end result is to prove that the Messianic Writings have to be **reread** in context and that it was not given as a "*Replacement Theology*".

A testament is written for a *person* before physical death occurs and becomes due when the person died. Our Messiah risen from the dead and is still alive, how can they transfer His Word to a *testament* if He is still alive? *Our Father in Heaven came down to earth to live His Word and to show us His Way* by teaching the people and His Apostles / Emissaries His Teachings and therefore, were the Messia[h]nic Writings written to give us the deeper meaning of His Word spoken to men from the beginning. Nothing new came from the Word spoken to Moshe and the other Prophets, as the Creator said:

"*Yeshua the Messiah is the same yesterday, today and forever.*" (CJB Heb 13:8)

¹⁵⁷ John 10:30

¹⁵⁸ Chapter 4

*"It is just as He has spoken through the mouth of the Prophets **from the very beginning** —" (CJB Luke 1:70)*

*"He has to remain in heaven until the time comes for restoring everything, **as God said long ago, when He spoke through the holy Prophets.**" (CJB Acts 3:21)¹⁵⁹*

*"The Word, which gives life! **He existed from the beginning.** We have heard Him, we have seen Him with our eyes, we have contemplated Him, **we have touched Him with our hands!**" (CJB 1 John 1:1)*

*"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, **and the Word was God. He was with God in the beginning.**" (CJB John 1:1-2)*

How much more clearly must YHVH put it to understand that it was He that Spoke the Word in the beginning. He gave the Word and the Word became Flesh 4,000 years later after He Spoke to create everything in, on and around the earth. The exact Word walked the earth 2,000 years ago and ascended to Heaven, to sit on the One-and-Only King's throne¹⁶⁰.

3.2 RESEARCH QUESTIONS

The questions that this dissertation will address and attempt to answer through research, that were also mentioned in Chapter 1, will be fully attended to in this Chapter.

- 1) Why are Exegesis and Hermeneutics necessary to understand and to interpret verses if GOD said "man" must take His Word like a son from his father?¹⁶¹
- 2) Where does the "*I Am*" fit in the Word if the *Godhead* is "3-in-1"? "*Jesus*" is only known (to believe in) for the "*Christians*" for salvation?
- 3) What significance does the *Jewishness* of the Messiah together with the "*Jewish*" *Laws* have to do with His Word today?

¹⁵⁹ Deut 18:18-19

¹⁶⁰ Rev 4:2

¹⁶¹ See complete explanation in Chapter 3.

- 4) Who knows which lay-out of the BIBLE is correct and can it be applied as the correct / true Way?
- 5) How can anyone be sure of truth / correct interpretation / understanding of the BIBLE?
- 6) Is it not time that someone *rewrite* the BIBLE for better understanding?

3.3. PROCEDURE AND TIMEFRAME

Final Date Time	Research Stage
Stage 1 February 2014	Proposal developed. Proposal. Paper on the dissertation. Dissertation outline.
Stage 2 February to March 2014	Reading of literature. Negotiate access to field. Short papers on rationale & conceptual framework, review of literature. Completion of Mini-proposal.
Stage 3 March 2014	Field research: develop and pilot procedures. Complete Research Proposal.
Stage 4 April 2014	Field research: finalise procedures for dissertation. Complete content of Chapter 1 and 2 in dissertation.
Stage 5 July 2014	Field research: put content together of all problem statements. Complete content of Chapter 3 in dissertation Israel visit.
Stage 6 September 2014	Field research: finalise solution content for proper interpretation Complete Chapter 4. Conclusion of chapter 5 of dissertation.
Stage 7 October 2014	Submission and Colloquium Doctum examination. Final revisions. Journal article / Publish book (December 2014 / January 2015).

3.4. DEMARCATION

Scope

- ✧ The following Bibles will be utilised: E-Sword Electronic Bibles, Complete Jewish Bible, New King James Version Bible, Restoration Scriptures: The Word of YHVH, The Hebraic Roots Version Scriptures, The Interlinear Bible – Hebrew-Greek-English, Pad van Waarheid tot die Lewe, Aramaic English New Translation, exeGesis Companion Bible, exeGesis Ready Research Bible and other translations will be cited when they are utilised.
- ✧ Hebrew names and words will be used when ever needed for better interpretation.
- ✧ Definitions within the BIBLE will be identified and cited whenever necessary to proof and to motivate views of interest.
- ✧ The Torah will be used as the basis of the direct Word from GOD.
- ✧ Literature regarding PaRDeS, Exegeses and Hermeneutics from various authors and institutions that have been used for BIBLE interpretation, and will be cited and explained. This research is not solely to prove the formulation of the BIBLE is according to one method, but to ensure that the complete BIBLE given to mankind in whichever language translated, are read and interpreted correctly by using the fundamental principles of the above rules as guidance for Biblical reading / studying / Exegesis.
- ✧ Existing BIBLE formulations will be explained and from there proof has to come from Scripture to ensure correct BIBLE interpretation are done derived only from the Word of the Creator. This is to ensure correct BIBLE Exegeses is applied when studying and teaching BIBLE Scripture.
- ✧ The BIBLE will be the only source to verify and to confirm a statement from the BIBLE. Anything in the Messianic Writings has to be confirmed / verified from the TaNaKh. Interpretation from any BIBLE Script has to come from the Holy Scriptures

and **all** Scriptures have to be ultimately acknowledged and accepted to read and understand Revelation.

✧ Limitations

There are other methods of Exegetical interpretation of Biblical Scriptures that can be used (about ten in total), but the study and research methods to be used within this research are limited to the above.

Islamic religion will be limited within this research studies.

3.5 INTRODUCTION

Here in this Chapter the questions will be discussed and explained for the reader to make decisions in *truth* to what to follow and to what to believe. What is very clear through this research and studies are that correct Exegesis and Hermeneutics are vital for *true* Biblical *interpretation*. These principles are not familiar with most of "Christianity", and it is **the** most important methods to know when interpretation takes place. Since ancient times has a method been used when the *deeper meanings* of Scripture were searched. It is extremely important to search for the answer within Scripture itself and these principles of PaRDeS are used to not interpret Scripture personally. If this does not happen, then *man's own interpretation* is given, which makes the Word of Yah secondary, and GOD commanded us that it is **not permitted** (2 Pet 1:19-21).

This research must bring clarity to each individual with only the truth and from Scripture only. If something is not in the Word of GOD, then obviously it is not from the Word of GOD, but from *man*.

Christianity has unfortunately for centuries put too much focus on the doctrine of the *church*, rather than on the **pure** Word of the Creator GOD. Therefore does the lack-of-knowledge in interpretation come in play, because never did / does the *church* or *preacher of the church* teach the congregation the basic tools of Exegesis or Hermeneutics for studying, reading and understanding the Word of GOD correctly.

This Chapter will also discuss the *fact* that the Messiah is a "Jew", and why it is important to acknowledge this fact. The Jewishness of the Messiah can be vital and important to understand the BIBLE better in context, and the fact why it is mentioned that He is Hebrew is imperative. **Nothing** is mentioned in the BIBLE by coincidence, by mistake or for no reason.

3.6 EXEGESIS / EXEGESES

Exegesis is the singular form and Exegesese plural. Exegesis is necessary to understand a passage in its original context and also very important to *prevent "reading into"* something that is **not** written in the passage or text. Exegesis and Hermeneutics is lateral to each other, and can their principles not be divided or one of them been disregarded or neglected when reading or studying Scripture.

The website "*Theopedia*" defines the distinction of Exegesis from Hermeneutics in an accurate way:

*"Hermeneutics . . . stands in the same relationship to exegesis that a rule-book stands to a game. . . . The rules are not the game, and the game is meaningless without the rules. Hermeneutics proper is not exegesis, but exegesis is applied hermeneutics." In this sense, **hermeneutics may also be seen as the "method of exegesis."***

Here follow more research on the importance of Exegesis:

*Biblical **exegesis** is a systematic process by which a person arrives at a reasonable and coherent sense of the meaning and message of a **biblical passage**. Ideally, an **understanding of the original texts** (Greek and Hebrew) is required. In the process of exegesis, a passage must be viewed in its **historical and grammatical context** with its time / purpose of writing taken into account. This is often accommodated by asking:*

Who wrote the text, and who is the intended readership?

What is the context of the text, i.e. how does it fit in the author's larger thought process, purpose, or argument in the chapter and book where it resides?

Is the choice of words, wording, or word order significant in this particular passage?

Why was the text written (e.g. to correct, encourage, or explain, etc.)?

When was the text written? ¹⁶²

The above questions also form part of the principles of Hermeneutics.

Thus is good knowledge important from correct Exegesis principles to enhance BIBLE study when interpreting the BIBLE. This is extremely important for the following reasons:

"Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish ought from it, that ye may keep the commandments of Yahweh your Elohim which I command you." (WOY Deut 4:2)

"For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, Elohim shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book: And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, Elohim shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book." (WOY Rev 22:18-19) ¹⁶³

Humankind cannot make own (personal / private) interpretation of the Word of the Creator. He explicitly commanded it and He has warned everyone from doing so, because the penalty for not adhering to this instruction is the "*death penalty*". Those doing so will be *erased from Life*. The term old Biblical scholars used for Exegesis, is *Midrash*, and to do proper Midrash¹⁶⁴ is to interpret the Word of GOD only from within the BIBLE itself. Thus, whenever other views of verses, text or Scripture are searched to explain the meaning in

¹⁶² Exegesis, Theopedia - <http://www.theopedia.com/Exegesis>; 02/06/2014.

¹⁶³ More reference from the BIBLE: Deut 12:32; Prov 30:6

¹⁶⁴ Midrash will be discussed in detail in Chapter 4.

the Word of GOD, it must be interpreted from within the BIBLE *for confirmation*. In other words, the explanation must also come **literally** from within the Word.

Exegesis is therefore, when a person interprets a text based **solely on what it says**, from *the direct and literal Word of GOD*. This means to extract *direct* from a text or verse what is there, *opposed to reading into something that is not there*, which is called *Eisegesis*. *Eisegesis* is *poor Exegesis* and a person is then called an *Eisegete* or plural *Eisegetes* for a group. There are certain rules to follow for proper implementation of Exegesis:

- ✧ Read the verse or text in the **immediate** context first.
- ✧ The literal Word(s) of GOD **may never be** disregarded or *dismissed* in the context.
- ✧ Look at related and similar themes.
- ✧ Search for the word(s) definitions to make sure the correct word(s) is used **in the context** (principle of first use).
- ✧ Know the **vernacular**¹⁶⁵ and **vehicular**¹⁶⁶ languages of the time the original writing took place. The writer usually writes in his / her vernacular language.
- ✧ Look for historical or ancient **similar explanation** within Scripture.
- ✧ Search for **similar word usage** by the Prophets / from the beginning.

By taking the above in account when studying / searching for the meaning of verses and texts will proper Exegesis take place and *reading into* (*Eisegesis*) Biblical Scripture will not happen. Correct interpretation of the Word of GOD will be enhanced and also will it keep the Word pure from lies and falsehoods. GOD gave His Command that all BIBLE Prophecy is from Him and not of mankind.¹⁶⁷ People will have the **true** understanding and explanation of the Word of GOD during BIBLE studies and teachings of the *doctrine*¹⁶⁸ of GOD when the Word of GOD is only used for Scripture interpretation.

There are different styles or types of Biblical studies¹⁶⁹ and when these studies are practised must proper Exegesis be implemented for correct interpretation and teaching. All the studies teaches about the Prophecies of the Messiah and when Biblical Prophecies are taught, must only Scripture be used to interpret a given teaching in GOD's Word.

¹⁶⁵ Definition of *vernacular* in English, Oxford Dictionaries -

<http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/vernacular>; 19/06/2014.

¹⁶⁶ Lingua franca, Wikipedia - http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lingua_franca; 19/06/2014.

¹⁶⁷ 2 Pet 1:19-21

¹⁶⁸ Mt 15:9; Mark 7:7

¹⁶⁹ Bible study, Theopedia - http://www.theopedia.com/Bible_study; 02/06/2014.

Any Biblical Prophecy was a GOD spoken prophecy and only GOD's Word can therefore be used to interpret the GOD-given Prophecy as it was mentioned many times before in this dissertation:

*"Yes, we have the **prophetic Word** made very certain. You will do well to pay attention to it as to a light shining in a dark, murky place, until the Day dawns and the Morning Star rises in your hearts. First of all, understand this: **no prophecy of Scripture is to be interpreted by an individual on his own**; for never has a prophecy come as a result of human willing — on the contrary, people moved by the Ruach HaKodesh spoke a message from God."* (CJB 2 Pet 1:19-21)

3.7 EXEGESIS USED BY SHA'UL

Rabbi Sha'ul¹⁷⁰, as they knew Paul in the days of Yahshua, born in Tarsus¹⁷¹, a follower of Judaism¹⁷² before he converted to Messianic Judaism¹⁷³, on the count of the vision of Yahshua. Judaism was influential throughout the Roman Empire at that time. Sha'ul's teacher was the famous rabbi Gamaliel¹⁷⁴ (his name means "gift or reward of GOD"¹⁷⁵ from the Book of Acts 5:24-40 and 22:3. Sha'ul used Jewish methods of Exegesis also when he taught and preached the Word of Yah[shua]:

"Paul in fact uses a number of techniques other than those codified in the middoth which are typical of rabbinic argumentation, e.g. haruzin (called by Longenecker 'pearl-stringing'), the technique of stringing together quotations joined only by 'and' or 'and then' in Rm 3.10-18; 9.12-20; 15; Ga 3.10-13 (cf. Ber. 18a; Sanh. 38b;

¹⁷⁰ Sha'ul a Torah scholar within the Yeshiva school of rabbi Hillel, with Gamaliel as head of the school, the son of Hillel and Sha'ul a grandson of Hillel. The following is a very useful and interesting website to understand the differences between the two (2) major rabbinical schools during the time of Yahshua on earth. The website also gives an understanding of the two (2) Sanhedrin's within the Book of Acts. This site will also assist in the historical and philosophical understanding during the time of Yahshua. What you never knew about the Pharisees, Centralcal - <http://www.centralcal.com/crist2.htm>; 26/09/2014.

¹⁷¹ His birth in Tarsus, Truth in History - <http://truthinhistory.org/tracing-the-steps-of-the-apostle-paul.html>; 26/09/2014.

¹⁷² Paul As A Jew: Paul's Religion: Judaism, Biblical Theology - <http://www.biblicalthology.com/Research/WallaceQ01.html>; 26/09/2014.

¹⁷³ Acts 28:23

¹⁷⁴ Gamaliel: "it is not doubted that he held a senior position in the highest court in Jerusalem.[2] Gamaliel holds a reputation in the Mishnah for being one of the greatest teachers in all the annals of Judaism: "Since Rabban Gamaliel the Elder died, there has been no more reverence for the law, and purity and piety died out at the same time" (Talmud – Sotah 15:18); <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gamaliel>; 26/09/2014.

¹⁷⁵ ALL THE MEN OF THE BIBLE – GAMALIEL, Bible Gateway - <https://www.biblegateway.com/resources/all-men-bible/Gamaliel>; 26/09/2014.

Mak. 13b), or the quoting of Law, Prophets and Writings in quick succession (Rom 11.8-10; 15.9-12).

*Rather than taking the middoth as a starting-point for the investigation of Paul, it will be useful at this stage to detail a number of Pauline passages **where he seems to be specifically reliant on Jewish methods of exegesis**. It has, of course, been specifically argued that Paul drew his interpretation of the vicarious sacrificial death of Jesus from the Aqedah; there seems, however, to be no link of detail or vocabulary between Jewish treatments of this well-known theme and Paul's treatment of Jesus' sacrifice.*

*One pattern is, on the other hand, frequently apparent in Paul's use of the **Jewish tradition of interpretation**. Not content with pulling certain Jewish interpretations round to centre them on Christ, he is an artist at using such interpretations precisely to show the inadequacy of the older view, thus leaving the proponents of the Jewish argument hoist with their own petard. There is a whole series of passages where Paul stands the accepted interpretation on its head.¹⁷⁶*

Proof of using the method of Exegesis by Sha'ul can be seen in the following verses and texts; in the way he came to the knowledge of how Moshe received the Torah and how mankind is supposed to live by. Phenomenal to understand and to experience through proper Exegesis, how Sha'ul knew exactly what YHVH explained to Moshe regarding the Torah and with exactly the same interpretation 1,500 years later on how the Torah should be seen. It is exactly the same way when it was given in the beginning by the Creator.

Just as Yochanan (John) saw it and explained it in John 1:1; explaining the simple fact that the Word is the Word of Yah and because of that, it is obvious that Yah[shua] is YHVH. If the Word was not from YHVH and was not the same Word spoken by the Creator, then it is also obvious that Yah[shua] is not YHVH, because the Voice did not come from YHVH. Back to the Exegesis texts of Sha'ul:

***"Moses' ascent to heaven** to fetch the Law (Rom 10.6-8, cf. M. McNamara, 1966). The Jewish character of the argument is already hinted by the formula used*

¹⁷⁶ Jewish Methods of Exegesis in the New Testament; Henry Wansbrough;
<http://users.ox.ac.uk/~sben0056/JewishExegesisintheNewTestament-rome.htm>; 26/09/2014.

to apply the scripture, *tou/t v evstin*, so common in the Qumran pesharim (vv. 6, 7, cf. 1QpHab 2.1-10). Paul also, however, takes over the reasoning. The Palestinian Targum understands the passage Dt 30.12-14 of Moses' ascent into heaven to fetch the Law. It understands the descent into the depths (the original text of Dt has only 'cross the seas') of Jonah's 'resurrection', in which he brings up the Law with him. Paul applies them both to the resurrection and exaltation of Christ. Not surprisingly he omits both mentions in the passage of Dt about 'putting the Law into practice', which would not further his argument.

The same idea of Moses' ascent to heaven to fetch the Law is surely reflected also in Eph 4.1-8. Here Ps 67.19 is quoted as *VAnaba.j eivj u[yoj hv|cmalw,teusen aivcmalwsi,an(e;dwken do,mata toi/j avnqrw,poij*. This departs from the LXX, which has *hase;labej do,mata evn avnqrw,poij* (so the Targum changes *toqlx fromxql*). The Targum, however, simply incorporates its interpretation into the text, 'You ascended the firmament, prophet Moses, you took captivity captive, you learned the words of the Law, you gave them as gifts to the sons of men'. Just as in Rm 10, the role of Moses is in Eph, without further ado, simply assigned to Christ.¹⁷⁷

The Creator gave us a warning and instruction within His Word (as said before in this Chapter) in Deut 4:2; 12:32; Prov 30:6 and Rev 22:18-19, to **never alter** His Word. It should be wise to not attempt to search for "deeper meaning" within the Word of Yah if people did not master the simple facts of Exegesis. People should understand the **simple or plain / lieteral / direct** meaning of Scripture with the **historical meaning** of the text or verse, *before* people start *speculating or reading into what is not there*.

Let's do further Biblical research with text as quoted above by Sha'ul about Moshe:

*I therefore, a **prisoner for the Lord**, urge you to walk in a manner worthy of the calling to which you have been called, with all humility and gentleness, with patience, bearing with one another in love, **eager to maintain the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace**. There is one body and one Spirit—just as you were called to the one hope that belongs to your call— **one Lord, one faith, one baptism, one God and Father of all**, who is over all and through all and in all. But grace was given to each one of us according to the measure of Christ's gift.*

¹⁷⁷ i.b.i.d.

Therefore it says, "When he ascended on high he led a host of captives, and he gave gifts to men." (ESV Eph 4:1-8)

For Moses writes about the **righteousness that is based on the law**, that the person who does the commandments shall live by them. But the **righteousness based on faith** says, "Do not say in your heart, 'Who will ascend into heaven?'" (that is, to bring Christ down) "or 'Who will descend into the **abyss**?'" (that is, to bring Christ up from the dead). But what does it say? "**The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart**" (that is, the word of faith that we proclaim); (ESV Rom 10:5-8)

"For this commandment that I command you today **is not too hard for you, neither is it far off**. It is not in heaven, that you should say, 'Who will ascend to heaven for us and bring it to us, that we may hear it and do it?' Neither is it beyond the sea, that you should say, 'Who will go over the sea for us and bring it to us, that we may hear it and do it?' **But the word is very near you. It is in your mouth and in your heart, so that you can do it.** (ESV Deut 30:11-14)

This research is not about Torah, but how to interpret the Word when for instance studying Torah, and the mere fact is that Sha'ul used a typical Exegesis method to explain the Torah as he was taught since his childhood¹⁷⁸. There cannot be argued against the Scriptural statement that Torah must be within the heart of the righteous ones in faith of Yah[shua] (Yah is Salvation), when Torah is written on the mind.

This is why the Author of Hebrews wrote the following:

" 'For this is the covenant which I will make with the house of Isra'el **after those days**,' says Adonai: 'I will put **my Torah** in their minds and write it on their hearts; I will be their God, and they will be my people.'" (CJB Heb 8:10)

Where did this author get these words and why did the author say these words?

¹⁷⁸ Luke 2:42

*"For this is the covenant I will make with the house of Isra'el **after those days**," says Adonai: "I will put **my Torah** within them and write it on their hearts; I will be their God, and they will be my people." (CJB Jer 31:33 [32])*

The Book of Jeremiah was written about 560 B.C.E. (BC) and Hebrews about 100 C.E. (A.D.), exactly the same words 600 to 700 years apart to the *dispersed ones of Yah*, where GOD said that the people will be His people as He will be the **only** GOD to His people. When will the people be His people?

After those days when the Torah of GOD will be within the **minds**, which is when the people know and have knowledge of His Torah; will the Torah of GOD be within the **hearts**, which again is whatever is in the mind will come from the heart. Thus, the fruit from the heart comes from what is [written] in the mind. Whatever people think in their minds will exit from the heart. Therefore, Scripture said that what comes from the heart makes a person holy (Set-Apart) or unholy (not Set-Apart)¹⁷⁹.

Clearly can be seen that the Torah is not yet in the minds and hearts of the people, because then everyone will know and do Torah. Also if "those days" already started, when did it happen and who announced it, because it is definitely only talking about the days when Yah is coming as HaMashiach on His white horse, because He already came on a donkey.

The Author of Hebrews used perfect Exegesis:

- ✧ He used the verse or text in the immediate context.
- ✧ GOD's literal Word (of the original context) was not disregarded or *deleted*.
- ✧ Similar theme was used.
- ✧ Search for the word(s) definitions to make sure the correct word(s) is used in the context – this was obviously knowable.
- ✧ Know the vernacular¹⁸⁰ and vehicular¹⁸¹ languages of the time the original writing took place. The writer wrote in his / her vernacular language. This author read and spoke with no doubt Hebrew.

¹⁷⁹ 1 Thes 3:13

¹⁸⁰ Definition of *vernacular* in English; <http://www.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/english/vernacular>; 19/06/2014.

¹⁸¹ Lingua franca; http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lingua_franca; 19/06/2014.

- ✧ He used historical and ancient similar explanation within Scripture.
- ✧ Search for similar word usage by the Prophets / from the beginning. The author used exactly the similar words as the Prophet.

This is exactly the way proper Exegesis must be used when reading and studying the Word of GOD, as this is how it was given to the Prophets. The Apostles carried the Word over in a similar manner, and this is also the way mankind must use proper Exegesis to understand what is truly said and meant. People must revert from Eisegesis by *reading into what is not said* and turn to GOD's Word only for interpreting His Prophecy.

What do these verses really say now that more knowledge of Exegesis exists?

- a)** Firstly, for those who do not know Torah, what is the Torah in these verses? **b)** Secondly, is the Torah in every human's mind and heart? **c)** Thirdly, if Jeremiah and the Author of Hebrew said *after those days*, then today must still be *after those days*, or when? **d)** Fourthly, what is the *Covenant* mentioned in these verses? **e)** Fifthly, when *will* He be GOD to His people?

*" 'For this is the (d) covenant which I will make with the house of Isra'el (c) **after those days**, ' says Adonai: 'I will put (a) **my Torah** (b) in their minds and write it on their hearts; (e) I will be their God, and they will be my people."*

- a) What does the King James Version say, "*I will put my law*"... The Law of GOD is His complete Law, all the Laws and not only *singled out Laws* like most of humankind does. Not only the Ten Commandments also, because Yahshua said he came to give all the Laws and that not one letter of the Law nor one Word of the Law will be abolished or destroyed¹⁸² and also said He that the *fulfillment* of love **depends** on the complete Law of Moses (Torah)¹⁸³ and what all the Prophets¹⁸⁴ said. Yahshua said it because He also said to Yochanan (John) to taught the people (exactly how He taught them together all the Laws for forty (40) days¹⁸⁵ on the Mount) that His Laws are forever, because if someone wants to believe in Him, that person has to believe

¹⁸² Matt 5:17-18

¹⁸³ Rom 13:10

¹⁸⁴ Matt 22:36-40

¹⁸⁵ Acts 1:3

Moses and everything Moses wrote, and that were the five (5) Books (Torah / Chamash) written by Moses: Genesis to Deuteronomium.

- b) The Torah is definitely not in everyones minds and hearts, as all does not know His Torah yet and that His Torah is Righteousness to bear the *good fruit from the heart*¹⁸⁶. Most of Christianity thinks the Torah has been abolished and is not necessary *anymore* to adhere to and to live by. Completely against what Yahshua said in John, Matthew and Luke and also preached by Sha'ul to the "*Dispersed ones of Yah*" (GalatYah – Galatians). Sha'ul the Jew¹⁸⁷ who were Hebrew¹⁸⁸ taught by his fathers exactly what the Prophets said the Way of the Righteous GOD¹⁸⁹, did never speak against the Torah of GOD¹⁹⁰; explained by the Son of Man Messiah, because he believed everything that was written in the Torah and he taught people Torah¹⁹¹ to make them believers in Yahshua HaMashiach¹⁹².
- c) These days did obviously not come yet, because both Jeremiah and Sha'ul preaches the same Words from GOD, and Sha'ul did not confirm these days have arrived, but will still come. People still have to teach brothers and sisters about the Torah (Law) and teach them that sin is unrighteousness that comes from the heart and mind, and when sin is known, righteousness will **prevail**¹⁹³. Everyone will know Torah and will have to obey / keep / protect the Torah in the heart. The City to come is still seeking, thus the New Jerusalem, His Kingdom must still come, those are the days.
- d) The Jew (House of Yahudah) and Gentile (House of Yisra'El) **together** does not have one Covenant yet. Most of the House of Yahudah does not believe in HaMashiach and most of Christianity (not even to mention the other religions) does not believe Torah¹⁹⁴ (the Word by GOD). Therefore is this Covenant also not yet in the minds and heart. Even in the time of Moshe did the people not learn the Way of GOD, because their hearts went astray from His Torah, still today this is the case. That is what Sha'ul (Eph 4:1-8 and Rom 10:6-8) and the Author of Hebrews (Heb 3:10) tried to tell the people, to know GOD's Way and to keep it in the heart, mind

¹⁸⁶ Gal 5:18-23

¹⁸⁷ Acts 22:3; 21:39

¹⁸⁸ Acts 21:40

¹⁸⁹ Acts 22:14; 24:14, 3

¹⁹⁰ Acts 28:23; 24:14; Gal 5:23; Rom 13:10; 1 Tim 1:8-11; 2 Tim 2:22-3:7

¹⁹¹ 2 Tim 2:22-3:7; 1 Tim 1:8-11; **Rom 3:31**, 7:7; 1 Cor 15:55; Rom 7:12-14

¹⁹² Acts 28:24

¹⁹³ Heb 10:16-17

¹⁹⁴ **1 Cor 9:20-21**

and soul. This is the Covenant made by GOD to Avraham and to his descendants Yitzakh (Isaac) and Ya'acov (Jacob), given to the twelve (12) sons of Yisra'El (sons of Jacob), which became the twelve (12) Leaders of their Tribes who forms the complete House of Yisra'El (House of Yahudah and House of Yisra'El become one nation again) as one House again.

Like rabbi Sha'ul¹⁹⁵ explained to GalatYah¹⁹⁶ (Galatians), the people must choose which covenant they want to follow, the one of the heathen Ishmail (Hagar) or the one of Isaac (Sarah). Sha'ul made it clear that his brothers are the ones who are in the **promise of GOD**. People must be like brothers of the son from the *free woman*, brothers of Isaac the son from the mother Sarah. Isaac the Hebrew was in the Ruach (Set-Apart Spirit) where Ismail was born after the flesh. The things from the flesh must be casted out for the Ruach to inherit the control¹⁹⁷.

Those who condemn or reject the Torah will be put to death without mercy and compassion¹⁹⁸. Sha'ul or any Apostle never spoke or preached against Torah.¹⁹⁹

The covenant is the Torah in every man's mind for knowledge and wisdom to know the truth²⁰⁰ and to plant the seed for the heart to bear the fruit of the Ruach; all comes from the Torah²⁰¹.

e) People will be people of GOD when they accept the Covenant of GOD to know what it means to fear GOD and to love Him with all the heart, mind and soul. The day

¹⁹⁵ "In Shaul's day rabbis were the teachers and exegetes of the sacred writings found in the Torah. Scribes were the professional copiers of the law," The Early Life and Background of Paul the Apostle, Biblical Theology - <http://www.biblicaltheology.com/Research/WallaceQ01.html>; 26/09/2014.

¹⁹⁶ "Dispersed ones of Yah"

¹⁹⁷ Gal 4:20-31

¹⁹⁸ Heb 10:26, 28

¹⁹⁹ Analysis; "Paul's **rabbinic education was first class**, as he learned his craft from one of the most noted rabbis in history. Along with his rabbinic education, the Hillel school was noted for giving their students a balanced education, **giving Paul broad exposure to classical literature, philosophy, and ethics**. Paul, in his letters, borrowed heavily from his knowledge of Stoic philosophy, using Stoic terms and metaphors to assist his new Gentile converts in their understanding of the revealed word of God. **Paul also relied heavily upon his training received concerning the law and the prophets**, utilizing this knowledge to convince his Jewish countrymen of the unity of past OT prophecy and covenants with the fulfilling of these in Jesus Christ. Paul, as the evangelist, is without peer. God, in his divine wisdom and grace, exposed Paul to a wide spectrum of experiences and education, giving the Apostle to the Gentiles **the tools** to effectively spread the Gospel and establish the church solidly in all parts of the Roman Empire." The Early Life and Background of Paul the Apostle, Biblical Theology -

<http://www.biblicaltheology.com/Research/WallaceQ01.html>; 26/09/2014.

²⁰⁰ Ps 19:8-10

²⁰¹ Gal 5:22-23

when Elohim comes to take His Set-Apart ones dressed in *fine white linen*²⁰², which represents righteousness from the Torah, has not come yet, because the New Jerusalem did not descend from Heaven to earth yet.

Sola-Scriptura is exactly what it says it is, from Scripture only and to take from Scripture only, the simple literal word has to be taken only to verify and motivate a text or passage. To do this, proper Exegesis has to be known and practised to ensure man's own (personal / private) interpretation does not creep in or that Eisegesis happen when a person *reads into something that is not written*.

3.8 HERMENEUTICS

The following steps are vital important to teachers / students / believers for the correct application of Hermeneutics to **responsibly** studying or teaching the BIBLE. These steps can also be seen as the four in-depth interpretations of the Word of GOD:

- ✧ Grammatical or Literal interpretation
- ✧ Allegorical interpretation
- ✧ Parabolic or Moral interpretation
- ✧ Mystical or Eschatological interpretation

They are in-line (parallel) with the PaRD eS fundamentals.

Although these steps are given, one must never deviate from the literal Word GOD gave for humankind's own good. Literal can never be replaced with the spiritual as first step, because then can assumptions and Eisegesis occur, which lead to man's personal interpretation without the ability to verify or motivate the interpretation with Scripture.

Some Scripture cannot be taken literal first and others again as Spiritual first, then will Scripture not be able to verify Scripture. All the Apostles and Yahshua read from the Prophets as it was written the first time. Also does GOD commanded His people to never add or take away from His Word, which means literally to take it as it is, because it is His Word and not man's word. He even added the death penalty to His Command with the result of everlasting hell.

²⁰² Rev 19:8

YHVH gave us three *everlasting* literal signs of His Covenant, the *rainbow*²⁰³, the *Sabbath*²⁰⁴ Day and *circumcision*²⁰⁵, how can only one be taken literal and the other two not. The *rainbow* does still exist; thank you Lord the world can still see it. Yom Shabbat (Day of Sabbath) is still the last day of the week (seventh day) and it has to be a Set-Apart day for His people; thank you Lord, but this Covenant is broken by many. Circumcision will exist till Heaven and earth are *destroyed / abolished*²⁰⁶, earth and Heaven is still with us.²⁰⁷

If the Creator spoke these *everlasting* Words and gave it as His Covenant, what right does a person as a human being has to break this Covenant of GOD or to abolish the Law? Who gives the humankind the power to decide what of GOD's Word must be taken literal and what not? Thank you for giving us Your Instructions to know not to do wilfull sin.

*"For if we **deliberately continue to sin** after receiving the **knowledge of the truth**, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, but only the terrifying prospect of Judgement, of raging fire that will consume the enemies. Someone who disregards the **Torah of Moshe** is put to death without mercy on the word of two or three witnesses."* (CJB Heb 10:26-28)

Hermeneutics must form part of Exegesis to ensure that the Word of the Creator Almighty is kept pure / Set-Apart like humankind has to be Set-Apart people to GOD:

"Sometimes the terms Exegesis and Hermeneutics have been used interchangeably. However, there is a distinction to be made. Bernard Ramm describes the difference as follows:

"Hermeneutics . . . stands in the same relationship to exegesis that a rule-book stands to a game. . . . The rules are not the game, and the game is meaningless

²⁰³ Gen 9:12-13

²⁰⁴ Exo 31:13-17

²⁰⁵ Gen 17:11; Ezek 44:9

²⁰⁶ Matt 5:17-18; 19.

²⁰⁷ This is a topic for another discussion. In short, the flesh cannot be circumcised if the heart is not fully circumcised. Abraham took 24 years before his flesh was circumcised. If a person was not circumcised before death happened, is a case between GOD and the person. GOD only knows each one's heart. GOD knows if a person is busy with circumcision of the heart. No Jew or Gentile can be saved with flesh circumcision if the heart is not circumcised! Every human being must be re-birthed (John 3:3) and not one person is excused from it; and this is part of the process of heart circumcision. This is the reason Sha'ul said a person should be *buried* (fully wet: KJV with Strong's numbers – G907) by being immersed (Col 2:12). Also part of heart circumcision. Heart circumcision is a journey and no time frame is added in Scripture. GOD the Creator knows the process and He knows if a person is busy with heart circumcision. Start by *being* immersed and be in union with the Messiah by *being* raised from the dead by GOD's faithfulness!

*without the rules. Hermeneutics proper is not exegesis, but exegesis is applied hermeneutics." In this sense, hermeneutics may also be seen as the "method of exegesis."*²⁰⁸

*"Hermeneutics is the science of interpreting what an author has written. In Christian theology, **hermeneutics focuses specifically on constructing and discovering the appropriate rules for interpreting the Bible.** These methods and principles, however, are often drawn from outside of scripture in historical, literary or other fields. It inevitably involves exegesis, which is **the act of interpreting or explaining the meaning of scripture.** The **goal** in applying the principles of hermeneutics is to **"rightly handle the word of truth"** (2 Tim. 2:15), striving to accurately discern the meaning of the text."*²⁰⁹

Sha'ul explains and confirms his statement of the above verse in his Second Book to Timothy:

"And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in the Messiah Yahshua. All scripture given by inspiration of Yahweh, indeed is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:" (WOY 2 Tim 3:15-16)

"and recalling too how from childhood you have known the Holy Scriptures, which can give you the wisdom that leads to deliverance through trusting in Yeshua the Messiah. All Scripture is God-breathed and is valuable for teaching the truth, convicting of sin, correcting faults and training in right living;" (CJB 2 Tim 3:15-16)

3.9 PRINCIPLES OF HERMENEUTICS

The principles or four steps in Hermeneutics have been researched and the following have been noted:

"What Is a Literal Interpretation?"

²⁰⁸ Exegesis, Theopedia - <http://www.theopedia.com/Exegesis>; 02/06/2014.

²⁰⁹ Interpretation of the Bible, Theopedia - http://www.theopedia.com/Interpretation_of_the_Bible; 02/06/2014.

Prior to the Protestant Reformation in the 1500s, biblical interpretation was often dominated by the allegorical method. Looking back to Augustine, the medieval church believed that every biblical passage contained four levels of meaning. These four levels were the literal, the allegorical, the moral, and the eschatological. For instance, the word Jerusalem literally referred to the city itself; allegorically, it refers to the church of Christ; morally, it indicates the human soul; and eschatologically it points to the heavenly Jerusalem.(1) Under this school of interpretation it was the church that established what the correct meaning of a passage was for all four levels.

*By the time of the reformation, knowledge of the Bible was scarce. However, with a new emphasis on the original languages of Hebrew and Greek, the fourfold method of interpretation was beginning to fade. Martin Luther argued that the church shouldn't determine what the Scriptures mean, **the Scriptures should govern what the churches teach**. He also rejected the allegorical method of interpreting Scripture."²¹⁰*

The above also happened because the "church" rejected the Jewishness of the Messiah (Rabbinical Teachings) and because of the Anti-Semitism in the "church" did they refuse to be taught by the Jewish rabbis. Today people gladly ask rabbis for meanings in the Word and better knowledge and understanding of the Word suddenly appear. Isn't this also why Yahshua explicitly said to the woman, "*You people don't know what you are worshipping; we worship what we do know, because salvation comes from the Jews*" (John 4:22).

Who gave the "churches" the authority (*shemicha*) to interpret GOD's Word, the BIBLE, as they "see it" and to *govern* their interpretation? The Word of GOD explicitly instructed that no one may alter or add or take away from His Word and also that mankind should take GOD's Word from Him as a child from the Father.

In Roman-Catholic churches the pope *act* as GOD on earth as the "*Vicar of Christ*", which is an abomination to GOD and here Luther of the Protestant churches does the same. Unfortunately Calvin of the Reformed Protestant churches also continued with this *act of*

²¹⁰ HERMENEUTICS: Understanding the Bible, Leaderu - <http://www.leaderu.com/orgs/probe/docs/hermen.html>; 02/06/2014.

man, neglecting the Words of GOD. Therefore confirmations have been written in the Synod of the church which is not found in the BIBLE for confirmation, and people have to adhere to it when in the church.

This is not Scriptural at all, because every human being must choose to believe what they want and nothing can be forced down to others to form part of a "church". People have to have their free will to study and to learn the truth and to ask questions for better understanding of Scripture. Teachers can teach the Word of GOD to anyone, but only the Ruach HaKodesh (Set-Apart Spirit / GOD – GOD is Spirit²¹¹) can *change* people or govern the truth. No *church* or man can *play* GOD or force people to believe what is written anywhere other than in the BIBLE. Proof has to be in the BIBLE. No "*Vicar of Christ*"²¹² was given in Scripture to *act* as an *substitute* for GOD on earth. Total Idolatrous in GOD's eyes!

Luther and Calvin agreed on *literal interpretation* and *Scripture interpret Scripture*, but "proof is in the pudding" and the *doctrine* of Protestantism and Calvinism does not proof it with *infant baptism*, *Christmas and Easter feasts*, *Sunday as Sabbath Day*, *GOD's Law (Torah) is legalism*, etc. All this are seen as *basics of Christianity* and will be further delt with later in Chapter 3 of this dissertation.

"Luther argued that a proper understanding of what a passage teaches comes from a literal interpretation. This means that the reader must consider the historical context and the grammatical structure of each passage, and strive to maintain contextual consistency. This method was a result of Luther's belief that the Scriptures are clear, in opposition to the medieval church's position that they are so obscure that only the church can uncover their true meaning.

Calvin agreed in principle with Luther. He also placed great importance on the notion that "Scripture interprets Scripture," stressing that the grammar, context, words, and parallel passages found in the text were more important than any meaning we might impose on them. He added that, "it is the first business of an

²¹¹ John 4:24

²¹² Who is the true Vicar of Christ? The Roman Catholic Pope or the Holy Spirit? Christian Answers - <http://christiananswers.net/q-eden/popevicarofchrist.html>; 26/09/2014.

interpreter to let the author say what he does say, instead of attributing to him what we think he ought to say."²¹³

It is therefore extremely important to apply proper Exegesis when the direct Word of GOD is taken literally. The Word of GOD **should be taken literal**, because it is **verily the direct Word** given to the Authors literally by GOD the Creator of all *things*. Proper Exegesis is remembering the principles to read the Scriptural text in *context*, taking into account the different literary genre in the BIBLE. When a text from a Prophet is cited by an Apostle, the text normally verified the Word by the Prophet. An interpretation fault / problem will occur when a given context is not taken into account and will Eisegesis (poor Exegesis) be implied and will a reader read *something that is not written in the BIBLE*.

*"Another approach to interpretation is letterism. **While often ignoring context, historical and cultural setting**, and even grammatical structure, letterism takes each word as an isolated truth. A problem with this method is that it fails to take into account the different literary genre, or types, in the Bible. The Hebrew poetry of the Psalms is not to be interpreted in the same way as is the logical discourse of Romans. Letterism tends to lead to legalism because of its inability to distinguish between literary types. All passages tend to become equally binding on current believers.*"²¹⁴

The above may be the fact that so many *Christian believers* believe that the Torah of GOD is *connected* with "legalism", because the rules and principles of proper Exegesis are not followed or it is not known. The Word explicitly says that Torah is Spiritual²¹⁵, Holy²¹⁶, righteous²¹⁷ and love²¹⁸; and not perversion of legalism. When proper Exegesis is not implemented, then *reading into something which is not said* will happen and text is not read within *context*. Listen to what Sha'ul says regarding the Torah and *legalism*:

*"That is, with Jews, what I did was put myself in the position of a Jew, in order to win Jews. With people in subjection to a **legalistic perversion** of the Torah, I put*

²¹³ HERMENEUTICS: What Is a Literal Interpretation; <http://www.leaderu.com/orgs/probe/docs/hermen.html>; 02/06/2014.

²¹⁴ i.b.i.d.

²¹⁵ Rom 7:14

²¹⁶ Rom 7:12

²¹⁷ Rom 7:12

²¹⁸ Rom 13:10

myself in the position of someone under such legalism, in order to win those under this legalism, even though I myself am not in subjection to a legalistic perversion of the Torah. **With those who live outside the framework of Torah**, I put myself in the position of someone outside the Torah **in order to win those outside the Torah** — although I myself am not outside the framework of God's Torah but **within the framework of Torah as upheld by the Messiah.**" (CJB 1 Cor 9:20-21)

"And unto the Jews I became as a Jew, that I might gain the Jews; to them that are under the law, as under the law, that I might gain them that are under the law; To them that are without law, as without law, **(being not without law to God, but under the law to Christ,) that I might gain them that are without law.**" (KJV 1 Cor 9:20-21)

"To the Jews I became like a Jew in order to win Jews. To those under the Law I became like a man under the Law, in order to win those under the Law **(although I myself am not under the Law)**. To those who do not have the Law, I became like a man who does not have the Law in order **to win those who do not have the Law. However, I am not free from God's Law, but I'm subject to the Messiah's law.**" (ISV 1 Cor 9:20-21)

"And to the Yah Hudiym I become as a Yah Hudy to gain the Yah Hudiym; to them under torah, as under torah, **to gain them under torah**; to them untorahed, as untorahed, **not being untorahed to Elohim**, but entorahed to Messiah, **to gain the untorahed.**" (ECB 1 Cor 9:20-21)

Creator GOD and Yahshua the Messiah is One (Echad) and not two (2) different figures or entities or bodies, but ONE:

"I and the Father are one." (ESV John 10:30)

If we use Jesus as our model for interpreting Scripture we find that **He treated the historical narratives as facts**. Old Testament characters and events are talked about as if they actually existed and happened. When making applications from the Old Testament text, Jesus used the normal, rather than allegorical meaning, of the passage. Jesus condemned the Scribes and Pharisees for replacing the

*original intent of the Scriptures with their own traditions. **Jesus took a literal approach to interpretation which took into account the literary type of the passage.***

*Paul tells Timothy that he is to do his "best to present himself to God as one approved, a **workman** who does not need to be ashamed and **who correctly handles the word of truth.**" Having the right method of interpretation is a critical precursor to accomplishing this admonition.²¹⁹*

Some questions now arise:

- ✧ Where does infant baptism originate from?
- ✧ When did the last day of the week (Yom Shebi'i) change to the first day of the week (Yom Roshen)?
- ✧ Why was Yahshua circumcised if it is not necessary today, why did He have to go through it?
- ✧ Where can people study the feast of *Christmas* and *Easter* in Scripture to seek the truth?
- ✧ Where does "*Trinity*" appear in the BIBLE to define the concept of it?
- ✧ Why can the word "*church*" not be found in the BIBLE?
- ✧ Where does Scripture mention that Yahshua came to *replace* what is said by the Creator GOD?
- ✧ Where does it say the Law of GOD (Torah) is legalism and not Holy?
- ✧ How can *Judaism* not be connected with Yahshua HaMashich?
- ✧ Why can Sha'ul not be seen as a Jew educated with the Torah (Law of Moshe)?

Above are only a few questions that came to mind when Sola-Scriptura is mentioned and when proper Exegesis and Hermeneutics had to be taken into account when studying and interpreting Scripture. The above questions will be further explained in this Chapter.

²¹⁹ HERMENEUTICS: What Is a Literal Interpretation, Leaderu - <http://www.leaderu.com/orgs/probe/docs/hermen.html>; 02/06/2014.

3.10 APPLYING HERMENEUTICS

As said before, the Word of GOD is His literal Word to mankind, and man's personal interpretation is prohibited when the Word of GOD is interpreted. HaMashiach explicitly said that the Word must be taken as it is given from the Father, His literal Word to all the people on earth. Imagine if all make their own interpretation of the Word of GOD, what chaos will there be? This is the reason why there are over 41,000 denominations each with their *own believe*, with their *own rules* people have to obey to.

Therefore, this research give steps and approaches to follow to ensure proper Hermeneutics are used, which forms part of Exegesis when studying, reading and teaching the Word of GOD. First must the **literal genre of the passage** be determined. Second, the history of the original Writer must be known to read and to understand the passage in context. Then can be determined if the passage consist of *legislation, poetry, Prophetic Word for the Kingdom (Eschatology)*, etc.

Research from another author follows regarding the application and proces of Scriptural Hermeneutics. A process people can follow to assist with correct and true interpretation of the BIBLE:

Applying the Hermeneutic Process

*Next, we will look at how one might approach a specific text. **A first step should be to determine the literary genre of the passage.** A passage might be legal, narrative, polemic, poetry, wisdom, gospel, logical discourse, or prophetic literature, each having specific guidelines for proper interpretation. For instance, the wisdom literature found in Proverbs is to be seen as maxims or general truths based on broad experience and observations. **"They are guidelines, not guarantees; precepts, not promises."***

Now, it would be helpful to identify the use of figurative language in the passage. Various forms of Hebrew poetry, simile, metaphor, and hyperbole need to be recognized if the reader is to understand the passage's meaning. Hyperbole, for example, uses exaggeration to make a point. John says that the whole world would not have room for the books that would be written if everything about

*Jesus's life was written down (John 21:25). John is using figurative speech. His point is that there were many things that Jesus did that weren't recorded.*²²⁰

Therefore, the Talmud and the Apogrypha are important for reading, but it is a *complimentary* to Scripture and should not be seen or taken above Scripture or as Scripture.

Scripture is Scripture and it is the literal Word from GOD and it is **solely** the Work of GOD. The BIBLE, everything that is written in Scriptures, is ultimately the *Creation* of GOD, and not of man!

A very important *connective word* that is of high importance to take note of when it is used in Scripture, is the word "but". As Prof Liebenberg taught me, when GOD used the word "but" in Scripture, a person should continue reading with caution to see what GOD wants to say. GOD then usually wants attention, because GOD "*kicks bud*" if it is not attended to what he commands.

Thus *but* is for *bud* kicking. Be attend on Scripture when "*but*" is in a sentence! Connective words like "and" or "for" is just as important, especially when a long sentence is read.²²¹

²²⁰ Hermeneutics: Applying the Hermeneutics Process, Leaderu - <http://www.leaderu.com/orgs/probe/docs/hermen.html>; 02/06/2014.

²²¹ i.b.i.d.: *The Hebrew language of the Old Testament is filled with examples of figurative text. Judges 7:12 claims that "The Midianites, the Amalekites and all the other eastern peoples had settled in the valley, thick as locusts. Their camels could no more be counted than the sand on the seashore." Were there actually billions of camels in the valley, or is this an overstatement for the sake of making the point that there were many camels present? Interpreting a passage begins by looking for the plain literal meaning of the text, but if there are obvious contradictions of known facts we look for a figure of speech. Clues for interpreting a figure of speech are usually found in the immediate context.*

After a passage's literary type is determined and figures of speech are identified, we can begin to focus on the content of a section of Scripture. Four levels of study are recommended. Word studies come first. Words are the building blocks of meaning, and by looking at the root origin or etymology of a word; its historical development over time; and the meaning of the word at the time of its use in Scripture we can gain insight into a passage's meaning.

Much is to be gained by focusing on the verbs and conjunctions within a text.

Connective words like "and" or "for" are important when reading long or difficult passages. The word "for" introduces a reason for a preceding statement. In Romans 1:15-17 Paul says that he is eager "to preach the gospel . . . for I am not ashamed . . . for it is the power of God for salvation . . . for in it the righteousness of God is revealed." And, in Romans 8, "for" occurs 15 times.

Other techniques for studying words include looking at synonyms, antonyms, and cross references. Cross-references might be verbal, parallel (using the same words), or conceptual (using the same idea).

Scripture highlights the importance of good and proper Hermeneutics:

They read clearly from the scroll, in the Torah of God, translated it, and enabled them to understand the sense of what was being read. (CJB Neh 8:8)

They read from the Book of the Law of God, distinctly communicating its meaning, so they could understand the reading. (ISV Neh 8:8)

He (Yahshua) said to them, "Foolish people! So unwilling to put your trust in everything the prophets spoke! Didn't the Messiah have to die like this before entering his glory?" Then, starting with Moshe and all the prophets, he explained to them the things that can be found throughout the Tanakh concerning himself. (CJB Luke 24:25-27)

Now the people here were of nobler character than the ones in Thessalonica; they eagerly welcomed the message, checking the Tanakh (Scriptures then) every day to see if the things Sha'ul was saying were true. (CJB Acts 17:11)

Do all you can to present yourself to God as someone worthy of his approval, as a worker with no need to be ashamed, because he deals straightforwardly with the Word of the Truth. (WOY 2 Tim 2:15)

As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction. (WOY 2 Pet 3:16)

Yahshua is the Word (Messianic Writings), was the Word (Torah and TaNaKh) and will be the Word (New Yerushalem) till the end to listen to and to adhere to for correction, direction and protection. The complete BIBLE is the Word spoken by YHVH and He gave the correct Way of life to follow. Every believer should keep His spoken Way and walk His Way like He has "Walked the Way". His Way should always be kept "inside" the heart and soul when the Word of YHVH is interpreted, because everyone spoke about Yahshua HaMashiach and His "Way". The Messianic Writings confirms it:

Therefore, since he (Prophet David) was a prophet and knew that God had sworn an oath to him that one of his descendants would sit on his throne, he was speaking in advance about the resurrection of the Messiah, that it was he who was not abandoned in Sh'ol (Hades / Hell) and whose flesh did not see decay. (CJB Acts 2:30-31)

But this is how God fulfilled what He had announced in advance, when He spoke through all the Prophets, namely, that His Messiah was to die. (CJB Acts 3:18)

Philip found Natan'el and told him, "We've found the one that Moshe wrote about in the Torah (Law), also the Prophets — it's Yeshua Ben-Yosef from Natzeret!" (CJB John 1:45)

Then, taking the Twelve, Yeshua said to them, "We are now going up to Yerushalayim, where everything written through the Prophets about the Son of Man will come true. (CJB Luke 18:31)

*According to his **usual practice**, Sha'ul went in; and on three Shabbats he gave them drashes from the Tanakh, explaining and proving that the Messiah had to suffer and rise again from the dead, and that "this Yeshua whom I am proclaiming to you is the Messiah." (Acts 17:2-3)*

The prophets, who prophesied about this gift of deliverance that was meant for you, pondered and inquired diligently about it. They were trying to find out the time and circumstances to which the Spirit of the Messiah in them was referring in predicting the Messiah's sufferings and the glorious things to follow. (CJB 1 Pet 1:10-11)

So they arranged a day with him and came to his quarters in large numbers. From morning until evening he explained the matter to them, giving a thorough witness about the Kingdom of God and making use of both the Torah of Moshe and the Prophets to persuade them about Yeshua. Some were convinced by what he said, while others refused to believe ... (CJB Acts 28:23-25a)

and they all drank the same drink from the Spirit — for they drank from a Spirit-sent Rock which followed them (in the dessert), and that Rock was the Messiah.
(CJB 1 Cor 10:4)

The Words in the BIBLE are the literal Words given to *man* and the Creator creates everything, even the Words of *man* that He wants to be known to all mankind. Proper Hermeneutics will assist every reader to take Scripture to interpret from Scripture, thus Scripture has to be used to interpret Scripture (Sola-Scriptura) and therefore the total context of the whole BIBLE must be taken into account.

3.11 THE JEWISHNESS OF THE MESSIAH

Judaism is one of the most ancient practised believes in the world. Judaism derives from Jewish believes, which comes from the Tribe of Y'hudah (Judah is one of the sons of Ya'aqov / Jacob, his name was later changed by GOD to Yisra'El / Israel). The Messiah is also from the Tribe of Judah / Y'hudah and He is Hebrew, which obviously makes His main language Hebrew. With the **facts** that He is Jewish and Hebrew, and Scripture indicates that He is the complete Word and He was the Master Rabbi, says Scripture that He will return the way He ascended²²². Everything indicates to Judaism together with the facts that the Messiah was circumcised eight (8) days after His birth, His parents and ancestors were Jewish and He attended the Synagogues on the Sabbath. With this in mind we have to *interpret* that the Messiah practiced Judaism similar to what the Sect of the Nazarenes believed. Sha'ul (Paul) was also Jewish and spoke Hebrew from the same Sect²²³ and as well was he a rabbi, like the Messiah.

The following was written above the head of the Messiah on the Crucifixion Stake: "**Yahoshuah HaNazarei Vemelekh HaY'hudim**". What does the first letters of each word give us, "**YHVH**", the Name of our Father YHVH. Yahshua is YHVH nailed to the "Stake". How is it possible? It makes perfect sense, because He is Echad (One) with YHVH and

²²² Acts 1:11

²²³ KJV Acts 24:5 "We have found this man a pest. He is an agitator among all the Jews throughout the world and a **ringleader of the sect of the Natzratim**." Acts 24:14 "But this I do admit to you: I worship the God of our fathers in accordance with the Way (**which they call a sect**). I continue to believe everything that accords with the Torah and everything written in the Prophets." (CJB) Matt 2:23 "And he came and dwelt in a city called Nazareth: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophets, **He shall be called a Nazarene**."

there is only ONE GOD. Yahshua cannot be a GOD and YHVH also a GOD, because then there are two (2)²²⁴ GODS and then the BIBLE is a lie!

What does the pictures and word of each aleph-beit (alphabet) letter mean? The letter *Yod* means "*hand or open hand*", *Hey* means "*grace or breath*" and *Vav* means "*nail*", thus the Open Hand of Grace Nailed in Grace, from the breath (spoken by) YHVH (GOD). Did GOD not say that He will be nailed to the "Stake", and He has an open hand to all His children who "comes to" Him and by grace we will be saved if grace is found in His eyes. Did Noah, Abraham and Isaac and Israel (Jacob) not seek grace in His eyes?

We cannot disregard the "*Jewishness*" or the Hebrew language of HaMashiach, because it is the ***ethnicity and language*** of the Messiah and He is "Lord". We need to know the Jewish Hebrew thinking to understand and interpret the Word correct, because He is the same yesterday and tomorrow, from the beginning till the end. Therefore we have to know meanings, words and history from the Jewish Encyclopaedia, and there will also be cited from the Virtual Jewish Library.

Most of the referencing and citing will be done from the Complete Jewish Bible and it will be cited when other Bibles are used. The "New Testament" canonicals were written in Greek (vehicular language), which was not Jewish, but it did not change the *ethnicity and language and style* (Rabbi) of the Messiah at all, it was just a translation.

The reason for using Hebrew words and names is because all the Prophets and Writings of the TaNaKh / Old Testament were from Hebrew Authors and their main language were Hebrew, and like Scripture says, your name will be as it says.²²⁵

Example:

1 Sam 25:25 "*Let not my lord, I pray thee, regard this man of Belial, even Nabal: for as his name is, so is he; Nabal is his name, and folly is with him:...*" (KJV)

²²⁴ **SERVING TWO ADONIM:** No one can serve two adonim: for either he hates the one and loves the other; or else he upholds the one and disesteems the other: you cannot serve Elohim and mammon. (ECB Matt 6:24)

²²⁵ Ex 28:21; 33:12, 17; Num 27:4; 1 Sam 24:21 (22);

2 Sam 7:23 *"And what one nation in the earth is like thy people, even like Israel, whom God went to redeem for a people to himself, **and to make him a name**, and to do for you great things and terrible, for thy land, before thy people, which thou redeemedst to thee from Egypt, from the nations and their gods?"* (KJV)

Example: The pillar of Absalom's name is still today Absalom, just like in Scripture 2 Sam 18:18 said. If the Messiah was called and Named by His parents Yahshua (YHVH is Salvation and Y'shua for short), and a pillar was to be set at His grave, will it be Yahshua (His correct pronounced and written Name) or will it be "Jesus" (where the "J" only existed 400+ years ago), or the Latin Iesus or the Greek Iesous on His grave?

Example: Salomon / Sh'lomo derived from the word Shalom²²⁶, and that is exactly as his name is, according to Scripture:

1 Chron 22:9 *"Behold, a son shall be born to thee, who shall be a man of rest; and I will give him rest from all his enemies round about: **for his name shall be Solomon**, and I (GOD) will give **peace** (shalom) and quietness unto Israel in his days."* (KJV)

Example:

Eccl 7:1 *"A good name is better than oil of great price, and the day of death than the day of birth."* (KJV)

Luke 8:30 *"Yeshua asked him, "What is your name?" "**Legion**," he said, **because many demons had entered him.**"*²²⁷ (CJB)

John 10:3 *"This is the one the gate-keeper admits, and the sheep hear **His** voice. **He calls his own sheep, each one by name**, and leads them out."*

There is definitely meaning within a name given in Scripture, especially when it was given by GOD Himself directly.

²²⁶ Solomon, Behind the Name - <http://www.behindthename.com/name/solomon>; 01/10/2014.

²²⁷ Legion (Demon), Wikipedia - [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Legion_\(demon\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Legion_(demon)); 01/10/2014.



Yahshua was Hebrew, a Jew and He was the Master Rabbi. All forms part of the Jewishness of HaMashiach and this cannot be ignored or disregarded, because Scripture said so. Scripture did not mention He is Greek, English, German, Aramaic or Afrikaans, but Jewish who spoke Hebrew to His followers and taught His disciples in Hebrew²²⁸.

GOD would not have mentioned to humankind His language if it was not important. GOD would not have chosen all His Prophets as Hebrews if it was not important. GOD would not have chosen all the Apostles who could speak Hebrew if it was not of any importance.

*And when we were all fallen to the earth, I heard a voice speaking unto me, and saying in the **Hebrew tongue**, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks. And I said, Who art thou, Master? And he said, I am Yahshua whom thou persecutest. (WOY Acts 26:14-15)*

GOD knows all the languages on earth and He definitely knew what other new languages would exist during the present times, as Afrikaans, but He mentioned Hebrew and He said Greek was the heathen language at the time of HaMashiach. GOD even mentioned that the Greek language will be the *whore* and those following her are her *harlot daughters*. Hebrew was the vernacular language of the Roman Empire? Greek was the language of Antiochus Epiphanus and Constantine?

*He cried out in a strong voice, "She has fallen! She has fallen! **Bavel the Great! She has become a home for demons, a prison for every unclean spirit, a prison for every unclean, hated bird.** (CJB Rev 18:2)*

*And on her forehead was written a name of mystery: "**Babylon the great, mother of prostitutes and of earth's abominations.**" (ESV Rev 17:5)*

²²⁸ Hebrew Aleph-beit from right to left and not from left to right as in English:

א ב ג ד ה ו ז ח ט י כ (ך) ל מ (ם) נ (ן) ס ע פ (ף) צ (ץ) ק ר ש ת

Did GOD not know what will happen close to the end of times from the beginning? Did GOD Almighty the Creator of all not know who He spoke of when He gave these Words to Yochanan for the Revelation of His Prophecies?

GOD warns His creation to look out for demons, for unclean spirits that defile the soul and he warns us to know the unclean to not be imprisoned by such. GOD gave clear Instructions of what He declared as clean and holy and unclean and unholy in the beginning²²⁹. People must be aware of the **earth's abominations**.

GOD said you will be as your name says, and He literally did so with the Name of Yahshua, which means "*YHVH is Salvation*". *GOD is Salvation* was the Word and the Word was in the beginning and the Word was GOD²³⁰. Short for Yahshua is Y'shua or Yeshua and in Hebrew יֵשׁוּעַ; like His Hebrew Jewish parents would have named (called) Him.

"Therefore my people shall know my name. Therefore in that day they shall know that it is I who speak; here I am." (ESV Isa 52:6)

"Behold, a virgin has in womb and births a son; and they call his name Immanu El, which translates, Elohim with us." (ECB Matt 1:23)

And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, Yahweh is my Elohim. (WOY Zech 13:9)

"and knows her not until she births her firstbirthed son: and he calls his name Yah Shua." (ECB Matt 1:25)

The Name "Jesus" is the Latin form of the Greek word "Iesous" from the Hebrew Yeshua²³¹. The letter "J" only existed during the 15th and 16th century from the letter "i"²³².

²²⁹ Lev 11

²³⁰ John 1:1

²³¹ Maas, Anthony. "Origin of the Name of Jesus Christ." The Catholic Encyclopedia. Vol. 8. New York: Robert Appleton Company, 1910. 22/07/2014.

²³² J, Online Etymology Dictionary - <http://www.etymonline.com/?l=j>; 22/07/2014. J, Wikipedia -

"And^{G2532} that every^{G3956} tongue^{G1100} should confess^{G1843} that^{G3754} Jesus^{G2424} Christ^{G5547} is Lord,^{G2962} to^{G1519} the glory^{G1391} of God^{G2316} the Father." (KJV Strong's Php 2:11)

G2424 – Ἰησοῦς – Iēsous:

Of Hebrew origin [H3091]; Jesus (that is, Jehoshua), the name of our Lord and two (three) other Israelites: - Jesus.

H3091 – יהושע יהושע: yehôshûa' yehôshûa':

From H3068 and H3467; **Jehovah-saved**; Jehoshua (that is, Joshua), the Jewish leader: - Jehoshua, Jehoshuah, Joshua. Compare H1954, H3442.

G5547 – Χριστός – (Christos) – khris-tos':

From G5548; anointed, that is, **the Messiah**, an epithet of Jesus: - Christ.

What is important is the fact that Jesus (Iesous) in Greek and Latin came from the Hebrew word Yeshua or Yahshua or Yehoshua from Joshua.

What language other than Hebrew could GOD refer to as pure?

For then will I turn to the people a pure language, that they may all call upon the name of the LORD, to serve him with one consent. (KJV Zeph 3:9)

To a Rabbi the Torah (Law) is the exclusive study of the Word, as it is the ultimate source of religious knowledge, which is also the perfect embodiment of the will of GOD. This is evidently a fact in the Writings and Books of the Prophets in the TaNaKh. The Torah was ultimately Divinely-given to mankind and therefore mankind has only One Lawgiver²³³ to save and to judge. Torah was not given by man and it is not a culture set of rules, but GOD-given Torah to all the nations of the earth, to Jew and Gentile, for guidance, direction and protection to live by in the land a person decided to make a living. Torah is the

<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/J>; 22/07/2014. The letter J ... How old is it? Followers of Yah
<http://theletterj.followersofyah.com/>; 22/07/2014.

²³³ Isa 33:22; Jas 4:12

Character of the Creator, His "Love Letter" to mankind to understand the completeness of the Torah.²³⁴

Yah is Salvation (Yahshua) was raised and taught according to the Judaizers, and He lived His life also according to it as a Jew (House of Yahudah) as a descendent of Yishai (Jesse) and the Prophet David. Yahshua was circumcised at 8 days from birth. He was taught the Torah and according the Prophets²³⁵ (TaNaKh) by the Scribes till the age of thirteen. Yahshua was baptised when He reached adulthood. Yahshua taught people in the Synagogues *as usual* on the Sabbath Days²³⁶ (Yom Shabbat) where they asked Him questions and He replied to them. Like the people still do in the Synagogues today on Yom Shabbat (the last day of the week).

The Messiah even said that salvation is from the Jews (Yahudim):

You people don't know what you are worshipping; we worship what we do know, because salvation comes from the Jews. (CJB John 4:22)

GOD even said that the aim of the Gentiles (lost sheep of the House of Israel) is to provoke the Jews to jealousy:

I say then, Have they stumbled that they should fall? May that never be so: but rather through their fall salvation is come unto the Gentiles, for to provoke them to jealousy. (WOY Rom11:11)

GOD also said that in the last days people of all the nations will go to the Jews and take grasp of their hem (tzitzit) or fringes of their garment to follow them, because they see GOD Elohim is with them. In fact He said ten (10) men, because the lost sheep of the House of Yisra'El are the Ten (10) Northern Tribes of Israel which were scattered across the whole earth.

"Thus saith the LORD of hosts: In those days it shall come to pass, that ten men shall take hold, out of all the languages of the nations, shall even take hold of the skirt of him that is a Jew, saying: We will go with you, for we have heard that God is with you." (JPS Zech 8:23)

²³⁴ Rom 13:9-10

²³⁵ Luke 4:17

²³⁶ Luk 4:31; 6:6; 13:10; Acts 13:27, 42, 44; 15:21; 18:4.

3.12 ANTI-SEMITISM

The Books of Maccabees (which is part of the Roman-Catholic Bible) are part of the Apocrypha and it is very useful reading. Maccabees are about the Jewish revolt by the Romans long before the Messiah on earth, which is prominent of Anti-Semitism towards the Jewish people. Messiah was born and the Romans did not even know the Messiah and did not even know who the Messiah was.

There were fights and struggle between the Jewish Messiah believers and the Jewish non-Messiah believers, which caused the demand of the crucifixion of the Messiah to the people [Roman Empire] not knowing the Messiah (which is part of the BIBLE Prophecy prophesied by the Prophets of YHVH and had to happen as it is part of YHVH's salvation plan). The **demand was approved** by the Greek-Roman Empire who did not even know anything about the Messiah.

The Greek-Roman Empire did not even know how to name these *followers of HaMashiach*, who were called the *Sect of the Nazarene*²³⁷, because the prophecy of the Prophets said of Yahshua HaMshiach that a *Netser* will be the Messiah.

*"But a branch will emerge from the trunk of Yishai (Jesse); a **Shoot** will grow from his roots. The Spirit of Adonai will rest on him, the Spirit of wisdom and understanding, the Spirit of counsel and power, the Spirit of knowledge and fearing Adonai" (CJB Isa 11:1-2)*

Shoot according to Strong's:

H5342: נֶצֶר *ne tser*:

*From H5341 in the sense of greenness as a striking color; a shoot; **figuratively, a descendant**: - branch.*

*"The days are coming," says Adonai when I will raise a righteous **Branch for David**. He will reign as king and succeed, He will do what is just and right in the*

²³⁷ Religion: Christianity, Jewish Virtual Library -

http://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/jsource/judaica/ejud_0002_0004_0_04287.html; 14/08/2014.

land. In His days Y'hudah will be saved, Isra'el will live in safety, and the name given to him will be Adonai Tzidkenu [Adonai our righteousness]. "Therefore," says Adonai, "the day will come when people no longer swear, 'As Adonai lives, who brought the people of Isra'el out of the land of Egypt,' but, 'As Adonai lives, who brought the descendants of the house of Isra'el up from the land to the north' and from all the countries where I (Adonai GOD) drove them. Then they will live in their own land." (Isa 23:5-8)

"and settled in a town called Natzeret, so that what had been spoken by the prophets might be fulfilled, that he will be called a Natzrati." (CJB Matt 2:23)

Yahshua (YHVH is Savation) said to believe in Him, every single person has to live according to His Way, how He lived His life, according to His Word:

*"I am the vine and you are the **branches** (Netzarim). Those who stay united with me, and I with them, are the ones who bear much fruit; because apart from me you can't do a thing." (CJB John 15:5)*

The followers of the Messiah are the branches, Netzarim, where He is the Root of these branches. The *wild olive branch* (Yisra'El) will be crafted into the *cultivated olive branch* (Y'hudah) to become one again according to Prophecy²³⁸, thus the nations will have to come *together again*. If this is the case, why does Anti-Semitism exist against the Jews?

Yahshua must be recognized as the *real Messiah* by all nations, by recognizing His true identity and therefore must every Follower of the Messiah understand his / her identity in HaMashiach. This will assist in preventing Anti-Semitism.

After the Ascension of HaMashiach during the 2nd century Anti-Semitism grew more again. During the 3rd century Constantine spread Anti-Semitism rapidly by persecution of the Jews and they were prohibited to practice Judaism. During this time lots of Jews were therefore forced to change to Christianity to escape persecution. Many kept on practicing their Judaism religion in privacy, but if they were caught or someone saw them, the consequences were persecution. Early Jewish and non-Jewish followers of the Messiah practised Judaism; therefore, do people refer to *early Christianity*.

²³⁸ Rom 11

There are today more than 41,000 Christendom denominations world-wide with different doctrines and salvation doctrines, and a (one of the reasons) reason is Anti-Semitism against the Jews and not acknowledging the Jewishness of the Messiah.

Constantine hated the Jews and he persecuted them. Martin Luther also hated the Jews and accused them of murdering the Messiah. John Calvyn carried on with "this believe system", Reformed Protestantism from Protestantism without recognizing the Jewishness of the Messiah. Therefore, Anti-Semitism stayed within the *churches*. Anti-Semitism was unfortunately indirectly carried over to the *church-goers* from the original leaders of the *churches*. Lack of education in Biblical interpretation is the reason the identity of the Messiah is not known.²³⁹

There are leaders currently supporting Anti-Semitism world-wide despite the Gaza-Israel war, which is terrific news to see and to hear. The Word gives instruction to pray for the peace of Yerushalayim and not for Anti-Semitism:

"Pray for shalom in Yerushalayim; may those who love you prosper. May shalom be within your ramparts, prosperity in your palaces. For the sake of my family and friends, I say, "Shalom be within you!" For the sake of the house of Adonai our God, I will seek your well-being." (CJB Ps 122:6-9)

Here follow the comments from leaders across the world against Anti-Semitism:

German president, Joachim Gauck: "I want to call on all people to raise their voices when there is new anti-Semitism in the streets."

Chancellor Angela Merkel: "These outbursts and utterances are an attack on freedom and tolerance. We cannot and will not tolerate this."

Turkey's ambassador, Huseyin A. Karslioglu: "Solidarity with the suffering Palestinian population must not turn into anti-Semitism." (Forward)²⁴⁰

²³⁹ See Foundational Teachings of Your Identity from Prof W. Liebenberg – www.hrti.co.za.

²⁴⁰ E-mail Neswletter: news@biblesforIsrael.com; Israel News Hendrik - Blood Moon Update and Temple Institute launches campaign for the Third Temple; 14/08/2014.

The Temple Mount in Yerushalayim in the Old City is the place where the First Temple stood and the Second Temple, and this is the exact place where the Third Temple will be build. The building of the Third Temple will surely be build and no one will stop the Creator giving instructions to build *His House of Prayer for all* and not only for the Jewish people (House of Y'hudah). His Word is truth and He gave the prophecy within His Word and the researcher believes He will keep His Word:

*"And the foreigners who join themselves to Adonai to serve him, to love the name of Adonai, and to be his workers, all who keep Shabbat and do not profane it, and hold fast to my covenant, I will bring them to my holy mountain and make them joyful in my house of prayer; their burnt offerings and sacrifices will be accepted on my altar; **for my house will be called a house of prayer for all peoples.**"* (CJB Isa 56:6-7)

GOD is the GOD of Yisra'El and He speaks throughout the complete BIBLE about His people and His nations. Every person has to decide if he / she is part of this great nation or folk and **reread** the BIBLE to see what is expected from the *complete House of Yisra'el* (Jew and non-Jew).

The descendants of Yisra'El (Ya'acov) are the ones that are blessed and are the ones that must keep the *Covenant* of GOD to enter the *Promised Land* (Kingdom of YHVH), and these exact descendants have been dispersed (GelatYah – Galatians) throughout the world. They have to return to the *Covenant* that departed from it ages and ages ago.

The Messiah said in His Writings that He **only** came for the *lost sheep of the House of Yisra'El* and He also commanded His Apostles to only go to the lost sheep of the House of Yisra'el, and not others.²⁴¹

Isaiah was a Prophet of YHVH and he wrote Prophecies regarding the Second Coming of YHVH as the Messiah; and what is expected from each and every individual. Just like all 65 Prophecies of the First Coming of the Messiah became truth on the day and on the hour, does the researcher believe the Prophecies (259) regarding the Second Coming of the Messiah will also become truth on the day and on the hour. The Word of YHVH is in

²⁴¹ Matt 15:24; Matt 10:6

fact Truth. His Word was given to mankind to know the Prophecies and how to live a perfect and righteous life on earth.

Everyone, and note everyone will recognize Yahshua as the Messiah when He *returns* to His inheritance to gather His people Yisra'El, and Isaiah prophecied that Yisra'El has to worship the GOD of Yisra'El. People should not obey the things of the gods of Babylon (Babel). Every person has to decide for themselves if he / she is or wants to be part of this Yisra'El. If so, then speak against Anti-Semitism in this unrighteous world. The Creator will definitely *also* come to **save** the Jewish people, which is the House of Yahudah. All the nations should live a righteous life and if their lives are unrighteous, they should *return* to righteousness:

*"Listen to me, **house of Ya`akov**, all who remain of the house of Isra'el: I have borne you from birth, carried you since the womb. Till your old age I will be the same — **I will carry you until your hair is white**. I have made you, and I will bear you; yes, **I will carry and save you**. To whom will you liken me and equate me? With whom will you compare me, as if we were similar?"* (CJB Isa 46:3-5)

*"Remember things that happened at the beginning, long ago — that I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like me. **At the beginning I announce the end, proclaim in advance things not yet done; and I say that my plan will hold**, I will do everything I please to do. I call a bird of prey from the east, the man I intended, from a distant country. I have spoken and will bring it about; I have made a plan, **and I will fulfill it**. Listen to me, you stubborn people, so far from righteousness: I am bringing my justice nearer, it is not far away; my salvation will not be delayed, **I will place my salvation in Tziyon for Isra'el my glory**." (CJB Isa 46:9-13)*

YHVH said that His plan will declare what He announced from the beginning, what not yet happened (things that are not yet done), and He will fulfill His plan. **Yisra'el is His glory** and He **will place His salvation in Zion**.

Why is Anti-Semitism then so high within all the nations around the world when people *claim the fain* of reading the BIBLE, which is the literal Word of GOD the Creator to *man*

for salvation, for the direction in life, for the guidance to His Kingdom and for the protection against evil / unrighteousness?

Anti-Semitism is not fulfilling the Torah, because Anti-Semitism is hatred and the Word of YHVH says clearly that the **fulfillment must be love**. The knowledge and wisdom of this fulfillment of love comes from the Torah:

Love does not do harm to a neighbour; therefore love is the fullness of Torah. (CJB Rom 13:10)

Torahlessness is unrighteousness and will lead to sin and hatred. People need to love their Jewish brothers and pray to the Creator for their salvation, because it is GOD's plan alone that the Jewish-non-Messiah-believer recognizes Him as the Messiah at the very end.

While on this topic, one of the reasons is the following:

"Adonai-Tzva'ot says, 'When that time comes, ten men will take hold — speaking all the languages of the nations — will grab hold of the cloak (tzitzit) of a Jew and say, 'We want to go with you, because we have heard that God is with you.'" (CJB Zech 8:23)

GOD gave His blessing to the whole House of Y'hudah and He embraces the fact that Y'hudah loves the truth and peace, because He commanded it.

Anti-Semitism is surely an abomination to YHVH the Creator, because He will return as the **Lion of Zion** of the **Tribe of Y'hudah**; from the **Sprout of the Jewish Prophet David**:

"One of the elders said to me, 'Don't cry. Look, the Lion of the tribe of Y'hudah, the Root of David,'" (CJB Rev 5:5a)

What is more scary is the fact the BIBLE stated many times the nativity of *Yah is Salvation* as Jewish, but still does Anti-Semitism exist in *Christianity* and still does most of the churches disagree. They do not want to recognize the literal Word of YHVH explaining the Jewishness of the Messiah.

You people don't know what you are worshipping; we worship what we do know, because salvation comes from the Jews. (CJB John 4:22)

Is the *Christendom* blinded? what does a person think when these verses are read?
Anti-Semitism must be stopped!

Every believer in the Word of the Creator, who reads the BIBLE, must take **all Scripture** for education and knowledge²⁴² as well as for receiving the Word to acknowledge blessings:

"Rejoice with Yerushalayim! Be glad with her, all you who love her! Rejoice, rejoice with her, all of you who mourned for her; so that you nurse and are satisfied by her comforting breast, drinking deeply and delighting in the overflow of her glory. For Adonai says, "I will spread shalom over her like a river, and the wealth of nations like a flooding stream; you will nurse and be carried in her arm and cuddled in her lap. Like someone comforted by his mother, I will comfort you; in Yerushalayim you will be comforted." Your heart will rejoice at the sight, your bodies will flourish like newly sprouted grass. It will be known that the hand of Adonai is with his servants; but with his enemies, his fury." (CJB Isa 66:10-14)

Anti-Semitism prevents people to fulfill the love the Word gives, to receive the blessings of YHVH the Creator. This comes from the literal Word of the Creator direct to the Prophet Isaiah, who gives the Prophecy to the world to those who rejoice and mourns with the City of Yerushalayim!

A person who pick and choose which Words of YHVH the Creator is literal to adhere to and therefore decides to take His Words as *spiritual and not literal*, how can you neglect the above literal Words of GOD? If GOD did not want the City of Yerushalayim (Jerusalem) to be in the *literal sense of the Word*, He would not have mentioned His *City of inheritance* in His Word to the Prophet Isaiah.

Anti-Semitism against the Jews causes war against the Jews. The Jews *returned* to live in the City of Yerushalayim and the Country (Mainland) Israel, who try to protect it from

²⁴² 2 Tim 3:15-16

bombings and destruction by the enemies. They are the ones prayers should go out to, like the Word says and not words of destruction of the Jewish people around the world.

Jewish people are from over the whole world under attack in almost every country also because of the Gaza-Israel war (2014) and the Jewish people has been given the blame; and it is because of Anti-Semitism. It can also be described to the lack-of-knowledge of the interpretation of the Word of GOD or it can be because of *ignorant sin*; **because the result of Anti-Semitsm is hatred towards the Jews.**

If a person still has the smallest feeling of Anti-Semitism within the heart or still *dislike* the Jews for whatever reason, return to the *Manual of GOD* to see what GOD has to say about the Jewish people. Here follows proof from R.A. Torrey's New Topical Textbook Dictionary:

- ✧ The Jews are descendants from Abraham²⁴³
- ✧ They are called Hebrews²⁴⁴
- ✧ They are called Israelites²⁴⁵
- ✧ They are children of Ya'acov²⁴⁶
- ✧ They are children of Yisra'El²⁴⁷
- ✧ They are chosen and loved by GOD²⁴⁸
- ✧ They are separated from all other nations²⁴⁹
- ✧ They are described as a peculiar treasure²⁵⁰
- ✧ They are a Holy nation²⁵¹
- ✧ They are Adonai's portion²⁵²
- ✧ They are the only people who had knowledge of GOD²⁵³
- ✧ They are the only people who worshipped GOD²⁵⁴
- ✧ They have national previledges²⁵⁵

²⁴³ Isa 51:2; Joh 8:39

²⁴⁴ Gen 14:13; Gen 40:15; 2 Cor 11:22;

²⁴⁵ Exo 9:7; Jos 3:17;

²⁴⁶ Jer 33:26; 1 Chr 16:13;

²⁴⁷ Gen 50:25; Isa 27:12;

²⁴⁸ Deut 7:6; Deut 7:7;

²⁴⁹ Exo 33:16; Lev 20:24; 1 King 8:53;

²⁵⁰ Deut 14:2;

²⁵¹ Exo 19:6;

²⁵² Deut 32:9

²⁵³ Psa 76:1; 1 Th 4:5; Psa 48:3; Rom 1:28;

²⁵⁴ Exo 5:17; Psa 96:5; Psa 115:3-4; John 4:22;

²⁵⁵ Rom 3:2; Rom 9:4-5;

- ✧ They have national character of pride of decent²⁵⁶
- ✧ They have national character of fondness of their brethren²⁵⁷
- ✧ They have national character of attachment to Moshe²⁵⁸
- ✧ They have national character of attachment to customs of the Torah²⁵⁹
- ✧ They have a Spiritual seed of true believers always amongst them²⁶⁰
- ✧ They are obliged to unite against enemies²⁶¹
- ✧ They are strengthened by GOD in war²⁶²
- ✧ They are under GOD's special protection²⁶³
- ✧ The Gentiles to make one with the Jews under the *gospel*, crafted into²⁶⁴
- ✧ All othe nations envied the Jews²⁶⁵
- ✧ All other nations hated the Jews²⁶⁶
- ✧ Yahshua is promised to the Jews²⁶⁷
- ✧ Yahshua is expected by the Jews²⁶⁸
- ✧ Yahshua sprang from the Jews²⁶⁹
- ✧ **The Jews shall finally be saved**²⁷⁰
- ✧ They are people of GOD²⁷¹
- ✧ They are objects of GOD's love²⁷²
- ✧ They are objects of GOD's choice²⁷³
- ✧ They are objects of GOD's protection²⁷⁴
- ✧ There are privileges to the Jews²⁷⁵
- ✧ They will be despised by the nations²⁷⁶
- ✧ They were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon²⁷⁷

²⁵⁶ Jer 13:9; John 8:33; John 8:41;

²⁵⁷ Exo 2:11-12; Rom 9:1-3;

²⁵⁸ John 9:28-29; Acts 6:11;

²⁵⁹ Acts 6:14; Acts 21:21; Acts 22:3;

²⁶⁰ 1 King 19:18; Isa 6:13; Rom 9:6-7; Rom 11:1; Rom 11:5;

²⁶¹ Num 32:20-22; Jdg 19:29; Jdg 20:1-48; 1 Sam 11:7-8;

²⁶² Lev 26:7; Lev 26:8; Jos 5:13-14; Jos 8:1-2;

²⁶³ Deut 32:10; Deut 32:11; Deut 33:27-29; Psa 105:13-15; Psa 121:3-5;

²⁶⁴ Acts 10:15; Acts 10:28; Acts 15:8-9; Gal 3:28; Eph 2:14-16;

²⁶⁵ Neh 4:1; Isa 26:11; Eze 35:11;

²⁶⁶ Psa 44:10; Eze 35:5;

²⁶⁷ Gen 49:10; Dan 9:25;

²⁶⁸ Psa 14:7; Mat 11:3; Luk 2:25; Luk 2:38; Joh 8:56;

²⁶⁹ Rom 9:5; Heb 7:14;

²⁷⁰ Rom 11:26-27;

²⁷¹ Deut 32:9; 2 Sam 7:24; Isa 51:16;

²⁷² Deut 7:8; Deut 23:5; Jer 31:3;

²⁷³ Deut 7:6;

²⁷⁴ Psa 105:15; Zec 2:8;

²⁷⁵ Psa 76:1-2; Rom 3:1-2; Rom 9:4-5;

²⁷⁶ Ezek 36:3;

²⁷⁷ 1 King 11:31-32; 1 King 12:19-20;

✧ They have national greatness²⁷⁸

There are explicit denunciations against those who:

✧ Cursed the Jews²⁷⁹

✧ Oppressed the Jews²⁸⁰

✧ Hated the Jews²⁸¹

✧ Aggravated the afflictions of the Jews²⁸²

✧ Slaughtered the Jews²⁸³

The Jews have promises:

✧ The pouring out of the Spirit upon them²⁸⁴

✧ **The removal of their blindness**²⁸⁵

✧ Their return and seeking to GOD²⁸⁶

✧ The pardon of their sin²⁸⁷

✧ Their salvation²⁸⁸

✧ Their sanctification²⁸⁹

✧ Gentiles assisting in their restoration²⁹⁰

✧ Subjection of Gentiles to them²⁹¹

✧ **Future glory**²⁹²

✧ **Future prosperity**²⁹³

✧ **The Messiah shall appear amongst them**²⁹⁴

✧ The Messiah shall dwell amongst them and reign over them as well²⁹⁵²⁹⁶

²⁷⁸ Gen 12:2; Deut 33:29;

²⁷⁹ Gen 27:29; Num 24:9;

²⁸⁰ Isa 49:26; Isa 51:21-23;

²⁸¹ Psa 129:5; Eze 35:5-6;

²⁸² Zec 1:14-15;

²⁸³ Psa 79:1-7; Eze 35:5-6;

²⁸⁴ Eze 39:29; Zec 12:10;

²⁸⁵ Rom 11:25; 2 Cor 3:14-16;

²⁸⁶ Hos 3:5;

²⁸⁷ Isa 44:22; Rom 11:27;

²⁸⁸ Isa 59:20; Rom 11:26;

²⁸⁹ Jer 33:8; Eze 36:25; Zec 12:1; Zec 12:9;

²⁹⁰ Isa 49:22; Isa 49:23; Isa 60:10; Isa 60:14; Isa 61:4-6;

²⁹¹ Isa 60:11-12; Isa 60:14;

²⁹² Isa 60:19; Isa 62:3-4; Zep 3:19-20; Zec 2:5;

²⁹³ Isa 60:6-7, 9; Isa 60:17; Isa 61:4-6; Hos 14:5-6;

²⁹⁴ Isa 59:20; Zec 14:4;

²⁹⁵ Eze 43:7-9; Zec 2:11;

The conversion of the Jews is illustrated in Ezek 37:1-14 and Rom 11:24. No nation is allowed to condemn the *Jews*, for persecuting the *Jews*, to speak against them, and to utter judgement against them for not believing in the first Coming of the Messiah.

Rather pray importunately for them as Scripture insists to receive blessings from GOD:
Psa 122:6; Isa 62:1-7; Jer 31:7 and Rom 10:1.

3.13 CHRISTENDOM AND CHRISTIANITY – CHRISTIAN THEOLOGY

The "Christianity" religion is the biggest and widest spread within the world with over two (2) billion members, where Islamic is the fastest growing religion currently (1.5 billion). With this in mind focus will be on correct interpretation of the Word to ensure interpretation comes from *within* the Word of GOD only; and not from other media and literature to prove interpretation from the Word of GOD.

Any literature, material or information can be used to assist Scripture knowledge and to assist teaching of Scripture (like Apocrypha), but interpretation of Scripture has to be *motivated* and used to *prove* Scripture, because *man's word* cannot be above GOD's Word and *not one word* is allowed to be added or taken away from His Word. The Word of GOD is not allowed to be changed or altered (which is interpretation by man's own thinking and not acknowledged GOD's Word), which is perversion of His Word.

Understanding and conception from different believers will be mentioned and proof has to come from Scripture to see if there is truth within their thinking and if there is a misunderstanding or misconception within the education of the believers.

The emphasis will always be GOD's Word, because Scriptures / BIBLE are the *only* Way of communication to mankind from YHVH the Creator.

²⁹⁶ Eze 34:23-24; Eze 37:24-25;

3.13.1 CHRISTIAN AND CHURCH HISTORY

The history in / of "Christianity" and "church" is very important to understand the Christendom Theology, for proper understanding and true research of the where, why, who, what and how (the Exegesis) of the *religion*.²⁹⁷

"Christianity" became the *blockage* of the current *so-called* Christian, because of ignorance and *boasting* of "their *religion*". GOD says that boasting²⁹⁸ is an abomination to Him and ignorance²⁹⁹ is a reason preventing people to *keep on* searching for the truth and for adhering to His Word and Commands (Instructions).

The name "Christianity" (or Christian) was only mentioned three (3) times in the whole BIBLE, and it was not mentioned to *start* a religion or *new believe*³⁰⁰ for humankind. It was *simply* mentioned because it derives from the word Messiah / Messia[h]nic from the Hebrew word Mashiach. Nowhere in the BIBLE was it mentioned that a person should be *called a Christian* if he / she *believes* in Yahshua the Messiah:

- ✧ Yahshua is a Judaizer just like the nativity of the Messiah, a Jewish Hebrew.
- ✧ The letter "J" only started to exist during 1600 C.E. (A.D.) from the letter "I": *Iesous*.
- ✧ The word *Christian*³⁰¹ in English was translated from *Khristos*³⁰² in Greek, where it was translated from the *original* word *Mashiach*³⁰³ (Messiah).
- ✧ Never did any Messiah follower (Apostle / Emissary or disciple) call himself a *Christian* when he preached about Yahshua or when the explanation were given of the, "*believe in the Messiah*". Greek Romans mentioned the name.³⁰⁴
- ✧ Christianity started to be practised by *Roman-Catholic Christianity*, which originated from the early *Roman Empire* and was **legalized** by pope Constantine 1.
- ✧ Those ones who followed Yahshua and believed in Him during the first century C.E. (A.D.) were being referred to or being called "Followers of the Way" or "the Sect of

²⁹⁷ More detailed research can also be found in the booklet: "GOD se Woord of Babilon die Hoer". The research is in English, but the book is in Afrikaans.

²⁹⁸ Eph 2:9

²⁹⁹ Because people do not adhere to 2 Tim 3:16-17 and 2 Pet 1:19-21

³⁰⁰ Acts 26:28-29: Sha'ul never called himself a Christian, but he wishes people *might become like he is*. Agrippa, a Greek Roman called him a *khristos* (named after a person worshipping the Greek gods), but Sha'ul was a *Mashiach Follower*.

³⁰¹ Religion: Christinity - <https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/jsource/History/christianity.html>; 23/06/2014.

³⁰² Christ (n.) – Online Etymology Dictionary <http://www.etymonline.com/index.php?term=christ>; 23/06/2014.

³⁰³ The Jewish Messiah, Dr. Leila Bronner - <http://www.bibleandjewishstudies.net/articles/jewishmessiah.htm>

³⁰⁴ Acts 11:26; 1 Pet 4:16

the Way of the Nazarene", who was in fact the *Way of GOD* that was in reality the *Way of the Messiah*; Followers of Mashiach.³⁰⁵

- ✧ Sha'ul who persecuted the *followers of this Way* was converted by Yahshua Himself to this very same faith of this *Way*. Sha'ul preached this *faith in the Messiah* to the [Romans (Greeks) and non-believer Jews in the Messiah]. These Jewish people who started to believe in the Messiah were called *Jewish Messiah (Mashiach) Followers* (Sha'ul was part of this *Way*), named after *Mashiach Followers*. The Romans called them *Khristos Followers*, which was in matter of fact translated to *Christians*, who should have been called *Messianic Followers* deriving from Mashiach in Hebrew. *Christian* was mostly accepted from the word *Khristos* because Greek was more widely spoken (the common language) and the BIBLE was officially translated first in Greek. Greek was the *vehicular language* and Hebrew the *vernacular language*.

Jew and Greek believers in the Messiah went to praise GOD together in Synagogues during the first and second centuries until persecution under the *Messianic Followers* started to become severe and the *believers in Messiah* being persecuted. They were acknowledged by their appearance and clothes and Anti-Semitism became stronger from the Romans towards the Jews, which started already centuries before the Messiah came to ha'eretz (the earth).

The *Judaizers* would have been identified as this *Sect* by their obvious appearance. By appearance would mean by the way they looked, by their cloathes and through their prayers, because other believers could not be directly identified (as it is still today). Everyone else *looked* the same except the Jews **and** *Followers of this Way*. They wore a tallit (prayer shawl) and phalacteries (tefillin), they wore a *head covering* and they wore tzitzits³⁰⁶ (fringes) on the four corners of their garments. Still today are they identified by the above *practices* and fortunately or unfortunately for some does it originate from the Commandments of GOD; the Torah of GOD.

Alister McGrath, former Professor of Historical Theology at Oxford University, claims that the 1st century "Jewish Christians" were totally faithful religious

³⁰⁵ Acts 22:4, 8, 24:14

³⁰⁶ Num 15:37-41

Jews. They differed from other contemporary Jews **only** in their acceptance of Jesus as the Messiah.³⁰⁷

Christianity was *legalized* during the third century by the Roman Empire, who were Greek and who also started the *Roman-Catholic Christian churches*, the very first Christian church denomination. Many Jewish people converted to this belief because of their fear of persecution and some carried on with the *Way of Mashiach* in **secrecy**. When Anti-Semitism became a huge influence again, Anti-Semitism started to grow spontaneously and sporadically under *Christianity*.

Constantine³⁰⁸, with the title as a pope seen as the "*Vicar of Christ*", legalized the *Christianity* believe system and grew rapidly amongst the people. This was also a good reason for the Roman Empire to legalize Christianity, because collection of money from believers started to increase and lots of money *were made* this way. They even stated that this could have been a major way to collect money from people, because people will give money because of their religion. A council was formed by the early *church fathers* where Constantine 1 was also a part of, which was called the *Council of Nicaea*³⁰⁹ or the *Nicene Creed*.

This Council was formed and started to establish *man-made laws*. Unfortunately the *laws of the Council (laws and doctrines of man*³¹⁰*)* were contradicting to the Laws in the BIBLE (thus not Scriptural), Laws which were not acknowledged as Commands of Messiah. If it was from Scripture alone (*Sola-Scriptura*), it should be found in the direct literal Word of GOD. Constantine started a *Public Religion*³¹¹, a *religion* most of the public accepted and related to the *created religion* by man. The Roman Empire started *Christianity* as the religion for the public. The *Council of Nicaea*³¹² established the *Christianity doctrine* within the Council and enforced their *practices* with the fact that the Pope has GOD's authority on earth to change GOD's Law (GOD's Torah); by shifting this authority to the "*church*".³¹³

³⁰⁷ McGrath, Alister E., *Christianity: An Introduction*. Blackwell Publishing (2006). ISBN 1-4051-0899-1. Page 174: "In effect, they [Jewish Christians] seemed to regard Christianity as an affirmation of every aspect of contemporary Judaism, with the addition of one extra belief — that Jesus was the Messiah."

³⁰⁸ Constantine the Great, Wikipedia - http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Emperor_Constantine_I; 23/06/2014.

³⁰⁹ First Council of Nicaea, Wikipedia http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First_Council_of_Nicaea#cite_note-ReferenceC-4; 23/06/2014.

³¹⁰ Matt 15 and Mark 7

³¹¹ Benjamin Franklin, Wikiquote http://en.wikiquote.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin; 23/06/2014.

³¹² A History of the Councils of the Church from Original Sources. Edinburgh: T. and T. Clark, 1894, Theodoret – Good reading for knowledge regarding the History of the "Church".

³¹³ Which is by the way against the Command of GOD.

*To resolve such problems the bishops drew up a list of laws (named canons, from the Greek word for "rule" or "normative measure"). These 20 canons have never attracted as much attention as the doctrines of Nicaea but actually had immense importance, as they were the **reference point around which all future collections of church law were modeled and collated.***³¹⁴

*Protestantism Christianity denominations started with Marthin Luther*³¹⁵, a German monk and Catholic priest, but most of the *laws and doctrine* of the *Roman-Catholic Christianity* were adopted by them and still today seen within these denominations.

John Calvin³¹⁶ a theologian and pastor split from Protestantism and formed the *Calvinism Reformed Protestantism Christianity denominations* and this was mostly accepted in South Africa. These *Christian denominations of Calvinism* are called the *Nederduitse Gereformeerde* -, the *Dutch Reformed* - (*Herformd*) and the *Doppers' churches*. They are called the *three sisters churches* today, all still with most of the *adopted laws and doctrines* of the initially *Roman-Catholic Christianity*.

Today the Roman-Catholic pope wants to unite all Christianity under one umbrella, and this is only because of the *One World Order* structure that they want to create, which is part of the Prophecy of GOD of *Babylon and her harlot daughters*, which is also called the *New World Order*³¹⁷.

The history of *Christianity* should concern all "Christians" and *followers of Christianity* to understand and see how *Christianity* emerged³¹⁸ and why the *legalization* of the "religion" took place.

³¹⁴ The Road to Nicaea: The end? Not quite, Christianity Today Library -

<http://www.ctlibrary.com/ch/2005/issue85/theroadtonicaea.html>; 23/06/2014.

³¹⁵ Martin Luther, Wikipedia http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Martin_Luther; 23/06/2014

³¹⁶ John Calvin, Wikipedia http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Calvin; 23/06/2014.

³¹⁷ The Most Powerful Man in the World? "The Black Pope"? Warning Illuminati -

<http://warningilluminati.wordpress.com/the-most-powerful-man-in-the-world-the-black-pope/>; 26/03/2013

³¹⁸ History of Christianity, Wikipedia - http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_Christianity; 20/06/2014:

The history of Christianity concerns the Christian religion, its followers and the Church with its various denominations, from the first century to the present.

Christianity emerged in the Levant (now Palestine and Israel) in the mid-1st century CE. Christianity spread initially from Jerusalem throughout the Near East, into places such as Syria, Assyria, Mesopotamia, Phoenicia, Asia Minor, Jordan and Egypt. In the 4th century it was successively adopted as the state religion by Armenia in 301, Georgia in 319, the Aksumite Empire in 325, and the Roman Empire in 380.

Christianity became common to all of Europe in the Middle Ages and expanded throughout the world during Europe's Age of Exploration from the Renaissance onwards to become the world's largest religion. Today there are 2 billion Christians, one third of humanity. Christianity divided into the Roman Catholic Church and

Believers who were Messiah Followers were all from Jewish descent in the first century and were never called "Christians" by themselves, but *labelled* as the *Sect of the Nazarenes* together with *YHVH is Salvation the Messiah*.

The Greek-Roman Empire started the *Roman-Catholic Christianity* and from there Christianity emerged and was eventually *legalized* by them, under pope Constantine 1:

"Founder of Catholicism, the first Catholic pope, and a syncretizing compromiser. Christianity slowly developed at the Catechetical School of Alexandria, Egypt over several hundred years, beginning in about 190 C.E. The head and founder of this first school of Christianity was Pantaenus, and over time other men became the headmasters, such as Clement, Origen, Epiphanius, Tertullian, Augustine³¹⁹, and so on. These are called the "fathers" of the "church", and yet in their writings they describe a sect called THE NATSARIM, who are the first followers of Yahusha, the Mashiach (see Acts 24:5). These "fathers" called the Natsarim "heretics" because the Natsarim were teaching and obeying the Commandments of Yahuah (YHVH). From this School of Alexandria, "bishops" were spawned who promoted doctrinal control, and these "Nicolaitanes" propagated a hierarchical ruling class that controlled all teachings. The stage was set for a centralized, fascist corporate entity to arise. That opportunity appeared when a man with "universal" power seized control over religious beliefs. That man was Constantine I."³²⁰

Today (2014) there are over 41,000 *Christian* denominations world-wide with about two (2) billion members who follow the *basic doctrines* established through the *Council of Nicaea*, but differ in some *practices* of the established *doctrines*. They were all called to work together in unity and a *World Council of Churches* was founded in 1948.

These *doctrines and laws of man* that were established were because of differences with the interpretation of the Word and also because of individual different "believes" from the Word, which actually apposes the Torah (Law) of YHVH.

Eastern Orthodox Church in the Great Schism of 1054. The Protestant Reformation split the Roman Catholic Church into many different denominations.

³¹⁹ An African Churchfather. Original Documents – Augustine and Original Sin, Specialty Interests - <http://www.specialtyinterests.net/augustine.html>; 05/09/2014.

³²⁰ **Annexure 3: CONSTANTINE 1 - EMPEROR OF ROMAN EMPIRE, DESIGNER OF HYBRID RELIGION, MOVED EMPIRE'S CAPITAL TO "CONSTANTINOPLE".**

The Jews on the other hand believed that there can be only One GOD and that His Word is not permitted to be altered. Unfortunately some of them did not accept Yahshua the Messiah as the Word of GOD. This is one of the acknowledgements that GOD and the Word in Flesh is One (Echad), and therefore they applied (to the Roman Empire) for the crucifixion of Yahshua King of the Jews. On this demand the **Roman Emperor accepted** the crucifixion of King Messiah "*Yah is Salvation*" and crucified Him.

The BIBLE is studied from beginning to end and in no circumstance or text could the researcher find that when believing in *Yahshua as the Messiah*, or *Jesus as Christ*, that such a person must be called a *Christian* or that such a believe is referred to *Christianity*.

Not once did the Messiah say to believe in Him a person has to become a *Christian* or when a person believes in Him, such a person is called a "*Christian*". This is purely *reading into Scripture which was not said*, Eisegesis is the norm because of this Biblical mistake. Man-made doctrine is not allowed with man's personal interpretation of the Word, because all Prophecy of the BIBLE is from GOD and His Word only should interpret Scripture.³²¹

The question arises, why do so many people just accept these statements, which are truly non-Biblical? People who are not classified as a Christian, is in fact marked as a non-believer, which is also not Biblical at all, because the Word said only One can be the Lawgiver (Torahgiver).³²² Yahshua did not once even call Himself a Christian, and He said all mankind must be like He is and do what He did; walk in His *Footsteps*. Therefore, also did not one Apostle or disciple call themselves a Christian, but the Greeks did mention this word as *Khristos*. Christianity **originated** from the Greek language, where Scripture specifically stated that the Messiah is Hebrew and Jewish.

*"The early followers of Jesus referred to themselves as "brethren" (Acts 1:16), "disciples" (Acts 11:26), and "believers" (Acts 2:44), and the Jews at first called them "Nazarenes" (Acts 24:5)."*³²³

³²¹ 2 Pet 1:19-21

³²² James 4:12

³²³ Religion: Christianity, Jewish Virtual Library -

<https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/source/History/christianity.html>; 23/06/2014.

"The term 'Christian' was used to describe a follower of Christ in terms of the world, from the world's point of view. The pagans at Antioch, the seat of Gnosticism, called the apostles "Christians" first (Acts 11:26; 26:28) and used it derogatorily because the apostles didn't follow the commercial world of the pagans. "Christian" is an adjective, not a noun. The substance is not in the word "Christian", the substance is in the heart of the man it is attempting to describe, and which the pagan user cannot see."

"When Peter was referring to the title "Christian", it is in the context of suffering, and is in reference to the name as imposed upon them by their enemies, because our enemies want us to suffer."³²⁴

When a person calls him- or herself a *Christian*, because of believing in the Messiah and by adhering everything He taught and preached (follow *Messiah's Footsteps*), must it not be a problem to the "*Messianic*" community. The problem exist though that when a person follows exactly the same *Footsteps of Mashiach* and a person calls him or her self a *Messianic Judaizer*, Christians have a problem with it; because of the name "*Judaism*".

The disciples were called Christians by the Greek Romans who occupied Antioch in Greece and the name "*Christian*" had a very different meaning in those days of the Messiah. *Khristos* is the name given to their Greek gods and people are not aware of it to-date. Here can clearly be seen that Eisegesis is the norm and not proper Exegesis, because the *heathens* were the ones that called the Followers of Yahshua *Christians*³²⁵. Only centuries after this was *Christianity* legalized and reinforced as a new religion.

More valuable research is cited to show why the *Followers of Yahshua* were called *Christians*. With this it can be seen that it was not because they called themselves the name "*Christian*", but because it was given to them of following the Messiah (HaMashiach), because of *hostile critics*³²⁶.

³²⁴ Richard Anthony. Should we call ourselves a Christian, Ecclesia - <http://www.ecclesia.org/truth/christian.html>; 23/06/2014.

³²⁵ Acts 11:26, 26:28

³²⁶ Dr. Gerrie Bester in his Thesis "AN EXPOSITION OF THE TANACH'S TYPOLOGIES REVEALING YHVH'S ONLY AND PERFECT PLAN OF SALVATION IN THE BRIT CHADASHAH". 2013: "*Christian: A follower of the religion of Christ [Note carefully that Christ never started a religion - John 7:16]. It is probable that the name Christian, like that of Nazarenes and Galileans, was given to the disciples of our Lord in reproach or contempt. What confirms this opinion is, that the people of Antioch in Syria, Acts 11:26, where they were first called Christians observed by Zosimus, Procopius, and Zonaras, to have been remarkable for*

Laws and Instructions to follow by mankind has been given by GOD, through His Word, and His Law (Torah) is to be kept for **eternity**, unless it had been said otherwise to the Prophets in the TaNaKh. The Word in Flesh surely did not teach the Law (Torah) is done away with. The "early church fathers" of "Christianity" made their own laws (*man-made doctrine*) and instructions to man to follow when in *church*, which contradicts the Laws of GOD and which are not Biblical. Here follow some *basics of Christianity*.

3.13.2 BASICS OF CHRISTIANITY

The following can be seen as basics of *Christianity*, because it originated and it was enforced by *Roman-Catholic Christianity*, and adopted by most of the *Christian denominations*.

☆ CHRISTMAS

So much have already been said about this subject³²⁷, but the mere fact is, that it is not Biblical at all and it was not instructed by the Creator GOD or in His Word. Much can be argued as people want, but to be a believer in One Elohim GOD and believe what He said and walked; humankind **must** follow *His Footsteps* and be Holy as He is. Thus, do what

their **scurrilous jesting**. Some have indeed thought that this name was given by the disciples to themselves; others, that it was imposed on them by divine authority; in either of which cases we should have met with it in the subsequent history of the Acts, and in the Apostolic Epistles, all of which were written some years after; whereas it is found but in two more places in the New Testament, Acts 26:28, where a Jew is the speaker, and in 1 Peter 4:16, where reference appears to be made to the name as **imposed on them by their enemies**. The word used, Acts 11:26, signifies simply to be called or named, and when Doddridge and a few others take to imply a divine appointment, they disregard the *usus loquendi* [established acceptance of the term] which gives no support to that opinion. The words used by Tacitus, when speaking of the Christians persecuted by Nero, are remarkable, '*vulgus Christianos appellabat*,' '**the vulgar call them Christians.**' Epiphanius says, that they were called Jesseans, either from Jesse, the father of David, or, which is much more probable, from the name of Jesus, whose disciples they were. They were denominated Christians, A.D. 42 or 43; and though the name was **first given reproachfully**, they gloried in it, as expressing their adherence to Christ, and they soon generally accepted it." (Richard Watson, *Watson's Bible Dictionary* (1832), p. 233.)

"*Cristianos, Christian: a word formally not after the Greek but after the Roman manner, denoting attachment to or adherents to Christ. Only occurs as used by others of them, not by Christians of themselves. Tacitus (A.D. 96) says (Annals 15, 44), ('The vulgar call them Christians). The author or origin of this denomination, Christus, had, in the reign of Tiberius been executed by the procurator, Pontius Pilate.*" (Ethelbert William Bullinger, *A Critical Lexicon and Concordance of the English and Greek New Testament* (1908), p. 152.)

"The name (Christian) given by the Greeks or Romans, **probably in reproach**, to the followers of Jesus. It was first used at Antioch." (Easton's Bible Dictionary.)

"Egypt, which you commanded to me, my dearest Servianus, I have found to be wholly fickle and inconsistent, and continually wafted about every breath of fame. **The worshippers of Serapis (here)** are called Christians, and those who are **devoted to the god Serapis** (I find), call themselves Bishops of Christ." (The Emperor Adrian to Servianus, written A.D. 134.)

³²⁷ Request the researcher's books: "Vader se Feeste" and "Yeshua's Feasts or Christmas".

He did and do what He came to show mankind. If this is not the truth to believe in GOD's Ways from His direct Word (the BIBLE), **then which research of the Messiah should be trusted and confirmed as truth?** Surely only the BIBLE!

This is exactly what Yahshua meant when He said first of all must GOD be loved with all the heart, soul and might. (Matt 22:37 and Mark 12:30 from Deut 6:5 and Deut 10:12).

Christmas cannot be found anywhere in the BIBLE and therefore can it not be a holy Feast to follow if it was not instructed by the Creator. It does not matter how a person wants to connect it with HaMashiach. If it was not instructed by GOD, then by whom was it instructed and how did it originally become a "*holy*" or *sacred doctrine*?³²⁸

The question should be, is it a *doctrine* or *Feast* of GOD within / from His Word or is it a *doctrine* or *feast* from man?

World-wide people *make* "Christmas" a *Holy* day and it is the *best* "Christian" holiday, even pagan believers have a *festive holiday* this day. People just assume the observance of this "Holy day" without asking any questions or to investigate Scriptures. It is a great **deception**.³²⁹

³²⁸ More in the booklet of the researcher: "Yeshua's Feasts or Christmas"

³²⁹ CHRISTMAS: Is it from the Bible – or Paganism? Christian Assemblies International -

<https://www.cai.org/bible-studies/christmas>; 23/06/2014: People everywhere think Christmas to be the best of Christian holidays. Without asking any questions, they have assumed its observance is necessary. Today they go on assuming that Jesus was born on December 25th and that the Bible sets this day aside to be observed by Christians.

This is a Deception! There are certain facts of which we should be aware. Let us (supposedly representing a Christian nation) stop acting in ignorance.

The word 'Christmas' means '**mass of Christ**', or as later shortened - '**Christ-mass**'. It came to us as a Roman Catholic mass. But where did the Catholics get it? ... From the heathen celebration of December 25th, the birthday of 'Sol', the sun god! Celebration of this date was an ancient rite of Baalism - which the Bible condemns completely. **It is not mentioned in the New Testament**, or kept by Paul the Apostle, or the early **true church!** It is one of the fables Paul mentioned in 2 TIMOTHY 4:4. He stated this observance would deceive the people of the world, side-tracking them into following a weak and powerless Gospel!

Christmas is not Christ's Birthday at all. It is not of Christian origin, but is pagan, being Babylonian in origin. Some say, "Well, so what? It's the spirit of this time that counts".

Let us go a little further...

JESUS was not born on December 25th, nor was He born in the winter season. Why? Because there were shepherds in the fields keeping watch over their flocks by night (LUKE 2:8). By October 15th, in Palestine, the shepherds always brought their flocks from the mountains and fields, and corralled them for protection from the cold and rain that followed that date. (See SONG OF SOLOMON 2:11 and EZRA 10:9,13). Winter in Palestine is a rainy season and the shepherds remained indoors during this time. It was customary for the Jews of those days to send out their sheep to the fields and deserts about the time of the Passover (early spring), and to bring them home at the commencement of the first rain. The shepherds watched over their sheep night and day. Any encyclopaedia will tell you that Christ was not born on December 25th; the date of His birth is not known. If God had wanted man to be caught up in Babe worship at 'Christmas', He would have included directions in His Word and would not have kept the date hidden.

Recognized encyclopaedias indicate that *Christmas* was not observed in the first two or three hundred years after *Mashiach* was born. **HOW** then, was a *heathen* custom introduced? **WHERE** was the real origin?³³⁰

Here follows more research again from yet another author regarding the origin of the **pagan feast Christmas**, and the researcher again cited facts about the *Christmas* topic.³³¹

What is the TRUE ORIGIN of Christmas? Where did it come from? Did you know Yeshua the Messiah was born nowhere NEAR December 25, but that was the

WE SHOULD BE AWARE THAT THERE IS NOT ONE WORD IN THE BIBLE TELLING US TO OBSERVE 'CHRISTMAS'.

³³⁰ CHRISTMAS: Is it from the Bible – or Paganism? Christian Assemblies International - <http://www.cai.org/bible-studies/christmas>; 23/06/2014: Nimrod, the grandson of Ham (one of Noah's sons)³³⁰, was the real instigator of the Babylonish system which has gripped the world ever since he lived. It was a system of organised competition, based on a profit-making economic system. Nimrod built the tower of Babel, ancient Nineveh and other cities. The name 'Nimrod' is Hebrew and derives from 'Marad', meaning 'he rebelled'. Nimrod was so evil that he married his own mother, whose name was Semiramis. After Nimrod's early death, his mother-wife propagated the evil doctrine of the survival of Nimrod as a spirit being. She claimed a full grown evergreen tree sprang overnight from a dead tree stump, which symbolised the springing forth into new life of the dead Nimrod. On each anniversary of his birth, she claimed Nimrod would visit the evergreen tree and leave gifts upon it. December 25th was the birthday of Nimrod: and **here we have the real origin of the 'Christmas tree'.**

Through her scheming, the Babylonians gradually came to regard Semiramis as the 'Queen of Heaven', and Nimrod, under various names, became the 'Divine Son of Heaven'. After generations of this idolatrous worship, Nimrod was also worshipped as the Messiah, the Son of Baal, and the Sun God. In this Babylonian system, the 'mother and child' (Semiramis and Nimrod reborn) became the chief objects of worship. This worship of 'mother and child' spread over the world, though the names varied in different countries and languages. In Egypt, it was 'Isis and Osiris'; in Asia, 'Cybele and Dosius', and in pagan Rome, 'Fortuna and Jupiter'. Even in Greece, Japan, China and Tibet researchers have found the counterpart of the Madonna - in evidence a long time before the birth of Jesus Christ, Saviour of the world.

During the fourth and fifth centuries, when the pagans of the Roman world were accepting the new popular 'Christianity' in their thousands, carrying their old pagan customs and beliefs along with them under Christian sounding names, the Madonna 'mother and child' idea became very popular, especially at Christmas time. Every Christmas, people sing the hymn "Silent Night, Holy Night" with the familiar 'mother and child' theme. We, today, have been born into a Babylonish world, brought up all our lives in a reverence of these forms as being sacred. **We have never queried where they come from; whether from the Bible or from pagan idolatry.**

Our God Commands that His people should "Cry aloud, spare not, lift up thy voice like a trumpet, and shew my people their transgression..." (ISAIAH 58:1); and it is well that we recognise that the real origin of Christmas goes back to Babylon. It is bound up in organised satanic apostasy, now gripping the whole world. In Egypt, it was always believed that the son of 'Isis' (Egyptian name for 'Queen of Heaven') was born on December 25th. Therefore, paganism celebrated this famous birthday many centuries **before** Christ was born. **Nowhere in the Bible does it tell us to worship 'mother and child';** the apostles and early church did not worship them and yet today we find people everywhere who consider it pagan not to!

In LUKE 1:28, 42 and 48, Mary was shown to be highly blessed of God, but it does **not** say to deify her, to worship her, or make her a divine being when she was merely a human. The widespread worship of Mary as 'the mother of God' - the doctrine of immaculate conception, which refers to her as a counterfeit mediatrix between God and man - is a continuation of the ancient Babylonian idolatry begun by Semiramis, wife of Nimrod. It is a satanic deception which gets our eyes off Jesus Christ, the risen Lord - seated at God's right hand; not a babe now, not in the tomb, but seated with His Father, our God.

Thus, this ancient, idolatrous, pagan 'mystery' has been handed down **through the pagan religions into the Roman Catholic Church, and from there into the Protestant denominations and the people in general.**

³³¹ Christmas, New Advent - <http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/03724b.htm>; 23/06/2014.

"birth day" of the sun- god, "Sol Invictus" or "Mithras"? Did you know December 25 was the concluding day of the pagan winter festival called the "Saturnalia"? Where did "Santa Claus" come from? The "Christmas tree"? How did this pagan feast become connected with "Christianity"? Here is an amazing "whale of a tale"!³³²

How Did Christmas Come to Be Celebrated on December 25 and became "holy"?

People previously also engaged in deep research regarding this topic, thus are there numerous material available concerning the "Christmas" *pagan origin* holiday, which is proof that it is definitely not Scriptural.³³³

An article shows how the BIBLE see this *pagan day* and cited *Christmas* from the Book of Revelation to describe Rome (Babylon) as the *whore with her harlot daughters*:

*"Roman Catholicism is the Great Whore. The Bible describes the **church of Rome as a garishly dressed harlot** with a chalice full of abominations and filthiness of her **fornication**, because she **adopted many pagan customs to seduce her followers into spiritual adultery**. This has been the near universal understanding of God's true saints for 12000 years. But she is not alone, for the churches of the **Protestant Reformation are her harlot daughters** by retaining many of her sacramental and liturgical corruptions (Dan 7:1-28; II Thess 2:3-12; I Tim 4:1-3; Rev 13:1-18; 17:1-18; 18:1-24; 19:1-4).*

For a Christian to have a Christmas tree and engage in Christmas customs around December 25 is the same betrayal as a woman making love to her husband

³³² The Shocking Pagan Origin of Chrstmas, Hope of Israel - <http://www.hope-of-israel.org/cmas1.htm>; 23/06/2014.

³³³ The History of Christmas, Simple to Remember -

http://www.simpletoremember.com/vitals/Christmas_TheRealStory.htm; 23/06/2014:

A. Roman pagans first introduced the holiday of Saturnalia, a week long period of lawlessness celebrated between December 17-25. During this period, Roman courts were closed, and Roman law dictated that no one could be punished for damaging property or injuring people during the weeklong celebration. The festival began when Roman authorities chose "an enemy of the Roman people" to represent the "Lord of Misrule." Each Roman community selected a victim whom they forced to indulge in food and other physical pleasures throughout the week. At the festival's conclusion, December 25th, Roman authorities believed they were destroying the forces of darkness by brutally murdering this innocent man or woman.

B. The ancient Greek writer poet and historian Lucian (in his dialogue entitled Saturnalia) describes the festival's observance in his time. In addition to human sacrifice, he mentions these customs: widespread intoxication; going from house to house while singing naked; rape and other sexual license; and consuming human-shaped biscuits (still produced in some English and most German bakeries during the Christmas season).

C. In the 4th century CE, Christianity imported the Saturnalia festival hoping to take the pagan masses in with it. Christian leaders succeeded in converting to Christianity large numbers of pagans by promising them that they could continue to celebrate the Saturnalia as Christians.

while thinking about another past lover, or with treasured intimate mementos of his in her dresser, or using sexual techniques she learned from him. If you think this is extreme or harsh, read Ezekiel 16 and/or 23 carefully.

God is Jealous. He created and saved His people from serving the devil **to be His very own bride**. He expects total adoration and perfect obedience. **The first and great commandment is to love Him with all your heart, mind, soul, and strength**. He will not share your love or interest with other things. His name is Jealous, and He burns in jealous rage when His people even flirt with anything else (Ex 20:3-5; 34:14; Deut 4:24; 6:15; 29:20; 32:16; Josh 24:19; Is 42:8; 48:11; I Cor 10:22).³³⁴

So what does Constantine had to do with Christmas, who established the Roman-Catholic Christianity? Constantine endorsed Christmas, a *pagan day as the birth of Yahshua*, which is proven to be not the case as it is not Scriptural. According to the BIBLE the birth of the Messiah was not during the winter times in Jerusalem, but still summer. What is important is that GOD gave His Appointed Times (Lev 23:2) to be honoured and to keep it Holy (Set-Apart – Exo 31:14); and GOD's Appointed Times are GOD's given Feasts. *Christmas* is not part of these GOD's Feasts. No one has the authority to alter or disregard His Feasts, not even the Jews or the Pope (the *Vicar / substitute of Christ*) or an Empire:

"How could a Roman emperor have anything to do with an event that occurred three hundred years before he sat on the throne? Needless to say, Constantine had no part in the birth of Jesus. But he did play an important part in deciding when Jesus' birth would be celebrated through the centuries.

Flavius Valerius Aurelius Constantinus, better known as Constantine I or Constantine the Great, was born around the year A.D. 275 - almost three centuries after Jesus. Constantine worshipped the pantheon of Roman gods as all his predecessors had done and especially the Roman sun god, Sol. However, as he was traveling to battle his most powerful rival in Italy, Maxentius, at the Tiber River in A.D. 312, he had a vision. In that vision, he reported seeing the cross of Christ superimposed on the sun with the words, in hoc signo vinces - "in this sign you shall conquer." After winning the battle, he became a strong champion of

³³⁴ Christmas is Spiritual Adultery, Let God be True - <http://www.letgodbetrue.com/bible/holidays/christmas-is-adultery.php?gclid=CLnzm83z0bkCFbLMtAodJmcAGQ>; 23/06/2014.

Christianity. The very next year, he met with Emperor Licinius, the ruler of the eastern provinces, to sign the Edict of Milan giving equal rights to all religious groups within the Roman Empire. He returned property seized from Christians, built a great number of churches, donated land, and **convened the first Council of Nicaea in A.D. 325 to deal with false teaching within the church**. Although he didn't completely leave his pagan roots and wasn't baptized until A.D. 337 on this deathbed, he did much to further the growth of the church.

Either as a means to unify his empire, or to make converting to Christianity easier, **Constantine sought to blend Christian and pagan traditions**. At that time, two prominent pagan winter festivals were celebrated. The first, starting on December 17 and lasting seven days, **honoured Saturn, the Roman god of agriculture**. The second, starting on December 25 and lasting through January 1, commemorated the birth of Mithras, the **Persian god of light**. **Constantine merged many of the traditions from these festivals with the Nativity story in the Bible and Christmas was born**. From its beginning, Christmas was a holiday (or holy day), gifts were exchanged, families and friends gathered to feast, and a birth was celebrated; just like in the Roman and Persian festivities.

The first mention of December 25 as the date of Jesus' birth is found in an early Roman calendar from A.D. 336.

Although the accounts of Jesus' birth (Matthew 1:18-2:23; Luke 1:26-38; 2:1-20) give us no hints about the date, they do provide a wealth of information about its significance. The Baby born in Bethlehem is the Son of God (Matthew 1:20; Luke 1:32, 35), the Saviour (Matthew 1:21; Luke 2:11), God with us (Matthew 1:23), and the King who is worthy of worship (Matthew 2:2; Luke 1:33).³³⁵

There is neither Scriptural text of a *Christmas feast* nor Scriptural text of this calendar date, but there **is** definite Scripture of the Messiah's Feasts (GOD's Feasts, because Yahshua and GOD is One³³⁶) and the **new moon** was given to announce these GOD

³³⁵ What part did emperor Constantine have in Christmas? All About Jesus Christ - <http://www.allaboutjesuschrist.org/emperor-constantine-faq.htm>; 23/06/20014.

³³⁶ John 10:30

Appointed Feasts and therefore is it a *shadow of the things to come* in the the body of the Messiah³³⁷.

Thus, without knowing the Feasts of GOD in Scriptures, by *abolishing* the Torah, will lack of wisdom and knowledge continue to exist and GOD's given Feasts in Leviticus 23 will continue not to exist. The "*Christmas pagan feast*" will continued to be taken incorrectly as *Holy* by dishonouring GOD's Word and by abolishing *the Appointed Feasts of GOD*.

Here follow short descriptions cited with Scripture of how Satan deceives people with the "Santa" *image*, and GOD instructed clearly no other *image* should be made of Him. Satan tries to create GOD's image with *Santa*:

Isa 63:1-2 and Rev 19:13 – the red cloathes (dress).

Jer 10:3-5 – the tree decorated with decoration.

Mark 10:13-14 and 9:42 – all the children belongs to who?

Matt 22:30 – who comes on the clouds?

John 10:1-3 – anyone who enters not through the door is a *thief*, *Santa* enters where?

Matt 18:1-5 – *Santa* wants children to welcome him like they should welcome Yahshua.

Zech 2:6 – *Santa* is from the North.

Zech 14:12 – *Satan* wants to be like Yahshua, like the Morning Star.

Jes 14:13-14 – *Santa* ultimately wants to be above GOD.

What does Yahshua say, why wil these things happen? People please investigate and keep the truth, all the good things from GOD: From the exeGesis Ready Research Bible (ERRB) Matt 15:3-9 with the heading "**MISVAH VS TRADITION**":

*"But he answered and said unto them, Why do ye also transgress the commandment [**misvah**] of God [**Elohim**] by [**for**] your tradition?*

*For God commanded [**Elohim misvahed**], saying [**wording**], Honour thy father and mother: and, He that curseth [**vilifieth**] father or mother, let him die the death.*

*But ye say [**word**], Whosoever shall say to his father or his mother, It is a gift [**An oblation**], by whatsoever thou mightest be profited [**benefited**] by me;*

³³⁷ Col 2:16-17

And **[in no way]** honour not his father or his mother, he shall be free. Thus have ye made **[invalidated]** the commandment **[misvah]** of God **[Elohim]** of none effect by **[for]** your tradition. [Exodus 20:12, 21:17]

Ye hypocrites, well did Esaias **[Yesha Yah]** prophesy of **[concerning]** you, Saying **[wording]**, This people draweth nigh unto **[approacheth]** me with their mouth, and honoureth me with their lips; but their heart is far from me.

But in vain they do worship **[venerate]** me, teaching **[doctrinating]** for doctrines the commandments **[misvoth]** of men **[humanity]**. [Isaiah 29:13]"

☆ SUNDAY OR SABBATH



This should also be a very simple fact to get clarity, but because people have followed the *tradition / doctrine of man* of the holy convocation gathering on a *Sunday*, the first day of the week, is it difficult to accept or even to try and acknowledge the correct principle given by GOD.

There is an old saying: "**people will rather deal with old problems than accepting true solutions**". Unfortunately is this the truth.

How many times have people said, but you can have *anyday of the week* as your rest day or Sabbath. How true is that according *purely* to the Word of the Creator GOD? The BIBLE must be able to clarify this fact. If a person wants to take Scripture only as the *direct Word from GOD*, as the *churches* like to use the phrase, "*Sola-Scriptura*", then it has to come from the Word of GOD only or such a change had to be commanded by GOD.

The "Nameless" LORD -- BAAL



Snake, Fire and sun worship - were all aspects of "BAAL" worship that started with Nimrod

If anyone wants to know the truth of what is the first day of the week and what is the last day of the week, then google or research will easily show proof. Proof is Saturday according to the Gregorian calendar the last day of the week and Sunday is the first day of the week.

What has been said in the *Precis* of this dissertation still stands, use the Word of YHVH to confirm everything and to find the truth. The Creator made the earth in six (6) days and the seventh (7th) day He rested. This is the Word from GOD Himself, and nowhere in the whole BIBLE did He mention that the six days of creation actually took 6,000 years. YHVH is *bigger* than this, He could have created everything in a moment or in one day, but He took six days and He rested on the seventh day.

Again, who then changed this *rest day* from Saturday to Sunday and why? It all happened during the time of Constantine 1 and he changed it knowing the BIBLE clearly stated GOD commanded the *Sabbath Day* to be the last day of the week, on Yom Shebi'i.

*"Now after the Sabbath, toward the dawn of the **first day** of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to see the tomb."* (ESV Matt 28:1)

When did the people keep a *holy day* during the time of Yahshua the Messiah and where did they go to?

*"And he (Yahshua) came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up. And as was **His custom**, he (Yahshua) went to the **synagogue** on the **Sabbath day**, and he stood up to read."* (ESV Luke 4:16)

The Messiah [who all mankind has to believe in] went to a Synagogue on the Sabbath Day. Why will people follow *traditions of man* to observe a day which is not commanded? People say, "But Colossians says it is not necessary to observe a Sabbath". Let's research again and see what the BIBLE says first, and what did the Messiah say:

*Therefore, go and make people from all nations into talmidim (disciples), **immersing** them into the reality of the Father, the Son and the Ruach HaKodesh, **and teaching them to obey everything that I have commanded you**. And remember! I will be with you always, yes, even until the end of the age."* (CJB Matt 28:19-20)

Yahshua did nothing or said nothing from His own, but everything came from the Creator, as His Word was GOD and was in the beginning with GOD and the Word was GOD. He is ONE with GOD. What was GOD's Word in the beginning and His Torah instruction:

"Remember the **Sabbath day**, to keep it **holy**." (ESV Exo 20:8)

"Six days shall work be done, but the **seventh day** is a **Sabbath of solemn rest, holy to the LORD**. Whoever does any work on the **Sabbath day** shall be put to death." (ESV Exo 31:15)

On six days work will get done; but the **seventh day** is **Shabbat**, for complete rest, **set apart for Adonai**. Whoever does any work on the day of **Shabbat** must be put to death. (CJB Exo 31:15)

"Tell the people of Isra'el: 'The **designated times of Adonai** which you are to proclaim as **holy convocations** are my designated times. " 'Work is to be done on six days; but the **seventh day** is a **Shabbat of complete rest**, a holy convocation; you are not to do any kind of work; it is a **Shabbat for Adonai**, even in your homes.'" (CJB Lev 23:2-3)

The *seventh day* is the *Day of Shabbat*; it must be a *Set-Aaprt day for Adonai*, because it is the "**Sabbath of the Lord**". Now what does Colossians say:

"So don't let anyone pass judgement on you in connection with eating and drinking, or in regard to a Jewish festival or Rosh-Hodesh (new moon) or **Shabbat**. These are a **shadow of things that are coming**, but the body is of the Messiah." (CJB Col 2:16-17)

Sha'ul spoke to Torah-observant Believers here and that they must keep on doing the Torah. He definitely did not write to "Christians"!

Yahshua kept the Sabbath, He went to these festivals, which were translated to as Jewish festivals, which indeed were GOD's festivals³³⁸ that only the Jews (Messiah Followers) obeyed and kept at that time. Still today there are new moons and NASA can confirm this. The question should be, "what are the shadows of the things to come, which is of the body of the Messiah"? Because if there are no more Feasts, new moons or Sabbaths necessary, then there can be no *shadows of them*, right? GOD created the *new moon*, man cannot discontinue it!

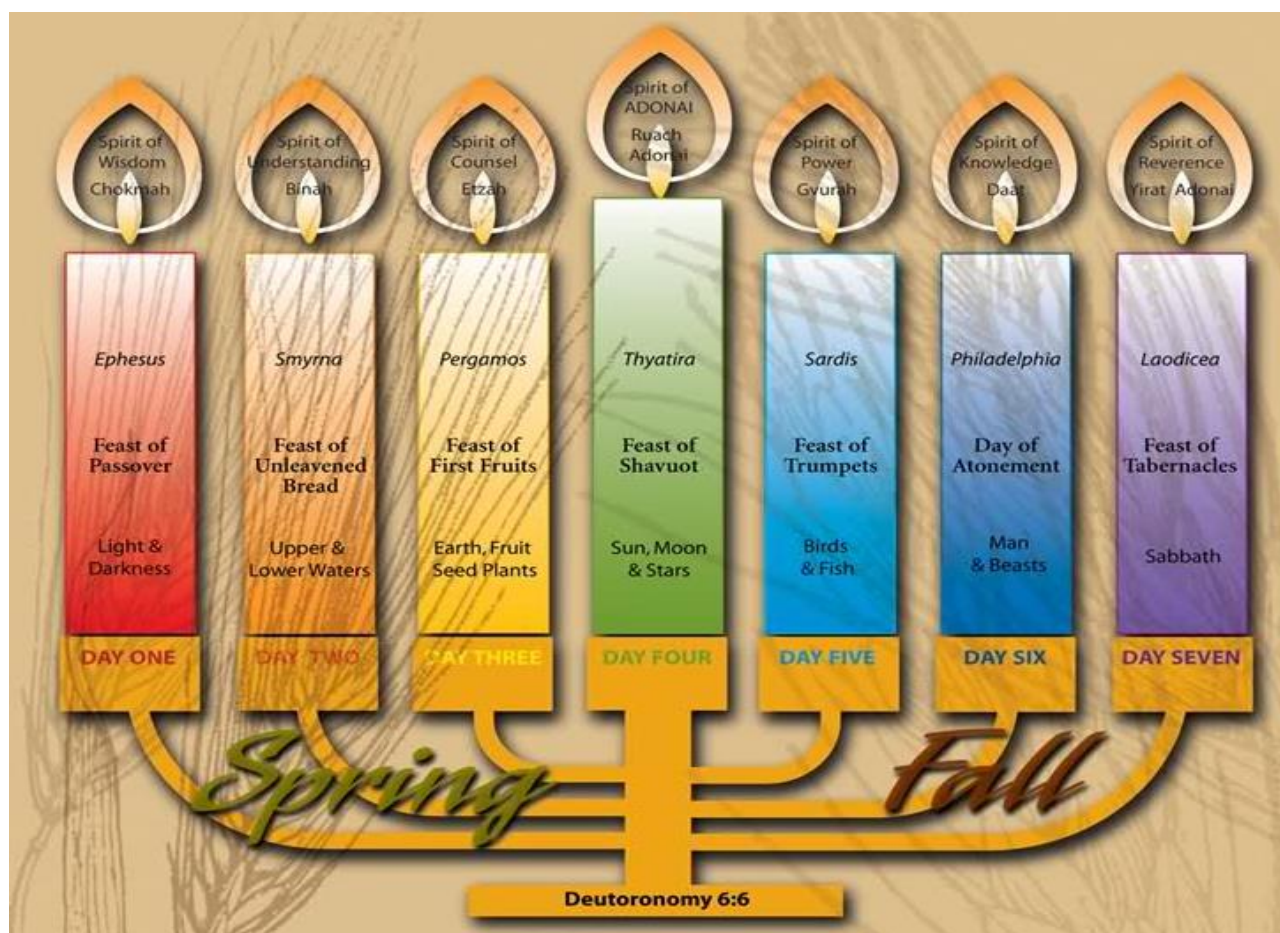
³³⁸ Lev 23:2, 4

If a Sabbath or the new moon is non-existent and the festivals stop to exist, then what does verse 17 refrain to? What things is a shadow of the things to come which is of the body of the Messiah? With proper Exegesis we look at the verses again:

"Something will come as a shadow of the body of the Messiah, therefore let no one judge you in connection with the eating and drinking regarding these *GOD Apointed Time Feasts*³³⁹. The new moons appoint the start *days* of these festivals and of the Sabbaths: GOD created to keep holy. If you believe in the Messiah, keep on doing these things, because they are shadows of things to come."

Shadow of what things to come people ask?

The Feasts are shadows of the First and Second Commings of the Prophecies of the Messiah and the *new moon* appoints the *start day* of each Feast, and what to drink and



eat is described in the Word of GOD by the Creator. He gave explicit Instructions of holy and unholy animals, definitely not to waste His breath and to confuse early believers like

³³⁹ Lev 23:4

Moshe, Avraham or Ya'acov. He knew from the beginning what will happen till the end and GOD said faith has to be like the faith of the early Patriarchs – Heb 11. Here are the **seven shadows** of the **seven Feasts** of the things to come in short:

Pesach – Shadow of the Crucifixion of the Lamb Yahshua

Unleavened Bread – Shadow of the Messiah in the Grave

First Fruits – Messiah the First of everything to mankind, His Ressurrection

Pentecost – Shadow of the Messiah's Ascension

Trumpets – Shadow of the Day of the Rapture with the loud blow of His Shofar

Day of Atonement – Shadow of Repentance to find Grace in GOD's eyes.

Tabernacles – Shadow of the Wedding Feast of Rev 19:8

Yahshua said salvation is from the Jews and that everyone must pray of what we know:

*"You people don't know what you are worshipping; **we** worship what we do know, because salvation comes from the Jews." (CJB John 4:22)*

These are Words that cannot be ignored. It is the Word of the Messiah Himself. What does the people call GOD's Feasts? Yes, the Jewish feasts? Why? The Jews are unfortunately the only ones keeping these Feasts by obeying the Word of GOD. The Feasts above are GOD's Feasts and not Jewish Feasts. GOD instructed it and GOD made the Feasts according to His Times, He *creates* a new moon, man cannot create a new moon!

Can the Sabbath Day be any day of the weekly calendar?

Exo 20, 31, and Lev 23 says clearly in English the **Sabbath Day**, which were directly translated from the Hebrew TaNaKh's words **Yom Shabbat**. Yom means day, which is *day of the Sabbath*.

According to proper Exegesis and Hermeneutics, to study the BIBLE and Scripture correctly and in truth, a person has to look at the original meaning of the words and the original use of the exact words.

The first time the word **yom** was used, was by Elohim Himself,³⁴⁰ when He spoke the Word, which became Flesh thousands (4,000 years in fact) of years later and lived His

³⁴⁰ Gen 1:8

exact Words on earth, **nothing else** than the Word He spoke "In the Beginning"³⁴¹ (Beresheet).

King James Version with Strong's numbers (KJV+) of **yom** (day) – H3117:

yôm – yome: *From an unused root meaning to be hot; a day (as the warm hours), whether literally (from sunrise to sunset, or from one sunset to the next), or figuratively (a space of time defined by an associated term), (often used adverbially): - age, + always, + chronicles, continually (-ance), daily, ([birth-], each, to) day, (now a, two) days (agone), + elder, X end, + evening, + (for) ever.*

What was / is the **second day** called in Hebrew, which is in Hebrew still today the second day?

*"and Elohim calls the expanse, Heavens: and evening becomes and morning becomes **day two**." (ECB Gen 1:8)*

Strong's (KJV+) H8145:

שני – **shênîy**: *From H8138; properly double, that is, **second**; also adverbially again: - again, either [of them], (an-) other, second (time).*

Day three (3) from Gen 1:13 according Hebrew Old Testament (Tanach) with Strong's numbers (HOT+) – H7992:

שלישי – **shelîyshîy**: *Ordinal from H7969; **third**; feminine a third (part); by extension a **third** (day, year or time); specifically a third story cell): - third (part, rank, time), three (years old).*

Day four (4) from Gen 1:19 according to Strong's (HOT+) – H7243:

רביעי – **rebi îy**: *From H7251; **fourth**; also (fractionally) a fourth: - four-square, fourth (part).*

³⁴¹ 1 John 2:7

It is evidently clear that the names of the 7 days GOD used to create earth, were given *literally* by the Creator Himself *direct* to Moshe to write. This is the same *creation order* still today. The names of the week days had been changed by the *Roman Greek Empire*, unfortunately after the Greek gods they worshipped. It was accepted by the Anglo-Saxon Germanic language and continued with it also after their gods. What does the Word of GOD say?

*"Do not make images of **false gods**, or put up an image cut in stone or a pillar or any pictured stone in your land, to give worship to it; **for I am the Lord your God.**"*

(BBE Lev 26:1)

*"They have given my honour to that which is **not God**, moving me to wrath with their **false worship**: I will give their honour to those who are not a people, moving them to wrath by a **foolish nation**," (BBE Deut 32:21)*

The emphasis is that other gods are not to be worshipped, but only One GOD; and the emphasis is that **GOD made Yom Shebi'I [the seventh day of creation] a Holy Yom Shabbat** and called it **His Shabbat**. In complete English:

"GOD gave the name of the last day of His creation the *seventh day* and He made this day a **holy Sabbath Day**, which He said is **His appointed day**³⁴²."

Most *Christians* unfortunately think that anyday of the week can be a *rest day* (holy day) or their Sabbath Day when the Command of GOD explicitly says the Sabbath is the seventh day. GOD's Word states clearly GOD created the day of *rest* and He *created* the seventh day the *Sabbath*. Whatever GOD created cannot be changed or abolished by man. GOD's Word became Flesh and GOD said He is One with the Messiah (the Word in Flesh) and that the Messiah speaks everything GOD spoke and nothing else.

It just makes sense that when the Word was spoken by GOD in the beginning and the Word became Flesh is the One and Same Word, that this Word cannot be differently from

³⁴² BBE Lev 23:2-3: Say to the children of Israel, These are the **fixed feasts of the Lord**, which you will keep for **holy meetings**: these are **my (GOD) feasts**. On six days work may be done; but the **seventh day is a special day of rest, a time for worship**; you may do no sort of work: it is a **Sabbath to the Lord wherever you may be living**.

His own Word, because then this Word would be a lie and the Word is contradicting to Himself. This is not allowed according to the Bibles within this research.

The Messiah adhered to His own Word spoken in the beginning and **proved** it on earth, because He was without sin and He obeyed the Torah (Law) 100%, without neglecting one Yod (') or Word in His Torah (Law)³⁴³. HaMashiach Himself went to preach on the **Sabbath Day**³⁴⁴, because He did not abolish His Word:

*"Now when he (Yahshua) went to Natzeret, where he had been brought up, on **Shabbat** He went to the synagogue **as usual**. He stood up to read, and He was given the scroll of the Prophet Yesha`yahu. Unrolling the scroll, He found the place where it was written," (CJB Luke 4:16-17)*

*"And he came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up. And **as was His custom**, he (Yahshua) went to the synagogue on the **Sabbath day**, and He stood up to read. And the scroll of the Prophet Isaiah was given to Him. He unrolled the scroll and found the place where it was written," (ESV Luke 4:16-17)*

Yahshua honoured and observed the Torah and He demanded the following:

ⲧ *"Remember the day, Shabbat, to set it apart for God." (CJB Exo 20:8)*

*"On six days work will get done; but the seventh day is Shabbat, for complete rest, **set apart for Adonai**. Whoever does any work on the day of Shabbat must be put to death." (Exo 31:15)*

According to the Greek Strong's numbers is the Greek translation for the Sabbath direct from the original meaning of the seventh day, the Sabbath that the Creator GOD demanded as holy:

G4521 – $\sigma \acute{\alpha} \beta \beta \alpha \tau \omicron \nu$ – *Sabbaton*:

Of Hebrew origin [H7676]; the Sabbath (that is, Shabbath), or day of weekly repose from secular avocations (also the observance or institution itself); by

³⁴³ Deut 18:18-20

³⁴⁴ BBE Matt 5:18 Truly I say to you, Till heaven and earth come to an end, not the smallest letter or part of a letter will in any way be taken from the law, till all things are done.

*extension a se'nnight, that is, the interval between two Sabbaths; likewise the plural in all the above applications: - **sabbath (day), week.** (H7676 Intensive from H7673)*

H7676 – שַׁבָּת – Shabba th:

Intensive from H7673; intermission, that is, (specifically) the Sabbath: - (+ every) Sabbath.

H7673 – שָׁבַת – Sha th bath:

*A primitive root; to repose, that is, desist from exertion; used in many implied relations (causatively, figuratively or specifically): - (cause to, let, make to) **cease, celebrate, cause (make) to fail, keep (sabbath), suffer to be lacking, leave, put away (down), (make to) rest, rid, still, take away.***

GOD created the Sabbath Day and **GOD** made it holy, His Sabbath, on the seventh day (Yom Shebi'i – Strong's H7637) of the week. According to the BIBLE and all the resources researched, GOD did not make a holy convocation Sabbath from any other day than the seventh day of the week (the secular Saturday to-date):

H7637 – שִׁבְעִי – Shebîy [']îy:

Ordinal from H7657; seventh: - seventh (time).

Thus the days were originally taken from the counting of the Hebrew language and the proof is John 1:1 the Word Yahshua who was Hebrew. Here follow the days of the week translated from Hebrew names after Greek gods as we know it today:



*"Italian cameo bracelet representing the days of the week, corresponding to the planets as **Olympian gods: Diana as the Moon** for Monday, **Mars** for Tuesday, **Mercury** for Wednesday, **Jupiter** for Thursday, **Venus** for*

Friday, **Saturn** for Saturday, and **Apollo** as the **Sun for Sunday** (Walters Museum).³⁴⁵

GOD's Creation Days Secular days named after pagan worshipping

Day 1 – Yom Reshon	- [Sun]day – Sun worshipping day
Day 2 – Yom Sheni	- [Moon's]day – Moon worshipping day
Day 3 – Yom Shlishi	- [Tiw's]day – god of war ³⁴⁶ worshipping day
Day 4 – Yom Rebi'i	- [Wodan's]day – the Norse Odin ³⁴⁷ worshipping day
Day 5 – Yom Khamishi	- [Thor's]day – god of thunder worshipping day
Day 6 – Yom Shishshi	- [Frig's]day – god of fertility worshipping day
Day 7 – Yom Shebi'i	- [Saturn]day – god of agriculture worshipping day

The following prove of the *Roman-Catholic Christianity* acknowledgement of the Sabbath change from Saturday to Sunday is added in full, and this change was continued by the Protestant (Martin Luther) Christianity. It was accepted and continued by Calvinism Christianity, even when it was admitted as not Scriptural correct and against the Word of GOD:

This is what is written in the Catechism of the Roman-Catholics:

"In the Convert's Catechism of Catholic Doctrine, we read:

Q. Which is the Sabbath day?

*A. **Saturday is the Sabbath day.***

Q. Why do we observe Sunday instead of Saturday?

*A. We observe Sunday instead of Saturday because the **Catholic Church**, in the Council of Laodicea, (A.D. 336) **transferred the solemnity from Saturday to Sunday....***

Q. Why did the Catholic Church substitute Sunday for Saturday?

*A. **The Church substituted Sunday for Saturday**, because Christ rose from the dead on a Sunday, and the Holy Ghost descended upon the Apostles on a Sunday.*

³⁴⁵ Days numbered from Sunday, Wikipedia - http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Names_of_the_days_of_the_week; 24/06/2014.

³⁴⁶ The Naming of the Days, Lawrence Crowl - <http://www.crowl.org/lawrence/time/days.html>; 24/06/2014.

³⁴⁷ Origin of Day Names, Almanac - <http://www.almanac.com/content/origin-day-names>; 24/06/2014.

Q. By what authority did the Church substitute Sunday for Saturday?

A. **The Church substituted Sunday for Saturday** by the plenitude of that divine power which Jesus Christ bestowed upon her!

—Rev. Peter Geiermann, C.S.S.R., (1946), p. 50

Catholic Christian Instructed,

Q. Has the [Catholic] church power to make any alterations in the commandments of God?

A. ...**Instead of** the seventh day, and other festivals appointed by the old law, the **church has prescribed the Sundays** and holy days to be set apart for God's worship; and these we are now obliged to keep in consequence of God's commandment, **instead of the ancient Sabbath.**

—The Catholic Christian Instructed in the Sacraments, Sacrifices, Ceremonies, and Observances of the Church By Way of Question and Answer, RT Rev. Dr. Challoner, p. 204.³⁴⁸

Note: Answers above are not Scriptural at all as it was not mentioned in the BIBLE anywhere that the Sabbath Day should change, it is actually quite the opposite. Here follows an Abridgement of the *Christian* doctrine and the Doctrinal Catechism:

"In An Abridgment of the Christian Doctrine,

Q. How prove you that the church hath power to command feasts and holy days?

A. By the very act of changing the Sabbath into Sunday, **which Protestants allow of; and therefore they fondly contradict themselves**, by keeping Sunday strictly, **and breaking most other feasts commanded by the same church.**

Q. How prove you that?

A. **Because by keeping Sunday, they acknowledge the church's power to ordain feasts, and to command them under sin;** and by not keeping the rest [of the feasts] by her commanded, they again deny, in fact, the same power.

—Rev. Henry Tuberville, D.D. (R.C.), (1833), page 58.

³⁴⁸ Catholic Church Admits They Made the Change; <http://www.sabbathtruth.com/free-resources/article-library/id/916/catholic-church-admits-they-made-the-change>; 27/08/2014.

In A Doctrinal Catechism,

Q. Have you any other way of proving that the Church has power to institute festivals of precept?

*A. Had she not such power, she could not have done that in which all modern religionists agree with her. She could not have substituted the observance of Sunday the first day of the week, for the observance of Saturday the seventh day, **a change for which there is no Scriptural authority.***

—Rev. Stephen Keenan, (1851), p. 174.³⁴⁹

Note: The "church" and the "Catholic Doctrine" changed the Sabbath Day, not GOD within His Word! Here follows proof of the Augsburg Confession that the change is not Scriptural:

"In the Augsburg Confession,

They [the Catholics] allege the Sabbath changed into Sunday, the Lord's day, contrary to the decalogue, as it appears; neither is there any example more boasted of than the changing of the Sabbath day. Great, they say, is the power and authority of the church, since it dispensed with one of the Ten Commandments. —Art. 28."

Frank H. Yost has the following to say about the Sabbath change:

*"For centuries millions of Christians have gathered to worship God on the first day of the week. Graciously He has accepted this worship. He has poured out His blessings upon Christian people as they have sought to serve Him. **However,** as one searches the Scriptures, he is forced to recognize that **Sunday is not a day of God's appointment... It has no foundation in Scripture, but has arisen entirely as a result of custom,**" says Frank H. Yost, Ph.D. in *The Early Christian Sabbath*.³⁵⁰*

This is still the "case" today unfortunately. GOD never removed the *blessing of the seventh day as the Sabbath Day*, how does the "church" receive this authority? Maybe because the Popes *claim* they are GOD on earth or represent GOD on earth as "Vicar of Christ"?

³⁴⁹ i.b.i.d

³⁵⁰ i.b.i.d.

GOD gave all humankind the **Sabbath as a sign** between Him and humankind to be Set-Apart (Holy) to Him. The Day of Shabbat leads the Way for the observance of all the days of GOD's Feasts³⁵¹. Shabbat is a weekly observance instruction by YHVH, because it had been Set-Apart by Him where the other Feast Days are yearly observance Instructions set by GOD Himself to keep to *honour* Him.

"I gave them my shabbats as a sign between me and them, so that they would know that I, Adonai, am the one who makes them holy." (CJB Ezek 20:12)³⁵²

Shabbat is the **sign** to keep GOD's seventh day of the week Holy (not any other day) and to obey His Word by keeping it Set-Apart from the other days! This sign is the "wedding ring" of His Set-Apart people from GOD when the people gave the yes answer at Mount Sanai for accepting His Torah (given by YHVH to the Patriachs). The seed of the Patriarch Ya'acov (Yisra'El – from the seed of Avraham) accepted GOD's Torah and believers in the same GOD of the Patriarchs should accept the Torah in faith like they have:

"This is the genealogy of Yeshua the Messiah, son of David, son of Avraham:" (CJB Matt 1:1)

"Moreover, I (Yeshua) tell you that many will come from the east and from the west to take their places at the feast in the Kingdom of Heaven with Avraham, Yitz'chak and Ya`akov." (CJB Matt 8:11)

"You will cry and grind your teeth when you see Avraham, Yitz'chak, Ya`akov and all the Prophets inside the Kingdom of God, but yourselves thrown outside." (CJB Luke 13:28)

Shabbat has never been changed by GOD since the *institution* of the Shabbat by GOD (Gen 2:3). YHVH is Salvation (Yahshua) on earth explained what Avraham said thousands of years before the Messiah came down from Heaven how GOD promised His oath³⁵³ and Covenant³⁵⁴ to Avraham and how to know the truth:

³⁵¹ Lev 23:2

³⁵² Gen 1:14 for the start of the day, thus also Sabbath Day.

³⁵³ Luke 1:73

³⁵⁴ Luke 1:72

*"But Avraham said, '**They have Moshe and the Prophets** (Torah); they should listen to them.' However, he said, 'No, father Avraham, they need more. If someone from the dead goes to them, they will repent!' But he replied, '**If they won't listen to Moshe and the Prophets, they won't be convinced even if someone rises from the dead!**'"* (CJB Luke 16:29-31)

Shabbat was made Holy (Set-Apart) in the Torah by YHVH the Creator and the Prophets like Ezekial writes how to honour the Torah (like Shabbat) in every day's life by **honouring** GOD. GOD surely did not give His Torah to be *labelled* as a "legalistic system" and the Word in Flesh also did not *pervert the Torah into legalism*, because YHVH is a GOD of love and mercy.

Therefore Yahshua said if a person wants to be a *child* of Avraham, then that person should do what Avraham did:

"They answered him, "Our father is Avraham." Yeshua replied, "If you are children of Avraham, then do the things Avraham did!" (CJB John 8:39)

Yahshua definitely did not say it to imply "legalism", but surely to imply to know wrong from right, to receive wisdom and knowledge from Torah as the *seed* of Avraham; to know righteousness from unrighteousness.³⁵⁵

To be a child of Avraham and to do the *things* Avraham did, believers in the GOD of Avraham should keep the Covenant of Shabbat like Avraham and all his descendants (seed) kept it. It should be kept forever, because the Covenant was made for all generations:

*"You are the sons of the rophets; and you are included in the Covenant which God made with our fathers when he said to Avraham, '**By your seed will all the families of the earth be blessed.**'"* (CJB Acts 3:25)

*"Tell the people of Isra'el, 'You are to observe my Shabbats; for this is a sign between me and you **through all your generations**; so that you will know that I*

³⁵⁵ Gal 4:20-31

*am Adonai, who sets you apart for me. Therefore you are to keep my Shabbat, **because it is set apart for you.**" (CJB Exo 31:13-14a)*

For interest sake, while on the subject of Avraham, the **Gospel** started with Avraham in the TaNaKh already and the origin of it was not in the Messianic Writings³⁵⁶ like most Christian believers *think*. This thinking is because of the lack-of-knowledge and lack of education of *interpreting the Word*; lack of Biblical Exegesis. This was confirmed by Sha'ul in the Book of Galatians:

"I will make of you a great nation, I will bless you, and I will make your name great; and you are to be a blessing. I will bless those who bless you, but I will curse anyone who curses you; and by you all the families of the earth will be blessed."
(CJB Gen 12:2-3)

*"Be assured, then, that it is those who live by trusting and being faithful who are really children of Avraham. Also the **Tanakh**, foreseeing that God would consider the Gentiles righteous when they live by trusting and being faithful, **told the Good News (Gospel) to Avraham in advance by saying**, "In connection with you, all the Goyim will be blessed." So then, those who rely on trusting and being faithful are blessed along with Avraham, **who trusted and was faithful.**" (CJB Gal 3:7-9)*

Day of Shabbat is a Holy (Set-Apart) Day made by YHVH the Creator, Set-Apart for people believing in Him, people who follow His Way³⁵⁷. The Shabbat, which is part of the Torah, is part of the **Covenant** God made with the House of Ya'acov, the *children* of Yisra'El. Yisra'El must always listen to **GOD's Covenant** to know that those who listen to Him will be His Set-Apart nation:

*"Moshe went up to God, and Adonai called to him from the mountain: "Here is what you are to say to the **household of Ya`akov, to tell the people of Isra'el:** Now if you will pay careful attention to what I say **and keep my covenant**, then you will be **My own treasure from among all the peoples**, for all the earth is*

³⁵⁶ In detail explanation is given by Prof Wimpie from HRTI in his book Ephesians. www.hrti.co.za

³⁵⁷ ECB Exo 18:20: "and enlighten them statutes and torahs and have them know **the Way** to walk and the work to work:" CJB Acts 22:4: "I (Sha'ul) persecuted to death the **followers of this Way**, arresting both men and women and throwing them in prison." CJB Acts 24:14: "**But this I (Sha'ul) do admit to you:** I worship the God of our fathers in accordance with **the Way** (which they call a sect). I continue to believe everything that accords with the Torah and everything written in the Prophets."

mine; and **you will be a kingdom of cohanim (priests) for Me, a nation Set Apart.**' These are the words you are to speak to the people of Isra'el." (CJB Exo 19:3, 5-6)

GOD's Covenant may never be broken just as *YHVH is Salvation* taught the people while He was on earth. It is better not to have known the **Holy Torah** of GOD than turning away from the **Holy Torah** given to mankind. Shabbat was created Holy by GOD Himself and it was written in His Torah.

*"For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world **through the knowledge of the Master and Saviour Yahshua the Messiah**, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning. **For it had been better for them not to have known the Way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the Holy Commandment delivered unto them.**" (WOY 2 Pet 2:20-21)*

This may be the reason why so many people teach and preach the Torah does not exist anymore? The reason *perversion of Torah as legalism* is preached, **to try and nullify sin?**

The Torah has been given to humankind for guidance, direction and protection and never was it mentioned in the complete BIBLE (Word of GOD) that it is "*legalistic*" when observing the Torah. Matter of fact, it is quite the opposite. The Torah of GOD should not be a burden to people and the yoke³⁵⁸ of the Torah light, which is the *Word of GOD in Flesh*. His yoke is light and not burdensome:

*"For everyone **who depends on legalistic observance** of Torah commands **lives under a curse**, since it is written, **"Cursed is everyone who does not keep on doing everything written in the Scroll of the Torah"** (CJB Gal 3:10)*

*"For as many as are **out of apart from the works** of the law **are under the curse**: for it is written, **Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.**" (WOY Gal 3:10)*

³⁵⁸ Strong's (KJV+) G2218: From the root of ζεύγνυμι Zeugnumi (to join, especially by a "yoke"); a coupling, that is, (figuratively) servitude (a law or obligation); also (literally) the beam of the balance (as connecting the scales): - pair of balances, yoke.

Day of Sabbath (Shabbat) was given in Torah from GOD through His Word as an everlasting Command, His yoke that should not be burdensome. Why did the "church" (by authority of the church) change this yoke of GOD to a *perversion of legalism*? No church or man has been given the authority to change what is written in the Creator's Word.

This is exactly what the Author of Galatians try to say, not to tie the yoke to slavery or paganism:

"What the Messiah has freed us for is freedom! Therefore, stand firm, and don't let yourselves be tied up again to a yoke of slavery." (CJB Gal 5:1)

The Apostles teach the same in Acts when they tell the people that the yoke they were taught is light and not burdensome. Why do people make this yoke burdensome and heavy:

"[So] Now therefore why tempt [test] ye God [Elohim], to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear?" (ERRB Acts 15:10)

Shabbat is on the last day of the week, which is the seventh day of the week, which is on the Saturday as per the secular calendar. Sabbath is not on Sunday originated from *Roman-Catholic Christianity*, which is a *doctrine of man* continued by Protestant Christianity and Calvinism Christianity. There is no Scriptural proof of the change of the Sabbath.

This change became *reality* because of *personal interpretation* of GOD's Prophecy and because the Torah of GOD was *set aside* and not *Set-Apart*. It is time again to *Set-Apart* GOD's Day and be a *Set-Apart* nation to Him by honouring GOD through a *Set-Apart convocation* on *Shabbat*, the last day of the week, from *sundown* Friday to *sundown* Saturday³⁵⁹.

³⁵⁹ AESV Gen 1:5: "**There was evening and there was morning, one day.**" Gen 1:8: "**There was evening and there was morning, a second day.**" Gen 1:13: "**There was evening and there was morning, a third day.**" Etc. This was how GOD created the day.

A warning has to be given to the world that a *National Sunday Law*³⁶⁰ is going to be established in America and enforced unto people. If this might be the case, it should be even more obvious to believers that the Saturday Sabbath change took place. If this law is enforced in the USA then it will not be long before it is law in every other country in the world. People have to be aware of the warnings also given in the Book of Revelation.

The seventh (7th) day is the day when the Creator rested **and** He made it Holy with the inauguration by GOD Himself to the *Day of the Sabbath* (Yom Shabbat). The Creator even called it His Set-Apart Day for all humankind to be Set-Apart to Him for *all generations*.

Man creation created by GOD the Creator was not given the authority to change the rest Day of the Creator to a *man-made* doctrine "*Lord's [Sun]day*". This change was not mentioned by GOD in His Word?³⁶¹ The complete BIBLE is ultimately the Word given by GOD!

Warning from the Word of GOD from the Book of Revelation:

*"And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon. **And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast**, whose deadly wound was healed. **And he doeth great wonders**, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men, **And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast**; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live. **And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed.**"*
(WOY Rev 13:11-15)

³⁶⁰ Warning the World about the Coming National Sunday Law, Specialty Interests - http://www.specialtyinterests.net/sunday_law_warning.html#wibf; 05/09/2014.

³⁶¹ Chapter 2 explained the possibility and reasons why changes like this could happen, because of poor Exegesis, because the Word of GOD is not seen literal from Him and because self-interpretation of the Word of GOD is taken as correct and not the Word of GOD is used to interpret text.

Who is this *beast* GOD is warning mankind against that will lead people astray to worship a *beast* that will *blasphemy* the Creator GOD in many ways?

*"Then I saw a **beast rising up out of the sea**. It had seven heads and ten horns, with ten crowns on its horns. And written on each head were names that **blasphemed God**."* (NLT Rev 13:1)

Daily questions are asked when people hear reasons from Scripture regarding the *Saturday Sabbath* like, but how is it possible that so many people in the world could be wrong in following the *Sunday worship day*? Can it be possible that so many people could be wrong in observing the *Sunday worship*, which is called an *hour-day-of-worship* by Dr. Samuele Bacchiocchi³⁶²? It is actually a perfect description as it is what this *Set-Apart Day* of GOD became, an *hour-day-of-worship* and not a complete day of Set-Apartness to GOD.

There are numerous texts in all of the TaNaKh and Messianic Writings that *interpret* (give) answers to the above questions, but let's see what immediate texts say in the Book of Revelation:

*"One of the heads of the beast appeared to have received a fatal wound, but its fatal wound was healed, and **the whole earth followed after the beast** in amazement."* (CJB Rev 13:4)

*"It opened its mouth to utter **blasphemies against God, blaspheming His Name and His dwelling (tabernacle)**, that is, **those who dwell in heaven**."* (ESV Rev 13:6)

*"It was **allowed to make war on God's holy people and to defeat them**; and it was **given authority over every tribe, people, language and nation**."* (CJB Rev 13:7)

³⁶² From Sabbath to Sunday: A Historical Investigation of the Rise of Sunday Observance in Early Christianity; The Pontifical Gregorian University Press Rome 1977; 372 pages.

"Everyone living on earth will worship it except those whose names are written in the Book of Life belonging to the Lamb slaughtered before the world was founded." (CJB Rev 13:8)

"It exercises all the authority of the first beast in its presence; and it makes the earth and its inhabitants worship the first beast, the one whose fatal wound had been healed." (CJB Rev 13:12)

"It deceives the people living on earth by the miracles it is allowed to perform in the presence of the beast, and it tells them to make an image honouring the beast that was struck by the sword but came alive again." (CJB Rev 13:14)

"Also it forces everyone — great and small, rich and poor, free and slave — to receive a mark on his right hand or on his forehead" (CJB Rev 13:16)

People so easily forget the Words of GOD to walk by His Way of Life and that this Way is exactly the Way the Word walked on earth. HaMashiach was without sin by *walking and talking* exactly what was spoken by Him in His Word from the beginning. The Word that spoke the Torah of GOD (Law of GOD) to keep them for all generations is the Word HaMashiach *walked-and-talked*, without neglecting or discarding the *least*³⁶³ of His own Commandments. Yahshua never *perverted the Torah as legalism*.

Since the "Groom" (Husband / Man / Messiah) has to take His "Bride" (wife / woman / Israel) to *love* and to cherish, must the *Bride* also *love* and cherish the Groom in the same manner and Ways.

"I, to my Beloved; and my Beloved³⁶⁴, to me;" (ECB Song of Songs 6:3)

"Anee l'dodi v'dodi lee"³⁶⁵

³⁶³ Matt 5:19; Luke 16:17: "But that doesn't mean that the law has lost its force. It is easier for heaven and earth to disappear than for the smallest point of God's law to be overturned."

³⁶⁴ Strong's Dictionary: **H1730** – דָּוָדָה - דָּוָדָה - dōd: From an unused root meaning properly to *boil*, that is, (figuratively) **to love**; by implication **a love token, lover, friend**; specifically an *uncle*: - (well-) beloved, father's brother, love, uncle.

³⁶⁵ I am to my Beloved and my Beloved is to me, Ohr Chadash - <http://thetrugmans.com/978/i-am-to-my-beloved-and-my-beloved-is-to-me/>; 05/09/2014.

Torah Attitude: I am to my Beloved and my Beloved is to me, Shema Yisrael Torah Network - <http://www.shemayisrael.com/parsha/kahn/archives/kisavo66.htm>; 05/09/2014.

GOD (YHVH is Salvation) is the *Beloved* of the *Bridesmaid* (the believer) and the believer is the beloved to GOD. GOD had *Set-Apart* His Holy Day to mankind and even He was *Set-Apart* on this last day of the week, the seventh (7th) day, therefore should *His people* also *Set-Apart* this day as their *Beloved* did.

Shabbat (Day of the Sabbath) was since the beginning a weekly reminder of this special relationship with the Creator GOD, for being the *Beloved* to the believer, knowing the *Beloved* will come to take His *beloved* to be His *beloved*. King and Prophet Sh'lomo (Solomon) describes this beautiful *marriage* between a husband and wife in GOD's Writings and this verse is the **sum** of such a marriage.

Love GOD with all the heart, soul, might and being is what Deut 10:12 commands and many many more verses in the BIBLE. How can the Holy and Set-Apart Command in the Torah be misunderstood or be abolished if it was given by GOD the Creator Himself out of love to His beloved and said to keep / guard it to *love* Him and *honour* Him back with *everything* possible within the human body?

Love is the most well-known symbol of the heart and it is the most powerful of human emotions³⁶⁶, but it seems that it is forgotten when it comes to the love of the Creator.

GOD gives answers in His Word given literal and direct to mankind:

"This is where wisdom is needed; those who understand should count the number of the beast, for it is the number of a person, and its number is 666." (CJB Rev 13:18)

"These are the ones who have not defiled themselves with women, for they are virgins; they follow the Lamb wherever he goes; they have been ransomed from among humanity as firstfruits for God and the Lamb; on their lips no lie was found — they are without defect." (CJB Rev 14:4-5)

Is the last day of the week, the seventh (7th) day of GOD, the Shabbat (Day of Sabbath) a Command from GOD a lie / falsehood or is the Sunday worship installed and established by man, a doctrine of man a lie / falsehood?

³⁶⁶ The Jewish Heart; http://www.chabad.org/theJewishWoman/article_cdo/aid/424441/jewish/The-Jewish-Heart.htm; 05/09/2014.

People speak of the Sabbath as the Spiritual war of the future. The researcher sees this war in process already.

Yod-Hey-Vav-Hey (YHVH) the Creator made *one day* Holy and it was the *Sabbath Day*, the seventh (7th) day and **He said** it is His day – the *day of Adonai*. Surely GOD is the Aleph and the Tav, the first and the last; and He said in Revelation that on *His day* His voice will sound loud as a shofar (trumpet):

"I came to be, in the Spirit, on the Day of the Lord; and I heard behind me a loud voice, like a trumpet," (CJB Rev 1:10)

If only Scripture (Sola Scripture) is taken as the Word of GOD, it is acknowledged that only one day is Set-Apart to GOD and that this day is "*the day of the Lord*", which is the *Creation of GOD*; the seventh (7th) day – the *Day of Sabbath*:

"For just as the new heavens and the new earth that I am making will continue in my presence," says Adonai, "so will your descendants and your name continue".
"Every month on Rosh-Hodesh and every week on Shabbat, everyone living will come to worship in my presence," says Adonai." (CJB Isa 66:22-23)

☆ DAYS OF THE WEEK

The days of the week started from the first moment GOD created the first day. YHVH is actually the Creator of all creation that exists. Man could not and did not create a day³⁶⁷ or

³⁶⁷ Secular Weekday Name	Hebrew "Name"	Hebrew Meaning
Sunday	Yom Reeshone	First day
Monday	Yom Shaynee	Second day
Tuesday	Yom Shlee'shee	Third day
Wednesday	Yom Revee'ee	Fourth day
Thursday	Yom Khah'mee'shee	Fifth day
Friday	Yom Ha'shee'shee	Sixth day
Saturday	Shabbat	Rest

created the start of the day, no definitely not. YHVH created the start of the day during His creation exactly in order. Humankind has absolutely no authority to change a day or to announce the start of the day if the Almighty Elohim did not instruct it to do so!

God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. So there was evening, and there was morning, one day. (CJB Gen 1:5)

God saw everything that he had made, and indeed it was very good. So there was evening, and there was morning, a sixth day. (CJB Gen 1:31)

A sixth day says the Word of Elohim, and He saw **everything** that he created, **including the days**, was very good. YHVH also said that if He wanted anything to be changed or added to His Word, He would have then told it to His Council, the Prophets, His Servants to do so and that would have been written in the BIBLE, for everyone to know!

Adonai, God, does nothing without revealing His plan to His servants the Prophets. (CJB Amos 3:7)

Surely Adonay Yah Veh works no word; unless He exposes His private Counsel to his servants the Prophets. (ECB Amos 3:7)

There are people that still believe everything could not have been made in only those six days. How great is GOD then dear beloved? YHVH could have made everything in one (1) day or even in an instant; that is how great He is. History is given to mankind not to disregard or to reject the past, but to remember and to learn from the past.

"Here is the history of the heavens and the earth when they were created. On the day when Adonai, God, made earth and heaven," (CJB Gen 2:4)

He created the seven days for us as human beings to have a week and to calculate time. YHVH even created the months, but again did *man* change the format and names of the months.

THE PASACH: And Yah Veh says to Mosheh and Aharon in the land of Misrayim, saying, This month is the **head of months to you** - the **first month of the year to you**: (ECB Exo 12:1-2)

People are easy to believe a pastor or preacher that stands *high and mighty* above the congregation in a *church* and teaches people *Christmas* is the feast to honour GOD and the Sabbath do not have to be the seventh day anymore. And the first (1st) day of the year is the 1st of *January* or the days were different then than it is currently, which can nowhere be found in the Word of YHVH (the Holy BIBLE). Evidence is right in front of every reader's eyes, but too blinded to see.

The BIBLE must actually be the only Book that should not be used to make *man's* own interpretation, because it comes from the Father of all, YHVH the Creator.³⁶⁸ Again is it worth to mention that because of personal interpretation deviation hit humankind hard and thousands of different religions exist today.

Man differed from one another and split away from an existing group and started a new sect with followers, because they differ from Scripture interpretation. Evidently it is because people do not *return* back to the *ancient roots* where the *good Way is*: "the literal Word of YHVH"³⁶⁹.

*"The seven-day system we use is based on the ancient astrological notion that the seven known **celestial bodies influence what happens on Earth** and that each of these celestial bodies controls the first hour of the day named after it. This system was brought into Hellenistic Egypt from Mesopotamia, **where astrology had been practiced** for millennia and where seven had always been a propitious number. In A.D. 321 the Emperor Constantine the Great grafted this astrological system onto the Roman calendar, made the first day of this new week a day of rest and worship for all, and imposed the following sequence and names to the days of the week. This new Roman system was adopted with modifications throughout most of western Europe: in the Germanic languages,*

³⁶⁸ 2 Pet 1:19-21

³⁶⁹ Rev 19:13; Jer 6:16

such as *Old English*, the **names of four of the Roman gods** were converted into those of the corresponding **Germanic gods**.³⁷⁰

"The Latin names for the weekdays survive in the modern Romans languages (though the weekend day names have been altered). Also, Japanese words for the days of the week also correspond indirectly to the same planets.

However, Prof. Neves of Universidade Nova de Lisboa informs me that there are remarkable exceptions: at least in Hebrew, in Greek, in Arabic, and in Portuguese (and in languages that were informed by those, like the Timorese Tetum), **the days of the week are numbered. Sunday is number one** (or day of the Lord in Portuguese - Domingo- and in Greek -Kiriaki). Friday is number six (except in Arabic, which calls it Day of the Gathering) and all 4 languages call **Sabbath (Sabado,as-Sabt, etc) to Saturday**.³⁷¹

It looks like Constantine was a very busy character. He was involved with almost all of the changes within the church against the BIBLE. He was in fact the pope in his time. During his reign or time he changed the names of the days. The names of the months changed. He changed the sequence of the days by changing the day of rest. The start of the year changed. The **Feast Days** changed and pagan feast days were again implemented into Christianity which he legalized with the start of the Roman-Catholic Christianity, where he made the Torah null-and-void (disregarded the Torah as not applicable after the death of Iesous, his fellow countrymen in the time of HaMashiach did not even know the Messiah). He then "fired-up" Anti-Semitism again amongst believers by persecuting anyone who practices Judaism in public and in private, and anyone who went to a Synagogue.

³⁷⁰ The Days of the Week, Solar Mythology - <http://www.solarmythology.com/daysofweek.htm>; 26/09/2014.

Celestial Body	Latin	Germanic god	modern English	modern Italian
Sun	Solis		Sunday	domenica
Moon	Lunae		Monday	lunedì
Mars	Martis	Tiu	Tuesday	martedì
Mercury	Mercurii	Wodan	Wednesday	mercoledì
Jupiter	Jovis	Donar	Thursday	giovedì
Venus	Veneris	Freya	Friday	venerdì
Saturn	Saturni		Saturday	sabato

³⁷¹ Days of the Week, Nine Planets - <http://nineplanets.org/days.html>; 24/06/2014. Saturday to Satuday or Sabbath to Sabbath, therefore he said Sabbath to Satuday.

All of the changes formed part of the plan of Constantine and he did what is necessary to encourage people to be part of his new legislated *Christianity*, and this sect grew rapidly (a huge contribution was "force"). It also grew far apart from the true Sect, the *Sect of the Way of the Nazarene* of Yahshua HaMashich (which Sha'ul was part of).

Continuing with the week days, according to the Strong's (KJV+) numbers: the word *day* in Greek has almost the same meaning to that of Hebrew (Strong's H3117):

G2250 – ἡμέρα

hēmera – hay-mer'-ah: Feminine (with G5610 implied) of a derivative of ἡμαί hēmai (to sit; akin to the base of G1476) meaning tame, that is, gentle; day, that is, (literally) the time space between dawn and dark, or the whole 24 hours (but several days were usually reckoned by the Jews as inclusive of the parts of both extremes); figuratively a period (always defined more or less clearly by the context): - age, + alway, (mid-) day (by day, [-ly]), + for ever, judgement, (day) time, while, years.

What is very obvious is the fact that the *days of the week*, which is called *Theon hemerai*, was given according to the *days of the gods*:

*The Greeks called the days of the week the **Theon hemerai** "days of the Gods". The Romans substituted their equivalent **gods for the Greek gods**, Mars, Mercury, Jove (Jupiter), Venus, and Saturn. (The two pantheons are very similar.) The Germanic peoples generally substituted roughly similar **gods for the Roman gods**, Tiu (Twia), Woden, Thor, Freya (Fria), but did not substitute Saturn.³⁷²*

It is a living fact that the days of the week have been changed and named after gods, just like the months of the year, which is **idolatry to GOD the Creator**. Life is according to these *given names by man*, but therefore GOD gave His Word of truth to humankind to guide, direct and protect everyone from falsehoods / lies; living towards truth wherever humankind finds themselves in their homelands according His Word.

If the Sabbath is the seventh day of the week, which is the last day of the week – Saturday, then Sunday is in fact the first day of the week, which is originally Yom Reshon.

³⁷² The Naming of the Days, Lawrence Crowl - <http://www.crowl.org/lawrence/time/days.html>; 24/06/2014.

If this is true then people are commanded to adhere to the Commands of GOD. It is even added as the fourth (4th) Commandment in the Ten Commandments of GOD, which forms part of the whole Torah (Law)³⁷³ to direct and guide³⁷⁴ people to love and to protect people from doing sin³⁷⁵.

Yahshua the Messiah, the direct literal Word of Yah, said to be able to believe in Him, people must believe in Moshe and also in everything Moshe Wrote. Surely Moshe Wrote the Word saying the seventh day is the holy Sabbath Day as well as GOD's holy day. Believers in Yahshua ought to take these Words serious and start knowing the Torah Moshe Wrote from GOD's Word³⁷⁶. If not, then falsehoods and lies will be followed and the truth will not be known and people will be left without GOD together with murderers, people involved with occults, idol-worshipper and all those Torahless people³⁷⁷.

To know how to love the only GOD Creator comes from the Torah and the Prophets³⁷⁸ in the TaNaKh³⁷⁹; by knowing the Torah and the Prophets people will know how to change their hearts from evil and sin to righteousness and knowing the forgiveness of sins with the Messiah as the Witness, because it was His Word spoken.

"And that teaching about a change of heart and forgiveness of sins is to be given to Jerusalem first and to all nations in His name." (BBE Luke 24:47)

The Word of GOD gave the Word to the Prophets and it seems Yahshua just confirmed the Word given to the Prophets:

*"and listen to what my servants the Prophets, whom I send to you, say — I have sent them frequently, but you **have not** listened —" (CJB Jer 26:5)*

"Certainly the Lord will do nothing without making clear His secret to His servants, the Prophets." (BBE Amos 3:7)

³⁷³ Matt 22:40

³⁷⁴ 2 Tim 3:16-17

³⁷⁵ Rom 13:10

³⁷⁶ John 5:45-47

³⁷⁷ Rev 22:14-15

³⁷⁸ Luke 24:44

³⁷⁹ Luke 24:45. The only Scripts that were available in the time of Yahshua were the Scripts from the Hebrew TaNaKh. No N.T. or Messianic Writings were available at their time of preaching, it was only compelled decades after it was preached and taught.

The truth is that Sunday is not the Sabbath Day according to GOD, but *man* changed the order of the days of the week, and above all did *man change* the names even to *pagan gods*. The only reason the researcher sees fit, is to confuse believers of which day is the Sabbath Day and of which day, if any, should be kept Set-Apart (holy) as the worship day.

The Spiritual warfare to be reckoned with is: "the Day of the Sabbath".

Sabbath clearly originated from *Yom Shebi'i*, which is from the *seventh day*, which is Saturday in today's secular world according to the Gregorian calendar, named after *Saturn* the *god of agriculture*. This confirms [Sun]day worship is not the Set-Apart (holy) convocation worship day of the Lord, which He demanded people to keep the Set-Apart day as a Set-Apart nation for Him.

Man can change names as much as they want, but the order of GOD is unchangeable. This is where Matthew and Mark gave explicit Instructions to protect believers from falsehoods and lies to follow *commandments / rules / doctrines of man* when people do not have the knowledge of the Torah of GOD. People will be lead away from the truth and it will cause *"the blind to follow the blind"*³⁸⁰ and *traditions of man* will be followed, and the **Torah of GOD will be nullified (avoided) or set aside and not Set-Apart.**

"He answered, "Indeed, why do you break the command of God by your tradition? then he is rid of his duty to honour his father or mother.' Thus by your tradition you make null-and-void the Word of GOD! Their worship of me is useless, because they teach man-made rules as if they were doctrines."" (CJB Matt 15:3, 6, 9)³⁸¹

It is a demand of the Word of YHVH to take His Word like a child from the Father as truth and believe in Him³⁸². GOD's Word cannot be changed which He commanded for **eternity** and GOD will not contradict His own Word.

Elohim is a Jealous GOD and He wants to be honoured as the only GOD by His created days given by Him. People need to be His Set-Apart people like He is Set-Apart, by starting to keep His Set-Apart Times.

³⁸⁰ Matt 15:14

³⁸¹ Mark 7:7-9

³⁸² Matt 18:6-7

☆ EASTER

Easter is also a *doctrine of man* originating also from the pagan worshipping, started with Astarte or Eostre. It is also a *tradition of man* kept for over a thousand years by churches and believers, which does not originate from the Word of GOD to be kept as the truth.

This dissertation involves a proper research on the Sabbath and Sunday, and most of the research showed facts to decide which day is the Set-Apart Day of GOD. The same facts from the BIBLE can be used to decide if *Easter* or Pesach is a Feast of GOD to keep. The BIBLE explains and describes that GOD's Appointed Feasts should be honoured.³⁸³



All the Feasts of GOD must still be honoured and kept; because He said many times they are commanded to keep them **forever** and for **all generations**.

It was given different names from the second century by pagan churches. The website that is cited can be researched by the reader to know the facts of history:

"At the beginning of the second century, another church, claiming to represent Christ's true church, introduced a new festival in place of the Passover called the "Feast of the Resurrection".³⁸⁴

It is not a celebration commanded by GOD or by the Word in Flesh, but still *early church fathers* kept the pagan feasts, and it was continued by most churches.

"There was violent conflict on Vatican Hill in the early days of Christianity between the Jesus worshippers and pagans who quarrelled over whose God was the true, and whose the imitation. What is interesting to note here is that in the ancient world, wherever you had popular resurrected god myths, Christianity found lots of

³⁸³ Lev 23; Num 28; Deut 28; Exo 34:18-24

³⁸⁴ How did Christianity get involved with this Pagan Festival? Christian Assemblies International - <http://www.cai.org/bible-studies/easter>; 24/06/2014.

converts. So, eventually Christianity came to an accommodation with the pagan Spring festival. Although we see no celebration of Easter in the New Testament, early church fathers celebrated it, and today many churches are offering "sunrise services" at Easter – an obvious pagan solar celebration."³⁸⁵

All customs with Easter are from *pagan origin*, which are obviously against the worship of GOD, which includes the *bunnies, hot cross buns* and the *exchanging of eggs*, which forms part of the Spring Equinox.

*"All the fun things about Easter are pagan. Bunnies are a leftover from the pagan festival of Eostre, a great northern goddess whose symbol was a rabbit or hare. Exchange of eggs is an ancient custom, celebrated by many cultures. Hot cross buns are very ancient too. In the Old Testament we see the Israelites baking sweet buns for an idol, and religious leaders trying to put a stop to it. The early church clergy also tried to put a stop to sacred cakes being baked at Easter. In the end, in the face of defiant cake-baking pagan women, they gave up and blessed the cake instead."*³⁸⁶

The Council of Nicaea also established the set date of this festival. It is interesting to note that most of the pagan traditions were adopted by the *Greek Roman-Catholic Christianity* and still to-date is celebrated by most of the Protestantism (Calvinism included) Christianity.

*"In 325CE the Council of Nicaea **established** that Easter would be held on the first Sunday after the first full moon occurring on or after the vernal equinox. **From that point forward**, the Easter date depended on the ecclesiastical approximation of March 21 for the vernal equinox."*³⁸⁷

Easter's original existence came from the time of Nimrod, a son of Noah in Genesis Chapter 10, who blasphemed GOD's Name and GOD's Way. From here originate also the tree of Christmas as well as the set date of the birth Tammuz, 25th December.

³⁸⁵ The Pagan Roots of Easter, TIP News: Digital News Aggregate - <http://topinfopost.com/2014/04/20/the-pagan-roots-of-easter>; 25/06/2014.

³⁸⁶ The pagan roots of Easter, The Guardian - <http://www.theguardian.com/commentisfree/belief/2010/apr/03/easter-pagan-symbolism>; 25/06/2014.

³⁸⁷ Setting the Easter date, Time and Date - <http://www.timeanddate.com/calendar/determining-easter-date.html>; 25/06/2014.

Interesting also is that **most of the pagan worshipping started at the Tower of Babel, the origin of Babilon**, the idolatrous system against GOD. Here Queen Easter / Ishtar (Semiramis) the *Mother Goddess* and Nimrod also started with their pagan worship and carried on by the non-believer Israelites and ungodly people³⁸⁸. Easter then originated from the name Ishtar. She was also worshipped as the *goddess of fertility*.

Other names for Semiramis include Astarte (Cyprus), Diana (Ephesus and throughout Asia Minor), Cybele (Asia Minor), Isis (Egypt), Aphrodite, Ceres (Greece), Venus or Fortuna (Romans).

Christians still keep this feast because of misinterpretation and lack-of-knowledge. It was around this time that King Herod began to arresting and persecuting certain members of the Messianic community:

"and he had Ya`akov, Yochanan's brother, put to death by the sword. When Herod saw how much this pleased the Judeans, he went on to arrest Kefa as well. It was during the Days of Matzah, so when Herod seized him, he threw him in prison, handing him over to be guarded by four squads of four soldiers each, with the intention of bringing him to public trial after Pesach." (CJB Acts 12:2-4)

What does the King James Version say?

"And because he saw it pleased the Jews, he proceeded further to take Peter also. (Then were the days of unleavened bread.) And when he had apprehended him, he put him in prison, and delivered him to four quaternions of soldiers to keep him; intending after Easter to bring him forth to the people." (KJV Acts 12:3-4)

G3957 – πάσχα – pascha:

Of Chaldee origin (compare [H6453]); the Passover (the meal, the day, the festival or the special sacrifices connected with it): - Easter, Passover.



³⁸⁸ Judges 2:13, Jeremiah 44:17-19

All the customs of Easter were adopted by *Christianity*, which was originally from pagan worship. This should be addressed by Christianity and correction should be made within their system, because believers will not keep on doing the **pagan festivals** and their customs when knowledge and wisdom of the truth arises.

Instead of endorsing Easter, this verse really proves that the church was still observing the supposedly Jewish Pesach (the three Feasts: Pesach, Unleavened Bread and First Fruits) ten years *after* the death of Yahshua! ³⁸⁹

3.14 TRINITY OR ECHAD

☆ YHVH IS YAH SHUA

"and every tongue will acknowledge that Yeshua the Messiah is Adonai — to the glory of God the Father." (CJB Php 2:11)

"and that every tongue should confess that Master YHVH is Y'shua the Mashiyach, to the glory of Elohim his Father" (AENT Php 2:11)

Yahshua is the Word of YHVH:

*"Some time later the **word of Adonai** came to Avram in a vision: "Don't be afraid, Avram. I am your protector; your reward will be very great."* (CJB Gen 15:1)

"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." (CJB John 1:1)

"And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his majesty, the majesty as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth." (WOY John 1:14)

YHVH and Yahshua is One – Simply Unitary One:

"I and the Father are one." (CJB John 10:30)

³⁸⁹ Bible Authority for Easter, The Restored Church of God - <http://rcg.org/books/ttooe.html>; 25/06/2014.

"Sh'ma, Yisra'el! Adonai Eloheinu, Adonai **Echad** [Hear, Isra'el! Adonai our God, Adonai is one];" (CJB Deut 6:4)

H259 יחַד – 'echâd:

A numeral from H258; properly united, that is, one; or (as an ordinal) first: - a, alike, alone, altogether, and, any (-thing), apiece, a certain [dai-] ly, each (one), + eleven, every, few, first, + highway, a man, once, one, only, other, some, together.

"Hear, Yisrael: Mar-Yah³⁹⁰ is our God; Mar-Yah is one:" (AESV TORAH Deut 6:4)

"HEAR, O ISRAEL: THE LORD OUR GOD, THE LORD IS ONE." (JPS Deut 6:4)

YHVH the Rock and Yahshua the Rock:

The Rock! His work is perfect, for all his ways are just. A trustworthy God who does no wrong, he is righteous and straight. (CJB Deut 32:4)

and they all drank the same drink from the Spirit — for they drank from a Spirit-sent Rock which followed them, and that Rock was the Messiah. (CJB 1 Cor 10:4)

He said: "Adonai is my Rock, my fortress and deliverer, (CJB 2 Sam 22:2)³⁹¹

May the words of my mouth and the thoughts of my heart be acceptable in your presence, Adonai, my Rock and Redeemer. (CJB Psa 19:15 (14))³⁹²

Art thou not from everlasting, O Yahweh my Elohim, mine Holy One? we shall not die. O Yahweh, thou hast ordained them for judgement; and, O mighty Rock, thou hast established them for correction. (WOY Hab 1:12)

Trust in Adonai forever, because in Yah Adonai, is a Rock of Ages." (CJB Isa 26:4)

³⁹⁰ Master YHVH

³⁹¹ 1 Sam 2:22; 2 Sam 22:32

³⁹² Ps 18:32 (31); Ps 61 and 62

Sanctify Yahweh of hosts himself; and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread. And he shall be for a sanctuary; **but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offence** to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem. (CJB Isa 8:13-14)

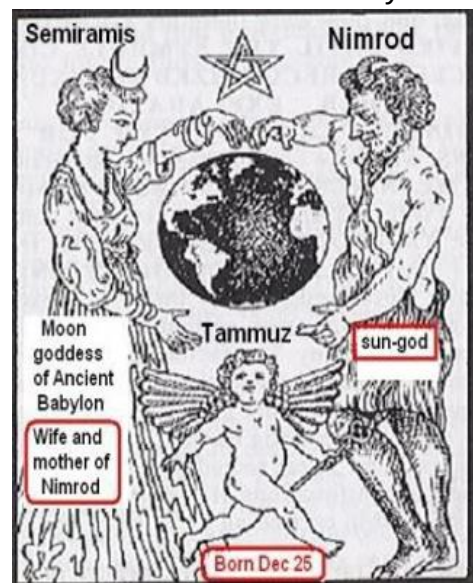
*This is why the Tanakh says, "Look! I am laying in Tziyon (Jerusalem) a stone, a chosen and precious cornerstone; and whoever rests his trust on it will certainly not be humiliated." Now to you who keep trusting, he is precious. But to those who are not trusting, "The very stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone"; also he is a stone that will make people stumble, **a rock over which they will trip**. They are stumbling at the Word, disobeying it — as had been planned. (1 Pet 2:6-8)*

☆ Origin of Trinity

There are many websites and material available regarding *Trinity*. There are even many people trying to prove a *Trinity* within the BIBLE with their *personal interpretation* from Scripture. There is no proof, absolutely nothing at all of the word *Trinity* in the Word of YHVH. This word has been "invented" by *man* and it does not come from YHVH the Creator.

Trinity's origin is also from the Greek's, started by the Roman-Catholic Christianity. This *doctrine of man* was kept by the Protestant Christianity who split away from the Roman-Catholics because of Scriptural differences and continued with the doctrine by the Calvinism Christianity.

According to the *Trinity* three (3) GODS exist, the 3-in-1 doctrine, which is not Biblical and not Scriptural. There is only ONE GOD, YHVH the Creator. Yahshua cannot be a GOD separate from the Creator GOD, then Scripture has it humankind has two (2) Masters.



<http://www.theweddingfeasts.com/another-lover/>

SERVING TWO ADONIM

*No one can serve **two adonim**: for either he hates the one and loves the other; or else he upholds the one and disesteems the other: you cannot serve Elohim and mammon. (ECB Matt 6:24)*

*"No one can serve **two masters**, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and money. (ESV Matt 6:24)*

Who does Strong's (KJV+) say are the two Masters or Adonai:

G2962 – *Kúrios* – *kurios*:

From kŭpos kuros (supremacy); supreme in authority, that is, (as noun) controller; by implication Mr. (as a respectful title): - God, Lord, Master, Sir.

YHVH also explicitly said in His Torah there is only One GOD and Strong's confirms this. Yahshua cannot be a GOD separate from YHVH, because then do many people serve two (2) GODS, which is Biblically wrong.

Trinity doctrine is false doctrine, and not Biblical truth.

Nimrod, Semiramis and Tammuz – THE TRINITY! This might well be the origin. All pagan religions have this trinity concept of the father, the mother and the son; exactly like we have here: Nimrod the father, Semiramis the mother and Tammuz the son. The very reason Roman-Catholic has GOD the father, Maria the mother and Iesous the Son.

There are excellent reading materials regarding these three pagan gods. The most important is that facts must correspond with what is written in the BIBLE, because the Word of YHVH is the only truth and the truth will be found from His Word only!

1. How the Mystery Religion was formulated – The Legacy of Nimrod – The Sun God Ba'al³⁹³
2. Babylonian Paganism Unplugged³⁹⁴

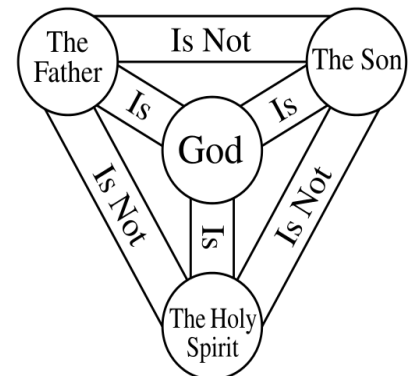
³⁹³ The Legacy of Nimrod – The Sun God Ba'al, Sabbath Covenant - <http://www.sabbathcovenant.com/book2MysteryReligionOfBabylon/Chapter1.htm>; 12/08/2014.

3. BIBLE Tools – Bible verses about Nimrod, Semiramis and Tammuz³⁹⁵
4. The Two Babylons – Trinity in Unity³⁹⁶

Here follow research regarding the *Trinity*:

The Word says there can be only One GOD. In no place in the whole BIBLE does it state that there are two (2) or three (3) GODS. There is One! The Father and I are One (Echad).

Research also proves that Trinity started *again* centuries after the Ascension of the Messiah from pagan Babylon. How can it be a Biblical "doctrine"? It is literally a "doctrine of man" inserted into a religion *legalized* by man (Roman-Catholic Christianity) and crafted within the *tradition of man* kept for ages by the *mainstream* believers.



Shield-Trinity-Scutum-Fidei-English.svg³⁹⁷

Babylon you were naughty, you were disobedient, and you made GOD a tri-unity and not One! Your unrighteousness will be delt with accordingly:

"BEAST AND PSEUDOPROPHET CAST INTO THE LAKE OF FIRE:

And the beast is seized; and with him the pseudoprophet who did signs in his sight; in which he seduced them who took the tattoo of the beast and them who worship his icon. These two are cast alive into a lake of fire burning in sulphur.

THE SLAUGHTER OF THE REST:

And the rest are slaughtered at the sabre of him sitting upon the horse, proceeding from his mouth: and all the fowls fill from their flesh." (ECB Rev 19:20-21)

"And the woman is arrayed in purple and scarlet and gilded with gold and precious stones and pearls; having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and

³⁹⁴ Babylonian Paganism Unplugged, Torah and Spirit - <http://www.torahandspirit.com.istemp.com/babylon.htm>; 12/08/2014.

³⁹⁵ Bible verses about Nimrod, Semiramis and Tammuz, Bibletools - <http://www.bibletools.org/index.cfm/fuseaction/Topical.show/RTD/cgg/ID/13148/Nimrod-Semiramis-Tammuz.htm>; 12/08/2014.

³⁹⁶ The Two Babylons: Alexander Hislop: Trinity in Unity, Bible Believers - <http://www.biblebelievers.com/babylon/sect21.htm>; Alexander Hislop; 12/08/2014.

³⁹⁷ Shield of the Trinity, Wikipedia - http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shield_of_the_Trinity; Shield of the Trinity; 12/08/2014.

*impurity of her whoredom: and on her forehead, a name scribed, MYSTERY!
BABEL THE MEGA THE MOTHER OF WHORES AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE
EARTH."* (ECB Rev 17:4-5)

All the above is Prophecy of GOD and Prophecy may not be self-interpreted, but the Word of YHVH is the only interpretation *man* may, can and must use:

SCRIPTURE PROPHECY:

*We also have a steadfast Word of prophecy; which you do well to heed, as to a light manifesting in an obscure place, until the day thoroughly dawn and the day phosphorescence arise in your hearts: knowing this first, **that not any prophecy of the scripture becomes by personal explanation:** for no prophecy was ever brought by the will of humanity: (ECB 2 Pet 1:19-21)*

Self-interpretation does not lead to truth, but Scripture interpretation will never fail the truth. Scripture must interpret Scripture when searching for the truth and to reveal the truth!

In the *Prolegomena*³⁹⁸ of the "Confessions of Augustine" is clearly cited that Augustine thinks there are three (3) persons in the Trinity concept, but evidently the Word says "I and the Father are one" and not two (2) or three (3).

3.15 INFANT BAPTISM

There is only one question that comes to mind here for the reader, if the BIBLE Prophecy prophesied that only the Way of the Messiah must be followed; to know righteousness and to be Set-Apart like Him. Was He "baptised" (immersed – submerged under the water) at an age where He knew the meaning of the Prophecy? Being *baptised* as an infant, did He know to **go** and make disciples? Why do some religions "believe" in "infant baptism"?

Did the Creator not say that every child from a mother's womb is a child of Him? Is He not the Creator of every child that is born?

³⁹⁸ "So when, for example, Augustine relies on the proposition that all truth is a function of Truth, and that Truth is identical with the **second person of the trinity**, and that Jesus **the carpenter's son is identical with that same person** - we offer at most a notional assent, but are compelled to interpret the idea to ourselves, rather than grasp it directly. Just when we are best at *explaining* Augustine, we are then perhaps furthest from his thought." <http://www.stoa.org/hippo/comm.html>; 15/09/2014.

Why is there then an *immersion* and why do people get baptised?

Every human being has to be *born again* to enter the Kingdom of GOD. It means every person should be born with *water and Ruach* who *trusts and believes* in Him, in everything He said of the world (earth) and the Heavens.

"Jesus [Yah Shua] answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say [Amen! Amen! I word] unto thee, Except a man [Unless one] be born [birthed] again [above], he cannot see the kingdom [sovereigndom] of God [Elohim]." (ERRB John 3:3)

People must leave the evil things of the world, which are the wicked things that leads to darkness and live according to the Light. The Light Yahshua that leads to righteousness and His Kingdom. What happens after this?

"After this, Yeshua and his talmidim went out into the countryside of Y'hudah, where he stayed awhile with them and immersed people. Yochanan too was immersing at Einayim, near Shalem, because there was plenty of water there; and people kept coming to be immersed." (CJB John 3:22-23)

Yahshua came to show us the Way, His Way, the Way of the Creator Father.³⁹⁹

This man came to Yeshua by night and said to him, "Rabbi, we know it is from God that you have come as a teacher; for no one can do these miracles you perform unless God is with him."

3.16 HOLY COW

Most of the research will come from the BIBLE regarding this topic, because interpretation must come from the BIBLE and referencing / citing must be confirmed with the BIBLE.

A person must ask him- or herself why the Creator gave *Instructions or Laws* (Torah) in His Word from His Mouth to Moshe **if it was not of use anymore** in *today's life*. The question here must be, are these [Instructions and Laws] (Torah) valid and must it form

³⁹⁹ Deut 10:12-13; Deut 18:18-19

part of the religious belief? As a believer in HaMashiach should it be necessary to start with Him:

*"But don't think that it is I (Yahshua) who will be your Accuser before the Father. **Do you know who will accuse you?** Moshe, the very one you have counted on! For if you really believed Moshe, you would believe Me; because it was about Me that he wrote. But if you don't believe what he wrote, how are you going to believe what I (Yahshua) say?" (CJB John 5:45-47)*

This says explicitly from the Mouth of Yahshua out of His Word that people need to believe Moshe and believe what Moshe Wrote to believe in Yahshua and what He said. It is evident by what Yahshua said, He observed (kept) and honoured the Torah. With this statement it must be applicacble to His dietary habbits as well. Another question must come to every reader's mind, what did Moshe say regarding this topic and during what time was / is it valid when Moshe Wrote the dietary Torah?

*I - Yah Veh your Elohim: **hallow yourselves and be holy**; I - holy: **foul not your souls with any teemer creeping on the earth**. Yah Veh who ascended you from the land of Misrayim, to become your Elohim: **so you become holy**; I - holy. This is the **Torah of the animals** and of the flyers and of every living soul creeping in the waters and of every soul teeming on the earth: to separate between the foul and between the pure and between the live being to eat and between the live being not to eat. (ECB Lev 11:44-47)*

*For I am Adonai your God; therefore, **consecrate yourselves and be holy**, for I am holy; **and do not defile yourselves with any kind of swarming creature that moves along the ground**. For I am Adonai, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt to be your God. **Therefore you are to be holy**, because I am holy."Such, then, is the **law concerning animals**, flying creatures, all living creatures that move about in the water, and all creatures that swarm on the ground. **Its purpose is to distinguish between the unclean and the clean, and between the creatures that may be eaten and those that may not be eaten.**' (CJB Lev 11:46-47)*

Moshe Wrote Leviticus and according to "YHVH is Salvation" HaMashiach is it part of His direct and literal Word, which is the Truth. Above are three literal reasons to obey what is written by Moshe, to guard and to honour the Words:

- 1) Yahshua said everyone who follows Him and who wants to believe in Him has to believe everything written by Moshe.
- 2) Moshe Wrote the words above in the Book of Leviticus.
- 3) First, the Word in Flesh gave the Command and second, YHVH spoke His Word direct to Moshe; both are the same Word written in the Word of YHVH (BIBLE).

A third question should stimulate the reader's mind, why it is so important to know the difference between what is clean and unclean:

*"For I am the LORD I - Yah Veh your God **Elohim** : ye shall therefore sanctify hallow yourselves, and ye shall be holy⁴⁰⁰; for I am I - holy: neither shall ye defile yourselves [foul your souls] with any manner of creeping thing [teemer] that creepeth upon the earth. For I am the LORD I - Yah Veh that bringeth [ascendeth] you up out of the land of Egypt [Misrayim], to be your God [Elohim]: ye shall therefore be holy, for I am I - holy:" (ERRB Lev 11:44-45)*

*On the contrary, following the Holy One who called you, **become holy yourselves in your entire way of life**; since the Tanakh says, "**You are to be holy because I am holy.**" (CJB 1 Pet 1:15-16)*

Holy and Set-Apart has the similar meaning from Strong's (HOT+) numbers:

Set apart: H6944 – קָדַשׁ – qo ^desh:

From H6942; a sacred place or thing; rarely abstractly sanctity: - consecrated (thing), dedicated (thing), hallowed (thing), holiness, (X most) holy (X day, portion, thing), saint, sanctuary.

Holy: H6918 – קדש – qa ^ˆdo ^ˆsh:

From H6942; sacred (ceremonially or morally); (as noun) God (by eminence), an angel, a saint, a sanctuary: - holy (One), saint.

H6942: קדש – qa ^ˆdash:

A primitive root; to be (causatively make, pronounce or observe as) clean (ceremonially or morally): - appoint, bid, consecrate, dedicate, defile, hallow, (be, keep) holy (-er, place), keep, prepare, proclaim, purify, sanctify (-ied one, self), X wholly.

Thus says YHVH: "show that you are **set apart** and be set apart, **because I your GOD is Set-Apart.**"

The concept of Holy / Set-Apartness in the Hebrew word *qadosh*, illuminates the Set-Apartness of the dietary prescriptions by GOD from the set aside things for other purposes in Leviticus 11.

It is clear according to the Word of YHVH that every human being should follow the *Footsteps* of Yahshua. Live and speak like Him and He *spoke* (His Word) the difference between the foods to not eat unholy foods, because He is Holy. The human race should also not eat any foods what GOD declared as *unholy and unclean* in His Torah, because we should be holy as YHVH is Holy!

Just like the Word in Flesh said that everyone should be holy like He is Holy. Live a holy (Set-Apart) life for Him, because everyone should love Him with all the heart, all the soul and all the might (being). People should not *defile* themselves with unholy things by eating unclean things, because YHVH declared it unholy and unclean.

So if anyone destroys God's temple, God will destroy him. For God's temple is holy, and you yourselves are that temple. (CJB 1 Cor 3:17)

In the Messiah he chose us in love before the creation of the universe to be holy and without defect in his presence. (CJB Eph 1:4)

It is clear that YHVH created mankind according to His image and He created man and woman to be like He is. GOD is the Father of all, He therefore gave mankind [Instructions and Laws] Torah to guide, direct and protect all to be Set-Apart (Holy) like He is Set-Apart (Holy). He explicitly said that the human body was made by YHVH Holy just like He made His Temple, GOD's Temple, Holy and Set-Apart.⁴⁰¹

Those are vital Words from Adonai GOD and He gave humankind His Torah. Yahshua respected His Words and never committed any sin, because He knew (spoke) the Torah and He *honoured* the Torah by making it Holy:

*So the **Torah** (Law) **is holy**; that is, the commandment is holy, just (righteous) and good. For we know that the **Torah** (Law) **is of the Spirit**; but as for me, I am bound to the old nature, sold to sin as a slave. (CJB Rom 7:12, 14)*

Where did people then go wrong to interpret that everything is good to eat and it does not matter what people eat? Please do not serve me, the researcher, any dog steak or pork ribs and also not vulture legs or breasts. But does the Word not say everything is eatable when it is written, "something that goes in by the mouth cannot make someone unholy or unclean"?

Matthew 15 – Matthew talks about the washing of hands (נטילים ידיהם – *n'tilat yadayim*)⁴⁰² before eating food. Surely can dirty hands not make food unholy as there is not one Torah instruction to confirm it.⁴⁰³

Mark 7 – Mark talks about something that goes from the outside to the inside of a man, which cannot make a man unclean or unholy.⁴⁰⁴

At both of these chapters proper Exegesis should be practiced and the complete chapter must be thoroughly read. Here are the two factors both chapters talk about. 1) People must *never put aside* the Commandments of YHVH or forget YHVH's Commandments,

⁴⁰¹ CJB Gen 1:26 "Then God said, "Let us make humankind in our image, in the likeness of ourselves; and let them rule over the fish in the sea, the birds in the air, the animals, and over all the earth, and over every crawling creature that crawls on the earth."

⁴⁰² Hebrew: The ritual hand washing before meals in Matt 15:2 – part of Pharisaic traditions (masoret ha'avot).

⁴⁰³ Matt 15:20

⁴⁰⁴ Mark 7:15

because by doing so people will follow commandments, laws and doctrine of men. 2) In not one of these chapters did the Authors actually mention unclean or clean animal consumption, but does it identify a tradition of man of the *washing of hands before a meal*.

- 1) The Authors explain in these chapters that it is important to know the Commandments of YHVH and not to nullify His Commandments⁴⁰⁵ to keep traditions of men above the literal Word given direct to *man* (Moshe). Matthew gave examples of the Torah (Commandments)⁴⁰⁶ that Elohim gave to Moshe to explain that people must do (verb) what the Torah says and not just speak to say they know the Law. Following things said and done by traditions and culture of man when in contradiction with Torah (Law of YHVH) by setting aside GOD's Statutes, Commandments and Regulations, which GOD gave because He loves His creation⁴⁰⁷.

Surely everyone wants to earn "life" in the Life to Come, to prevent "death" in the Life to Come. Here the Author clearly explains an example from the Torah on more ways to honour parents and ways to not dishonour parents through the Words of Yahshua when He said to not honour Him with only speaking (lips).

Remember YHVH gave His Instructions (Torah) to live by in the beginning through His literal Word direct to Moshe. There is no reason to give all of it again in the same order He gave it before. The Prophets, the Apostles, the Talmudim (Disciples) and the Word on earth (YHVH is Salvation) learned and studied from these Scripts to teach people righteousness and the Way of YHVH the Creator. There is no other Way than His given Way to live by than Deut 10:12-13.

The same Way Sha'ul was taught and eventually lived by and not persecute those living this Way of YHVH that Yahshua came to live as the Word in Flesh. The Way the people called the *Way of the Sect of the Nazarene*.

- 2) The consumption of clean or unclean animals was never the thought or discussion in these Chapters of Matthew and Mark, but Pharisaic traditions above the Torah. Comandments and doctrine of men were kept above the Commandments (Torah) of

⁴⁰⁵ Matt 15:3, 6; Mark 7:3, 7, Isa 29:13; Mark 7:9

⁴⁰⁶ Matt 15:4-5 and Mark 7:10 from Exo 20:12 and Deut 5:16; Exo 21:17 and Lev 20:9

⁴⁰⁷ Deut 10:12-13; John 14:15, 21, 15:10

YHVH. Torah is for *knowing* righteousness and guidance; for a pure and holy (clean) heart, because righteousness comes from the heart and not the stomach.

Therefore, at the end of both these chapters do the Authors explain the Parables of their Writings by explaining that YHVH is worried about the hearts of a person, because from the heart comes what the *mind* has absorbed, but what goes into the stomach goes out in private.

The Commandments of GOD (Torah) were ages ago given to man and Matthew with his faith in GOD lived according to GOD's Instructions to gain righteousness from the heart. This certain group of Pharisees lived more by the *Masoret ha'avot* (Pharisaic traditions) by *setting aside* the Torah of YHVH.

People must have the knowledge of the Torah of YHVH to know the difference from the torah of man; and separation of *holiness and unholiness* must be made to *Set-Apart* the Torah of YHVH from the *traditions of man*!

Yahshua would never have said anything can be eaten, because then He would have violated the Torah and His own Words, as He said in Matt 5:17-18. He would have been a sinner and HaMashiach was without sin, because He knew sin!

Who gave the Instructions of clean and unclean animals? Who showed Noah the difference between clean and unclean animals, even before the Laws exist of clean and unclean animals? YHVH! Where did He *classify* all animals as clean to eat?

*Of **every living thing of all flesh**, you shall bring **two** of every sort into the ship, to keep them alive with you. They shall be **male and female**.* (AESV Gen 6:19)

*You shall take **seven pairs of every clean animal** with you, the male and his female (two of seven pairs). Of the **animals that are not clean**, take **two**, the male and his female.* (AESV Gen 7:2)

The Word says two of every animal on earth, one male and one female. YHVH then said seven (7) pairs of clean animals, but only two (2) of unclean ones. Who taught Matthew and Mark and all the other Authors of the Writings of HaMashiach? The *Word in Flesh* that

was the Word in the beginning⁴⁰⁸! The Word in Flesh (Messiah) taught exactly what the Word of YHVH said from the beginning and nothing else except what YHVH said.

There are more passages like this that people misinterpret to try and substantiate their fact that anything is now *clean* to eat. Yahshua did definitely not come to be GOD above the Creator GOD. Yahshua did not come as YHVH is Slavation to overrule everything YHVH spoke in the beginning. Yahshua did not come to contradict the Father in Heaven. Yahshua did definitely not come to prove everyone today is right and all the believers in faith in *ancient times* obeying the Torah of YHVH were wrong. The Creator GOD did not give Instructions and HaMashiach GOD said there are no more Instructions.

Yahshua HaMashich did not come to start a *Replacement Theology* like many preach. Yahshua was the Word in the beginning and when He said His Torah is forever, it should then be forever if people believe in Him and are committed to follow Him. Yahshua did actually come and explicitly said this when He came in Flesh and when He Spoke His Word:

"YAH SHUA FULFILLS THE TORAH:

*Presume not **that I come to disintegrate the torah or the prophets: I come not to disintegrate**; rather to fulfill/shalam. For Amen! I word to you, **Until the heavens and earth pass**, not one iota or one tittle **never no way passes from the torah** until all becomes.*

***So whoever releases one of these least misvoth**, and doctrinates humanity thus, is called the least in the sovereigndom of the heavens: but whoever does and doctrinates them, is called mega in the sovereigndom of the heavens.*

For I word to you, That unless ever your justness superabounds much more than the scribes and Pharisees, you no way enter the sovereigndom of the heavens."

(ECB Matt 5:17-20)

⁴⁰⁸ John 1:1

Here follows the same wording of the Complete Jewish Bible:

"Don't think that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete. Yes indeed! I tell you that until heaven and earth pass away, not so much as a yud (י) or a stroke will pass from the Torah — not until everything that must happen has happened. So whoever disobeys the least of these mitzvot and teaches others to do so will be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven. But whoever obeys them and so teaches will be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven. For I tell you that unless your righteousness is far greater than that of the Torah-teachers and P'rushim, you will certainly not enter the Kingdom of Heaven!" (CJB Matt 5:17-20)

People still want to abolish the Torah even after Yahshua Himself said earth and Heaven will first have to be abolished before His Torah is abolished. An Israeli scholar, Dr. David Bivin⁴⁰⁹ accurately paraphrased the *meaning* of Yahshua's Words:

*"Never imagine for a moment, Jesus says, that I intend to abrogate the Law by misinterpreting it. My intent is not to weaken or negate the Law, but by proper interpreting God's Written Word I aim to establish it, that is, make it even more lasting, I would never invalidate the Law by ... removing something from it through misinterpretation. Heaven and earth would sooner disappear than something from the Law, not the smallest letter in the alphabet, the yod, nor even its decorative spur, will ever disappear from the Law."*⁴¹⁰

Throughout the Gospel Yahshua never indicated once that He eats non-kosher foods or that it is "ok" to eat non-kosher foods when it is violation of Torah. The **Messiah Follower** Matthew gave strong evidence of Yahshua observing Torah.

Hear what Matthew said:

"THE PARABLE OF THE NET

*Again, the kingdom [sovereigndom] of heaven **the heavens** is like unto a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered **together** of every kind **genos** : Which,*

⁴⁰⁹ Bivin, David and Roy Blizzard. "Understanding the Difficult Words of Jesus". Arcadia: Makor, 1983.

⁴¹⁰ Friedman, David. Ph.D. "THEY LOVED THE TORAH". Lederer Books; 2001. 136 P.

*when it was full, they drew to shore, and sat down, and gathered the good into vessels, but cast the bad **putrefied** away.*

THE COMPLETION / SHALOM OF THE EON

*So shall it be at the end **completion/shalom** of the world **eon**: the angels shall come forth, and sever **set apart** the wicked **evil** from among the **just**," (ERRB Matt 13:47-49)*

Yahshua obviously knew these Words, or did He not? This teaching compares people to fish and by using this parable Yahshua definitely knew clean and Set-Apart fish from unclean and unholy fish. Clean represents holy and unclean represents evil. With this illustration Yahshua surely understood the *kosher Laws* and He respected it, because why would He have used them as a tool in His teaching and compared it to the Kingdom of GOD?

Like Dr. (Ph.D) David Friedman said: "***Some will be kosher (fit) for the Kingdom of GOD, just as some fish are fit for consumption: some will be non-kosher for the Kingdom of GOD, just as some fish are not fit for consumption.***"⁴¹¹

Yahshua did not reject or abolish the Mosaic Law and the *Gospels* give no witness whatsoever to such a theory. All four the Authors of the *Gospels* in contrary have enough evidence to support the fact that Yahshua indeed observed the Torah, the Mosaic Law.⁴¹² Another Israeli scholar, Geza Vermes, wrote in his book: "*Jesus freely insisted, even in a purely ritual context, on strict adherence to the Torah*".⁴¹³

Again Matthew confirms this statement:

"and many people's love will grow cold because of increased distance from Torah." (CJB Matt 24:12)

⁴¹¹ Friedman. David, Ph.D. *"They Loved The Torah: What Yeshua's First Followers Really Thought About The Law"*. Lederer Books, Clarksville, Maryland. 2001. P 136.

⁴¹² Here follow more text supporting this fact: Matt 7:12; Mark 1:21, 3:1-6; Luke 4:31, 16:16-17; John 7:2, 14-19; **John 7:49**

⁴¹³ Vermes, Geza. *"The Religion of Jesus the Jew"*. Minneapolis: Fortress, 1993.

Listen how the exeGesis Companion Bible translated this text:

"and because torah violations multiply, the love of many breathes cold:"

People cannot continue still to think Yahshua violated the Torah or taught *against* observing the Torah of YHVH.

Matthew and John were students of Yahshua and spent most of their scholar years with Him. Mark and Luke were also part of these Messianic Judaizers observing the Torah with Rabbi Yahshua as their Teacher.

Remember, the researcher is doing thorough research; the reader chooses to obey or to wilfully reject Torah.⁴¹⁴ No one should force someone else to believe something, which can only be done by the work of the Creator Father through His Ruach,⁴¹⁵ and the Ruach and YHVH is One.⁴¹⁶ It is each and everyone's own responsibility to decide and to choose what they want to take from the Word of YHVH for righteousness, salvation; guidance, direction and protection.

GOD said that He wants everybody to be saved, but only few wants to listen to His Word.⁴¹⁷

⁴¹⁴ Heb 10:26-28

⁴¹⁵ WOY 1 Cor 2:14-16: *"But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of Elohim: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned. But he that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man. For who hath known the mind of Yahweh, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of the Messiah. "*

⁴¹⁶ John 4:24

⁴¹⁷ CJB Matt 7:13-14: *"Go in through the narrow gate; for the gate that leads to destruction is wide and the road broad, and many travel it; but it is a narrow gate and a hard road that leads to life, and only a few find it"*
 Luke 13:20-23: *"Someone asked him, 'Are only a few people being saved?'" He answered, "Struggle to get in through the narrow door, because — I'm telling you! — many will be demanding to get in and won't be able to, once the owner of the house has gotten up and shut the door. You will stand outside, knocking at the door and saying, 'Lord! Open up for us!' But he will answer, 'I don't know you or where you come from!'"*

3.17 CORRECT INTERPRETATION OF SCRIPTURE

7 There is a variety of Scripture interpretation regarding a topic. Some are in context with each other and some seems to be totally out of sync with Scripture. The reason is, because Scripture is not used as *fundamental principle* to interpret Scripture. Personal interpretation is used to interpret BIBLE Prophecy, which is against Scripture.

GOD explicitly gave the "message" through His direct Word, and it should be taken literally from Him when Scripture is studied or read.⁴¹⁸ The whole BIBLE is Prophecy from GOD and not from man, therefore is personal interpretation of Scripture outright prohibited!

In this Chapter the researcher would like to highlight the differences in Scripture and the origin thereof, because these differences undoubtedly brought separation between believers, which is an abomination to GOD.⁴¹⁹ This is also a main reason why there are 41,000 different *Christian* denominations.

1) TORAH is not part of the WORD

If Torah (Law of GOD, Law through Moshe or Pentateuch of the O.T.) was not necessary for generations to come after it was given by GOD, why is the Torah included and cited in GOD's Word throughout the BIBLE by all Authors? Why were Words of the Torah⁴²⁰ been taught as relevant by *YHVH is Salvation* (Messiah) to His Followers while on earth?

⁴¹⁸ 2 Pet 1:19-21

⁴¹⁹ Prov 6:16-19

⁴²⁰ CJB Matt 5:17 "**Don't think that I have come to abolish** the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete. Mat_5:18 Yes indeed! I tell you that until heaven and earth pass away, not so much as a yud (י) or a stroke will pass from the Torah — not until everything that must happen has happened. CJB Luke 16:17 But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter in the Torah to become void.

Jas 1:25 But **if a person looks closely into the perfect Torah**, which gives freedom, and continues, becoming not a forgetful hearer but a doer of the work it requires, **then he will be blessed in what he does.**

Jas 2:8 **If you truly attain the goal of Kingdom Torah**, in conformity with the passage that says, "Love your neighbor as yourself," **you are doing well.**

CJB Matt 22:40 All of the Torah and the Prophets **are dependent** on these two mitzvot (Commands)."

CJB Matt 7:12 "Always treat others as you would like them to treat you; that **sums up** the teaching of the Torah and the Prophets.

ESV Matt 23:28 So you also outwardly appear righteous to others, but within you are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness (Torahlessness).

CJB Matt 24:12 and many people's love will grow cold **because of increased distance from** Torah (Lawlessness).

Torah was given by YHVH to Moshe to **teach** It to all the people. YHVH therefore appointed the Tribe of Levi to teach the Torah to the other Tribes (nations). The Torah does not only consist of Ten Commandments, but there are many more to explain the fundamental Ten and to understand the meaning of the Ten Commandments; just like

CJB Luke 2:22 When the time came for their purification **according to** the Torah of Moshe, they took him up to Yerushalayim to present him to Adonai

Luke 24:44 Yeshua said to them, "This is what I meant when I was still with you and told you that everything written about me in the Torah of Moshe, the Prophets and the Psalms had to be fulfilled."

CJB John 1:45 Philip found Natan'el and told him, "We've found **the one that Moshe wrote about in the Torah, also the Prophets** — it's Yeshua Ben-Yosef from Natzeret!"

ISV John 5:46 For if you believed Moses, you would believe me; for he wrote of me. John 5:47 But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe my words?"

ISV Joh 7:49 **But this crowd that does not know the law (Torah) is accursed.**"

CJB John 12:34 The crowd answered, "**We have learned from the Torah that the Messiah remains forever.** How is it that you say the Son of Man has to be 'lifted up'? Who is this 'Son of Man'?"

CJB Acts 7:52 Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute? And they killed those who announced beforehand the coming of the Righteous One, whom you have now betrayed and murdered, Acts 7:53 **you who received the law (Torah) as delivered by angels and did not keep it.**"

CJB Acts 24:14 **"But this I (Sha'ul) do admit to you: I worship the God of our fathers in accordance with the Way (which they call a sect). I continue to believe everything that accords with the Torah and everything written in the Prophets."**

CJB Acts 28:23 So they arranged a day with him and came to his quarters in large numbers. From morning until evening he explained the matter to them, giving a thorough witness about the Kingdom of God and **making use of both** the Torah of Moshe and the Prophets **to persuade them about Yeshua.**

CJB Rom 3:21 But now, quite apart from Torah, God's way of making people righteous in his sight has been made clear — **although the Torah and the Prophets give their witness to it as well** — Rom 3:22 and it is a righteousness that comes from God, through the faithfulness of Yeshua the Messiah, to all who continue trusting. **For it makes no difference whether one is a Jew or a Gentile,**

CJB Rom 7:12 So the **Torah is holy**; that is, the commandment is holy, **just and good.** Rom 7:14 For we know that the **Torah is of the Spirit**; but as for me, I am bound to the old nature, sold to sin as a slave. Rom 7:22 **For in my inner self I completely agree with God's Torah;**

CJB Gal 5:18 But if you are led by the Spirit, then **you are not in subjection to the system that results from perverting the Torah into legalism.** Gal 5:23 humility, self control. **Nothing in the Torah stands against such things.**

CJB 2 Thes 2:3 Don't let anyone deceive you in any way. For the Day will not come until after the Apostasy has come and **the man who separates himself from Torah has been revealed**, the one destined for doom. CJB 2 Thes 2:7 For already this separating from Torah is at work secretly, but it will be secretly **only until he who is restraining is out of the way.** 2Thes 2:8 Then the **one who embodies separation from Torah will be revealed, the one whom the Lord Yeshua will slay with the breath of his mouth** and destroy by the glory of his coming.

CJB Heb 10:16 "'This is the covenant which I will make with them after those days,' says Adonai: **'I will put my Torah on their hearts, and write it on their minds . . . ,'**"

CJB Heb 10:28 **Someone who disregards the Torah of Moshe is put to death** without mercy on the word of two or three witnesses.

CJB Jas 2:12 **Keep speaking and acting** like people who will be judged by a Torah which gives freedom.

CJB Jas 4:11 Brothers, stop speaking against each other! Whoever speaks against a brother or judges a brother is **speaking against Torah and judging Torah.** And if you judge Torah, you are not a doer of what Torah says, but a judge. Jas_4:12 **There is but one Giver of Torah**; he is also the Judge, with the power to deliver and to destroy. Who do you think you are, judging your fellow human being?

CJB 1 John 3:4 **Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, sin is violation of Torah.**

CJB 1 Cor 15:56 **The sting of death is sin; and sin draws its power from the Torah;**

WOY Rev 22:14 **Blessed are they that do his commandments**, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.

And many many more

Yahshua Spoke on earth when He clearly cited the importance of the Torah and the Writings of the Prophets in Matthew 22:40.

The Torah gives further explanation of the Ten Commandments and it cancels confusion regarding the meaning of the different Commandments. Torah was given by the Creator to avoid mixed messages. When Torah is neglected or discarded, confusion arises and *false doctrine* will be the order of the day. To differentiate between the truth and lies / falsehoods would not be possible when Torah is not studied and when Torah is abolished.

Torah is the *very essence* of HaMashiach, the *Character* of the Creator. Without Torah people would not have know the *real* Messiah (John 5:46-47). Without Torah people would not have know the *Greatness* and *Yawehsomeness* of the Creator. Without the Torah believers would not have know the One True GOD and what He had Spoken from the beginning.

Genesis is part of the Torah and the Torah is the Word of GOD obviously spoken by YHVH:

*"Some time later the **Word of Adonai** came to Avram in a vision: "Don't be afraid, Avram. I am your protector; your reward will be very great." (CJB Gen 15:1)*

Is the Word not Yahshua who was GOD and who became Flesh? Scripture informs the researcher it is:

"In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim. And the Word was made Flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld His majesty, the majesty as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth." (WOY John 1:1, 14)

Torah is the Lamp that shines from the Creator GOD and It is His Light to shine His Path (Way) to follow to Eternal Life. This Light and Lamp is a Prophecy of the Messiah:

"For the commandment is a lamp; and the law (Torah) is light; and reproofs of instruction are the way of life:" (WOY Prov 6:23)

"For the mitzvah (command) is a lamp, Torah is light, and reproofs that discipline are the way to life." (CJB Prov 6:23)

"Because the command is a lamp and the Law a light, rebukes that discipline are a way of life—" (ISV Prov 6:23)

*"And this is the message which we have heard from him and proclaim to you: **God is light**, and there is no darkness in him — none!" (CJB 1 John 1:5)*

"So again Yah Shua speaks to them, wording, I AM the light of the cosmos: whoever follows me, walks not in darkness, but has the light of life." (ECB John 8:12)

The Torah is the Menorah (Seven Branch Lamp Light) that shines the Light, and Yahshua is the Prophecy of the Menorah:

"Therefore, remember where you were before you fell, turn from this sin, and do what you used to do before. Otherwise, I will come to you and remove your menorah from its place — if you don't turn from your sin!" (CJB Rev 2:5)

*"The city has no need for the sun or the moon to shine on it, because God's Sh'khinah (Glory) gives it light, **and its lamp is the Lamb. The nations will walk by its light**, and the kings of the earth will bring their splendor into it." (CJB Rev 21:23-24)*

The Menorah was literally made to give light and it was used in the Holies of the Tabernacle, which represents the Light of the Messiah. Herewith texts from the BIBLE to illustrate the literal meaning of the Menorah from the direct Word of YHWH:

"Make seven lamps for the menorah, and mount them so as to give light to the space in front of it." (CJB Exo 25:37)⁴²¹

⁴²¹ "You are to put the table outside the curtain and the menorah opposite the table on the side of the tabernacle toward the south; put the table on the north side." (CJB Exo 26:35)

"He put the **menorah in the tent of meeting** across from the table, on the side of the **tabernacle** facing south." (CJB Exo 40:24)

"A tent was set up, the outer one, which was called the Holy Place; in it were the menorah, the table and the Bread of the Presence." (CJB Heb 9:2)

"Tell Aharon, 'When you set up the lamps, the seven lamps are to cast their light forward, in front of the menorah.'" (CJB Num 8:2)

"and asked me, "What do you see?" I answered, "I've been looking at a menorah; it's all of gold, with a bowl at its top, seven lamps on it, and seven tubes leading to the lamps at its top." (CJB Zech 4:2)

*"For even someone who doesn't think much of a day when such minor events take place will rejoice at seeing the plumbline in the hand of Z'rubavel. **So these seven are the eyes⁴²² of Adonai that range about over all the earth.**" (CJB Zech 4:10)*

The literal seven (7) lamps represent the Eyes of the Creator, shining the Light to watch over mankind. Thus the Torah is the Light, YHVH who is One with Yahshua is also the Light. The Menorah represents the Light to stay on the Path (Way) of the Creator.

*"Then I saw standing there with the throne and the four living beings, in the circle of the elders, **a Lamb** that appeared to have been slaughtered. **He had seven horns and seven eyes**, which are the sevenfold Spirit of God sent out into all the earth." (CJB Rev 5:6)*

This Lamb is the Lamb of Righteousness. The Lamb of the Wedding Feast every believer wishes to receive an invitation from. The Lamb who is the literal **Word of GOD!**

*"fine linen, bright and clean has been given her to wear." ("Fine linen" means the **righteous deeds of God's people**.) The angel said to me, "Write: 'How blessed are those who have been invited to the **Wedding Feast of the Lamb!**' " Then he added, **"These are God's very words."** He was wearing a robe that had been soaked in blood, and the name by which he is called is, **"THE WORD OF GOD."** (CJB Rev 19:8-9, 13)*

Therefore does the **very** Word of GOD literally said that the Commandment of GOD is the Lamp and the Torah is the Light to guide, direct and protect people to do righteousness and not unrighteous, wickedness, sin, lawlessness or evil things. Righteousness must be the *fruit* of every person, which is the fine white clean linen a person must wear to be part

⁴²² *"For look at the stone I have put in front of Y'hoshua: on one stone are seven eyes; I will engrave what is to be written on it," says Adonai-Tzva'ot; 'and I will remove the guilt of this land in one day." (CJB Zech 3:9)*

 Research is the process of elimination, whatever remains is the truth.*Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx*
of the future Wedding Feast of GOD who will return as the Messiah.⁴²³ This righteousness will be known from the Torah:

"Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, sin is violation of Torah. You know that he appeared in order to take away sins, and that there is no sin in him. So no one who remains united with him continues sinning; everyone who does continue sinning has neither seen him nor known him. Children, don't let anyone deceive you — it is the person that keeps on doing what is right who is righteous, just as God is righteous. The person who keeps on sinning is from the Adversary, because from the very beginning the Adversary has kept on sinning. It was for this very reason that the Son of God appeared, to destroy these doings of the Adversary." (CJB 1 John 3:4-8)

"Here is how one can distinguish clearly between God's children and those of the Adversary: everyone who does not continue doing what is right is not from God. Likewise, anyone who fails to keep loving his brother is not from God. For this is the message which you have heard from the beginning: that we should love each other and not be like Kayin, who was from the Evil One and murdered his own brother. Why did he murder him? Because his own actions were evil, and his brother's were righteous." (CJB 1 John 3:10-12)

The Word of GOD tells us where to get this love and how to know the fulfillment of love:

"Love does not do harm to a neighbour; therefore love is the fullness of Torah."
(CJB Rom 13:10)

Thus, Torah still today has to form part of the Word of GOD to know righteousness through love and to identify wickedness / lawlessness / sinfulness / unfaithfulness / unrighteousness / evilness. HaMashiach came down in Flesh and prophecied these exact Words:

"Rabbi, which of the mitzvot in the Torah is the most important?" He told him, "You are to love Adonai your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength." This is the greatest and most important mitzvah. And a second is

⁴²³ Rev 19:8

similar to it, 'You are to love your neighbour as yourself.' **All of the Torah and the Prophets are dependent on these two mitzvot (commandments).**" (CJB Matt 22:36-40)

Yahshua said nothing new Himself, but only what the Creator said in the beginning. Yahshua (YHVH is Salvation) did not come down from Heaven to start a *Replacement Theology* by replacing His own Words from old, from the beginning.⁴²⁴ No, but He came to explain the exactly same principles what the Creator Father said from the very beginning. The Creator is the only One True GOD and He is the same yesterday, today and tomorrow. The Command He Spoke in the beginning is the exact same Command that will be till the end. He is the Aleph and the Tav! He will keep His literal Word (His Torah) He gave in the beginning until the end.

"Don't think that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete. Yes indeed! I tell you that until heaven and earth pass away, not so much as a yud (י) or a stroke will pass from the Torah — not until everything that must happen has happened. So whoever disobeys the least of these mitzvot and teaches others to do so will be called the least in the Kingdom of Heaven. But whoever obeys them and so teaches will be called great in the Kingdom of Heaven." (CJB Matt 5:17-19)

The question is, did everything already happen that had to happen? Did the Advent of the Messiah already happen like it is prophecied by the Prophets, given by the literal direct Word of GOD? Did Heaven and earth already pass away?

If the answer is yes to any reader, then humankind is already in the *Millennium Reign of the Messiah* heading towards *Eternity*, which obviously is not the case. Then the *Reigning Messiah* must already be living literally amongst humankind in the world. Also, the Torah must then already be written on everyones heart and be in everyones mind⁴²⁵. If that is true then everyone should know the Feasts of YHVH according His Torah in / of Leviticus 23 and passionately do them. If the Torah is already in everyones heart and mind and the Feasts are not willingly kept according to Torah, then those not doing His Torah are doing blatant and wilfull sin:

⁴²⁴ Jer 6:16

⁴²⁵ Heb 8:8-11 directly prophecied from the Prophet Jeremaiah 31:31-36.

*"For if we deliberately continue to sin after receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, but only the terrifying prospect of Judgement, of raging fire that will consume the enemies. **Someone who disregards the Torah of Moshe is put to death without mercy on the word of two or three witnesses.**" (CJB Heb 10:26-28)*

The answer to the above three (3) questions to the researcher is a definite no! As a believer in the only One true Creator GOD Elohim Adonai the Almighty, who gave His literal Word direct to the Prophets and Apostles, who walked the face of the earth exactly according to His Spoken Word as Yahshua HaMashiach; then he / she has to *walk* this exact *Walk*.

The Word of GOD must be obeyed and the Torah is thus valid to understand that there are Prophecies of the Messiah still to be fulfilled, which are not yet fulfilled. "Heaven and earth" are also still finally in existence since Yahshua has Ascended to Heaven; therefore can the Torah of GOD not have been abolished.

The Spirit is the Truth and the Creator GOD is Spirit⁴²⁶, and if the Torah is of the Spirit (Torah is Spiritual), then Sha'ul did not teach against the Torah, but surely to encourage and to honour Torah:

*"So the **Torah is holy**; that is, **the commandment is holy, just and good**. Then did something good become for me the source of death? Heaven forbid! Rather, **it was sin working death in me through something good**, so that sin might be clearly exposed as sin, so that sin through the commandment might come to be experienced as sinful beyond measure. For we know that the **Torah is of the Spirit**; but as for me, I am bound to the old nature, sold to sin as a slave." (CJB Rom 7:12-14)*

*"He is the one who came by means of water and blood, Yeshua the Messiah — not with water only, but with the water and the blood. And the Spirit bears witness, because the **Spirit is the truth.**" (CJB 1 John 5:6)*

⁴²⁶ John 4:24

Therefore can the Torah not be destroyed, nor be cursed, nor did It die at the "Cross" (because then the Messiah died without being resurrected, but He ascended to Heaven, which still is in tact). Therefore, the Torah is not abolished (like the Word of GOD prophesied) and neither is the Torah the end. Sha'ul prophesied:

"Does it follow that we abolish Torah by this trusting (faith)? Heaven forbid! On the contrary, we confirm Torah." (CJB Rom 3:31)

If Sha'ul taught and preached *against* Torah, he then contradicts the Prophecies GOD gave him and He would then be against the literal Word of *Yah is Salvation*. Now what did Sha'ul mean when he said the Torah is the end? Sha'ul did first of all not say the Torah is the end:

*"For the **goal** at which the Torah **aims** is the Messiah, who offers righteousness to everyone who trusts."* (CJB Rom 10:4)

*"For the Messiah is the **aim** of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth."* (WOY Rom 10:4)

*"For Christ is the **end** of the law **for** righteousness to every one that believeth."* (KJV Rom 10:4)

The Complete Jewish Bible (CJB) and the Word of YHVH (WOY) interpreted the Bible direct as it was given, where the King James Version (KJV) took the smallest word from the Aramaic (the kindred language of Hebrew) definition of "SAKA", which is "end" and written it in the BIBLE without explanation of the verse.

In the Hebrew / Greek Strong's Dictionary the following explanation of the word "end" is given. The reason why the CJB and WOY Bibles wrote their interpretation as they did:

G5056 – $\tau \epsilon \lambda \omicron \varsigma$ – *telos*:

*From a primary word $\tau \epsilon \lambda \lambda \omega$ *tello* – (to set out for a definite point or goal); properly the point aimed at as a limit, that is, (by implication) the conclusion of an act or state (termination [literally, figuratively or indefinitely], result*

[immediate, ultimate or prophetic], purpose); specifically an impost or levy (as paid): - + continual, custom, end (-ing), finally, uttermost. Compare G5411.

Why the KJV and all the other Bibles translated from the original Greek version used the word *end* without defining the usage, is really to do away with the Jewishness in the BIBLE. Surely can be seen that the Accuser (Satan) wants to cause *confusion* and *contradiction*! It leads to preaching *Torah is the end* and that leads to *Torahlessness*, which is against the Word of GOD (one of the names of the coming Antichrist)⁴²⁷.

This research proved that the *last day of the week (the seventh (7th) day)* is the *Saturday Sabbath*, which was changed to the *Sunday rest day* and was *legalized* by the Greek Empire, pope Constantine in 321 C.E. (A.D.). Later Pope Sylvester named Sunday the *Lord's Day* in 325 C.E. (A.D.) and in 338 C.E. the *court bishop of Canstantine* confirmed the *Holy Day change*⁴²⁸. It is obvious that the Torah was disregarded to *legalize* the *change of the Sabbath* as from the *church father Terullian*.⁴²⁹ GOD never admitted the change of His Sabbath (Yom Shabbat) that He ordained from the last day of the week (Yom Shebi'i) to be the rest day *for generations to come*. He also never admitted to change the day of the Sabbath. He also never admitted or confirmed anywhere in the BIBLE the Torah had been abolished or destroyed or not to be adhered to.

What Sha'ul actually preached and taught to the nations is: when a person says "*you do the Torah*", but if the fruit from his heart does not prove that you obey the Torah, then a person's life does not prove righteousness. Judgement comes from the *fruit* – good or bad choices. The choice is every person's own decision. Through the *fruit righteousness will prevail* even when temptation crouches at the door, because you can be the master of sin that tempted you (Gen 4:7).

⁴²⁷ WOY 2 Thes 2:8: "And then shall that **lawless one** be revealed, whom the Master shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming."

⁴²⁸ Catholic Church admits they made the change, Sabbath Truth.com <http://www.sabbathtruth.com/free-resources/article-library/id/916/catholic-church-admits-they-made-the-change>; 18/08/2014.

⁴²⁹ Church Father Tertullian (fl. 190-220), Stellar House - <http://www.stellarhousepublishing.com/jesussunexcerpt.html>; 10/10/2014: "Tertullian's discussion of purported Christian sun worship was so clear that under its entry for "Tertullian" the Catholic Encyclopedia says: "The 'Ad nationes' has for its entire object the refutation of calumnies against Christians [such as] You say **we worship the sun; so do you.**" (CE, XIV, 521.) In Ad Nationes (I, XIII, 1), Tertullian writes: "THE CHARGE OF WORSHIPPING THE SUN MET BY A RETORT." "Others, with greater regard to good manners, it must be confessed, **suppose that the sun is the god of the Christians**, because it is a well-known fact that we pray towards the east, or **because we make Sunday a day of festivity.**" (Roberts, ANCL, XI, 449-450.)"

Torah is the *fruit of salvation*; Torah is **not** the *root of salvation*!

Like Sha'ul prophesied, Torah is the goal at which the Messiah aims **for** righteousness or like the KJV wrote the Messiah is the end ("SAKA") of the Law **for** righteousness, which **clearly read** Torah is not the end; but the *goal for* righteousness. It is a huge difference.

Example:

To *claim* that infant baptism (*doctrine / law of man*) is for righteousness is exactly the same as to *claim* keeping the Torah is for righteousness, but the [rest] of the *fruit* from the heart does not show righteousness. Thus, the Messiah said:

"For with the heart one goes on trusting and thus continues toward righteousness, while with the mouth one keeps on making public acknowledgement and thus continues toward deliverance." (CJB Rom 10:10)

"Moreover, we know that whatever the Torah says, it says to those living within the framework of the Torah, in order that every mouth may be stopped and the whole world be shown to deserve God's adverse judgement." (CJB Rom 3:19)

"These people honour me with their lips, but their hearts are far away from me. Their worship of me is useless, because they teach man-made rules as if they were doctrines." (CJB Matt 15:8-9)

The Tempter came and said to him (Yeshua), "If you are the Son of God, order these stones to become bread." But he answered, "The Tanakh says, 'Man does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of Adonai' " Then the Adversary took him to the holy city and set him on the highest point of the Temple. "If you are the Son of God," he said, "jump! For the Tanakh says, 'He will order his angels to be responsible for you. . . . They will support you with their hands, so that you will not hurt your feet on the stones.' "Yeshua replied to him, "But it also says, 'Do not put Adonai your God to the test.' "Once more, the Adversary took him up to the summit of a very high mountain, showed him all the kingdoms of the world in all their glory, and said to him, "All this I will give you if you will bow down and worship me." "Away with you, Satan!" Yeshua told him,

"For the Tanakh says, 'Worship Adonai your God, and serve only him.'" (CJB Matt 4:3-10)

Live by the *fruit of what YHVH gave from His Mouth* and not only by the *letter of the Word*. Torah has been given by the Creator Almighty to know sin⁴³⁰ and not to obey wickedness / evilness. GOD does not permit to do evil or wicked things. Prophecies of GOD's Word lead to righteousness and self-interpreted prophecies⁴³¹ lead to abolishing or destroying Torah.⁴³²

Torah was given by GOD *to draw people near to the Ways of the Messiah*, just like Sha'ul taught people the Torah to convert believers in faith to be followers of the Messiah:

"With those who live outside the framework of Torah, I put myself in the position of someone outside the Torah in order to win those outside the Torah — although I myself am not outside the framework of God's Torah but within the framework of Torah as upheld by the Messiah." (CJB 1 Cor 9:21)

"To them that are without law, as without law, being not without law to Yahweh, but under the law to the Messiah, that I might gain them that are without law." (WOY 1 Cor 9:21)

*"But we desire to hear of thee what thou thinkest: for as **concerning this sect**, we know that every where it is spoken against. And when they had appointed him a day, there came many to him into his lodging; to whom he expounded and testified the kingdom of Elohim, **persuading them concerning Yahshua, both out of the Law of Moses (Torah)**, and out of the prophets, from morning till evening. And **some believed the things which were spoken, and some believed not.**" (CJB Acts 28:22-24)*

To not want to know about the Torah, is to not want to know about the *real Messiah*, because Torah teaches about the Messiah. Torah is written by Moshe given by GOD and it was done to believe who the Messiah is and how to enter His Kingdom:

⁴³⁰ Rom 7:7, 3:31

⁴³¹ 2 Pet 1:19-21

⁴³² Rom 7:8

"But don't think that it is I who will be your Accuser before the Father. Do you know who will accuse you? Moshe, the very one you have counted on! For if you really believed Moshe, you would believe me; because it was about me that he wrote. But if you don't believe what he wrote, how are you going to believe what I say?" (CJB John 5:45-47)

Torah is the key to wisdom and knowledge⁴³³ to know the fulfillment of the Messiah.

Romans 10:5-7 in fact were cited directly from Torah from the Book of Deuteronomy 30:12-13 by Rabbi Sha'ul (Paul). He explained from Torah (as verse 5 proves) that the Torah is the *goal* to the Messiah, which *offers* righteousness to the ones who trust. The Torah (Law) is not for righteousness, but *offers* sanctification, which is the *fruit*. The Torah is not the end, but the **goal for righteousness**. Thus, Torah offers sanctification; the result is *fruit* of the heart by knowing, doing and guarding Torah (**to identify sin**).

Psalms is an everyday reading Book to any reader, and it consists of beautiful poetry praising the Creator for all the blessings and faith in Him. Psalms are / were used for hymns when worshipping GOD. Psalms are also the *faith* David acknowledged in the One true Elohim with Prophecies of the Messiah. Psalms 119 is the longest Chapter in the BIBLE and the King and Prophet David praised GOD continuously in this Chapter for giving the Torah. Never did David abolish the Torah once:

*"I have declared [scribed] my ways, and thou heardest [answerest] me: **teach me thy statutes. Make [Have] me to understand [discern] the way of thy precepts:** so shall I talk [meditate] of thy wondrous works [marvels]."* (ERRB Psa 119:26-27)

*"**Remove [Turn aside] from me the way of lying [falsehoods]: and grant me thy law graciously [with thy Torah grant me charism].** I have chosen the **way of truth [trustworthiness]:** thy judgements have I laid placed before me. **I have stuck [adhered] unto thy testimonies [witnesses]:** O LORD Yah Veh, put me not to shame [shame me not]. **I will [shall] run the way of thy commandments [misvoth], when thou shalt enlarge my heart.**" (ERRB Psa 119:29-32)*

⁴³³ Psa 19:7-10

Torah is perfectly explained above through a perfect exposition by the Psalmist, a Patriarch of HaMashiach. David is in awe with the given Torah of YHVH and he explains why GOD is Yahwehsome:

"O how love I Thy law [Torah]! It is my meditation all the day. Thou through thy commandments [Thy misvoth] hast made me wiser [have enwisened me] than [above] mine enemies: for they are ever [eternally] with me. I have [comprehend] more understanding than all my teachers: for thy testimonies [witnesses] are my meditation. I understand [discern] more than the ancients [elders], because I keep [guard] Thy precepts. I have refrained [restrained] my feet from every evil way, that I might keep [guard] thy word. I have not departed [turned aside] from thy judgements: for Thou hast taught me. How sweet [smooth] are thy words [sayings] unto my taste [palate]! Yea, sweeter - than honey to my mouth! Through Thy precepts I get understanding [discern]: therefore I hate every false way." (ERRB Psa 119:97-104)

The researcher is in awe with these Yahwehsome Words. How can someone not be after reading it? How can people still think Torah is abolished or *pervert Torah into legalism*? YHVH taught David Torah (Psa 119:102).

The researcher also had to *re-think* about the validation of the Torah many years ago. The following verses from men with enormous wisdom formed part of the validation, and ignoring them would lead to *destruction* and without the *grace* (favour) of the Saviour.

It is a call of the highest Wisdom to the ignorant.⁴³⁴ It is a call to the ones who are ignorant to listen to the *judgements of YHVH* (known from His Torah). It is a call to the ones who do not want to *turn to His reprove*⁴³⁵; who neglects or ignore His Council for correction and who do not want to listen to the Words that comes from GOD's own Mouth:

"Because they hated knowledge and did not choose the fear of Adonai, they refused my counsel (Amos 3:7) and despised my reproof. So they will bear the

⁴³⁴ CJB Job12:13: "With God are wisdom and power; he has [good] counsel and understanding." Rom 11:33: "O the depth of the riches and the wisdom and knowledge of God! How inscrutable are His judgments! How unsearchable are His ways! "

⁴³⁵ Prov 1:23; 2 Tim 3:16-17

consequences of their own way and be overfilled with their own schemes." (CJB Prov 1:29-31)

"My son, if you will receive my words and store my commands inside you, paying attention to wisdom inclining your mind toward understanding — then you will understand the fear of Adonai and find knowledge of God. For Adonai gives wisdom; from his mouth comes knowledge and understanding." (CJB Prov 2:1-2, 5-6)

"He that turneth away his ear from hearing the law [**Torah**], even his prayer shall be abomination [**abhorrence**]." (ERRB Prov 28:9)

Even our children's (generation) wisdom and knowledge were given to the parents. Knowledge of GOD and His Kingdom is the key and not secular knowledge [which is not the key to *Life*]:

"My people are destroyed [severed**] for lack-of-knowledge: **because thou hast despised [**spurned**] knowledge, I will [**shall**] also reject [**spurn**] thee, that thou shalt be no priest to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law [**Torah**] of Thy God [**Elohim**], I will [**shall**] also forget thy children [**sons**]." (ERRB Hos 4:6)****

Dr. Thomas Constable cited the following in his commentaries regarding Psalms 119, which is also very valuable to remember when reading Psalms again:

"It [this psalm] describes how the Word enables us to grow in holiness and handle the persecutions and pressures that always accompany an obedient walk of faith." [Note: Wiersbe, The . . . Wisdom . . . , p. 308.]⁴³⁶

⁴³⁶ E Sword Commentaries of Constable.
Psalms 119, StudyLight.org - <http://www.studylight.org/commentaries/dcc/print.cgi?bk=18&ch=119&vs=1;18/09/2014>.

2) TORAH impossible to observe

Christians try to justify the "It is not possible to keep the Law" and therefore GOD did "Away with the Law". The only reasons the researcher can think of are *lack of education, misinformation by preachers* or even ignorance⁴³⁷ of Torah. It can also be because of the Christians "Replacement Theology" thinking. Let's start with the Messiah's Writings:

Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, because I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. For my yoke is easy, and my burden is light." (CJB Matt 11:29-30)

Shema (Hear / Listen) to this *comment* given by the AENT regarding this verse:

*A "yoke" is also that brings "suffering" for righteousness sake. Mashiyach did not come as a "sugar daddy" to **heap all manner of materialism** upon His followers. This "yoke" of Mashiyach pertains to righteous judgement, mercy (grace) and faith in YHVH, that nurtures peace (shalom) on earth and good will.*

The *Salvation of YHVH's* "yoke" is His Torah and His Torah should not be burdensome for humankind, it should be merciful. Faith in Yah should give peace and righteous from good judgement and from the *acknowledgement of evil*⁴³⁸.

For loving God means obeying his commands. Moreover, his commands are not burdensome, (CJB 1 John 5:3)

From Torah: *"For this mitzvah (command) which I am giving you today is **not too hard** for you, **it is not beyond your reach.**"* (CJB Deut 30:11)

*"If you are doing what is good, shouldn't you hold your head high? **And if you don't do what is good, sin is crouching at the door** — it wants you, **but you can rule over it.**"* (CJB Gen 4:7)

⁴³⁷ Choose to not want to know about Torah (the Law of GOD) although it is written in GOD's Word given by GOD or it is when a person was not taught about Torah (the Law of GOD) and just plainly ignore or do not want to see the Words of Torah (the Law given by GOD) in Scripture, because by accepting and acknowledging Torah can / will influence that person's congregation / fellowship / "church" / study group and believes / doctrine.

⁴³⁸ ECB Rev 2:24: *"But I word to you and to the rest in Thyatira - as many as hold not **this doctrine** and who **know not the depths of Satan**, as they word: **I put no other burden upon you.**"*

Yochanan received everything from Yahshua⁴³⁹ to teach people and he cited this Command direct from the Torah, because he himself lived according to the Torah for his correction, direction and protection on earth in the land GOD gave him to live; and he would never teach against Torah⁴⁴⁰.

The reason Yochanan would never violate Torah was because he knew the Word given to him came from GOD and the Ruach within him is also GOD⁴⁴¹. The Ruach will preserve the Torah within him, because the Word (Torah) is One (Echad) with the Father⁴⁴²:

"Because these three witness in the heavens: the Father, the Word and the Holy Spirit: and these three are one." (ECB 1 John 5:7)

But people still make the Father, the Word and the Holy Spirit "three" (Trinity / tri-unity), but GOD explicitly said ONE!

YHWH's Torah does **not** imply "**legalism**" (pervert Torah as legalism), it implies *ahava* (love) and *shalom* (peace on earth). Anyone who says the Torah of HaMashiach is legalistic is actually the one who makes (perverts to legalism) His Torah legalistic. GOD did not say His Torah is a form of legalism. How does such a person *interpret* the following verses:

*For if we deliberately continue to sin after receiving the **knowledge of the truth**, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, but only the terrifying prospect of Judgement, of raging fire that will consume the enemies. Someone who **disregards the Torah of Moshe is put to death without mercy on the word of two or three witnesses.** (CJB Heb 10:26-28)*

How does a person know what is sin? The Word says from knowing Torah a person will know *sin* and by knowing sin a person will know righteousness by not doing *sin*:

⁴³⁹ CJB John 1:1, 6, 51: "In die begin was die Woord, en die Woord was by God, en die Woord was God. There was a man sent from God whose name was Yochanan. Then He said to him, "Yes indeed! I tell you that you will see heaven opened and the angels of God going up and coming down on the Son of Man!"

⁴⁴⁰ ERRB 1 John 3:4: "Whosoever committeth [**doeth**] sin transgresseth [**violateth**] also the law [**Torah**]: for sin is the transgression [**violation**] of the law [**Torah**]."

⁴⁴¹ John 4:24

⁴⁴² John 10:30

*Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, **sin is violation of Torah**. Children, don't let anyone deceive you — it is the person that keeps on doing what is right who is righteous, just as God is righteous. The person who keeps on sinning is from the Adversary, because from the very beginning the Adversary has kept on sinning. It was for this very reason that the Son of God appeared, to destroy these doings of the Adversary. **No one who has God as his Father keeps on sinning**, because the seed planted by God remains in him. That is, he cannot continue sinning, because he has God as his Father. Here is how one can distinguish clearly between God's children and those of the Adversary: **everyone who does not continue doing what is right is not from God**. Likewise, anyone who fails to keep loving his brother is not from God. (CJB 1 John 3:4, 7-10)*

The Torah must not be considered dead nor necessary anymore, because from doing so violation of the Word of Yah is committed.

*But sin, taking its chance through that which was ordered by the law, was working in me every form of desire: **because without the law sin is dead**. (BBE Rom 7:8)*

*Now, Yisrael, what does Mar-Yah your God require of you, but to fear Mar-Yah your God, **to walk in all his ways**, and to love him, and to serve Mar-Yah your God with all your heart and with all your soul, to keep the commandments of Mar-Yah, and his statutes, which I command you this day for your good? Therefore you shall love Mar-Yah your God, and keep his instructions, and his statutes, and his ordinances, and his commandments, **always**. (AESV Deut 10:12-13; 11:1)*

Is it possible to observe all the Torah Commandments of the Creator? According to Scripture it is, but sin will be the test, the temptation (Gen 4:7). Mashiach is the Salvation of YHVH and He said He will put the Torah in everyones mind and write Torah upon everyones heart, just like the Prophet Yirmeyahu⁴⁴³ said.

"For God does find fault with the people when he says," 'See! The days are coming,' says Adonai, 'when I will establish over the house of Isra'el and over the house of Y'hudah a new covenant. " 'For this is the covenant which I will make with

⁴⁴³ Jeremiah 31:31 (30), 33 (32)

the house of Isra'el after those days,' says Adonai: 'I will put my Torah in their minds and write it on their hearts; I will be their God, and they will be my people.'
(CJB Heb 8:8, 10)

Is the Torah in the minds and on the hearts of the House of Yisra'El? Is the **Covenant** made already with His people?

Christians observe most of the Torah already unknowingly without thinking of legalism. YHVH gave 613 Mitzvots (Commandments) in the Torah. *YHVH is Salvation* kept all of them with His Walk as HaMashiach on earth, to show His Ways and that His yoke is not a burden. Yahshua explained and correctly interpreted the Torah with 1050 Mitzvot (Commandments) in His Teachings in the Messianic Writings.

From the 613 Instructions "Christians" already *obey* almost 200 Torah Instructions unknowingly and some even up to 275.⁴⁴⁴ Here follows a short breakdown of the rest of the 613 Torah Instructions of the Creator YHVH:

221 Commandments are applicable to the Temple and even when there was a Temple were most of these Commandments applicable only to the Levite "Jews" doing Temple services and Priest services, or to people living outside of Israel. Also are animal sacrifices composed within, which are not necessary till the Temple has been build again.

74 Commandments are applicable to judges, agricultural matters, some were for men only and some were for woman only and some for widows.

8 Commandments are applicable of the Nazarite vows, which are voluntary.⁴⁴⁵

28 Commandments are to be observed applicable to the Feasts of YHVH.

21 Commandments are applicable to dietary Laws.⁴⁴⁶

Matthew, Mark, Luke, John, Paul and Peter were Torah observers and preached Torah. How can it then be that Torah is now not possible to be observed?⁴⁴⁷

⁴⁴⁴ 65% to 85% of Torah Instructions

⁴⁴⁵ Num 6:3-5, 7; Lev 21:11

⁴⁴⁶ Deut 14:7, 19, and 21. Lev 11 to name some

"THE GOLDEN RULE

Therefore [So] all things whatsoever ye would – [as much as ever ye] will that men [humanity] should do to you, do ye even so [thus] to them: for this is the law [Torah] and the prophets." (ERRB Matt 7:12)

Luke taught that Yashua wore Tzitzit (fringes) according to Torah from Numbers 15:37:

"came up behind him and touched the tzitzit on His robe; instantly her hemorrhaging stopped." (CJB Luke 8:44)

"Came behind him, and touched the tassel of His garment: and immediately her issue of blood stopped." (WOY Luke 8:44)

"She came up behind him and touched the fringe of his garment, and immediately her discharge of blood ceased." (ESV Luke 8:44)

The Hebrew-Greek-English with Strong's numbers gives the following description of the *border / edge* of the garment from the King James Version (KJV) Bible, which confirms the translation in the CJB and WOY Bibles:

"Came behind him, and touched the border (G2899) of his garment: and immediately her issue of blood stanchd." (KJV Luke 8:44)

G2899 – κράσπεδον – kraspedon:

Of uncertain derivation; a *margin*, that is, (**specifically**) a **fringe or tassel**: - border, hem.

There is thus ample evidence that Yahshua kept the Torah 100% and the four Gospels teach that Yahshua lived His *earthly life* in absolute loyalty to the Covenants of YHVH. The same **Way** His people must follow His Footsteps during the life on earth. The only people (nations) Yahshua came for and the only ones He has sent His disciples to are, "*The lost sheep of the House of Israel*".⁴⁴⁸

⁴⁴⁷ Friedman, David. Ph.D. "*They loved the Torah*". What Yeshua's First Followers Really Thought About the Law. Lederer Books; Clarksville, Maryland. 136 Pages.

⁴⁴⁸ Matt 15:24; Matt 10:6

The four *Gospels* prove the importance and truths the Torah had in Yahshua's life, as Dr. Friedman cited in his book "They loved the Torah" when Yahshua was tempted by Satan, but He kept by the truths of the Torah, which became Yahshua's Spiritual, emotional and psychological defense when He had to face evil.⁴⁴⁹

Rabbi Harvey Falk translated and cited the following comment from Rabbi Ya'acov Emden⁴⁵⁰ regarding the happenings from the four *Gospels*: "*Yahshua strengthened the Torah of Moses majestically ...*"⁴⁵¹

Yahshua not only lived the life of Torah, but He also taught His talmidim (disciples) to live and teach the life of Torah **beyond** "the letter of the Law". The Word of *Yah Shua* is the *living water* to quench *faith* in the Messiah; and Torah is from the "Word" of YHVH. According to the sages of the time of Yahshua on earth, Rabbi Ya'acov Emden's opinion regarding Yahshua HaNotzri, HaMashiach (Jesus the Nazarene, the Messiah) is very valid and proven in the BIBLE:

*"Certainly, therefore, there is no doubt that **one who seeks truth** will agree with our thesis, that the **Nazarene and His Apostles never meant to abolish the Torah of Moses** from one who was born a Jew. Likewise did Paul write in his letter to the Corinthians (I Corinthians) that each should adhere to the faith in which each was called? They therefore acted in accordance with the Torah by forbidding circumcision to gentiles, according to the Halakha, as it is forbidden to one who does not accept the yoke of the commandments. They knew that it would be too difficult for the Gentiles to observe the Torah of Moses. They therefore forbade them to circumcise, and it would suffice that they observe the Seven Noahide Commandments, as commanded upon them through the Halakha from Moses at Sinai. It is therefore a habitual saying of mine (not as a hypocritical flatterer, God forbid, for I am of the faithful believers of Israel, and I know well that the remnant of Israel will not speak falsehood, nor will their mouths contain a deceitful tongue) **that the Nazarene brought about a double kindness in the world. On the one hand, He strengthened the Torah of Moses majestically**, as mentioned earlier, and **not one of our Sages spoke out more emphatically***

⁴⁴⁹ Chapter 4; Other examples of Yeshua's Torah Observance; Page 35.

⁴⁵⁰ Rabbi Jacob Emden meets Jesus the Nazarene (Yahshua haNotzri); Seder Olam Rabbah Vezuta (1757); <http://www.biblesearchers.com/yahshua/beithillel/SederOlamRabbahVezuta.shtml>; 18/09/2014.

⁴⁵¹ Falk, Harvey. "Jesus the Pharisee"; New York; Paulist; 1985.

concerning the immutability of the Torah. And on the other hand, he did much good for the Gentiles (**providing they do not turn about his intent as they please, as some foolish ones have done because they did not fully understand the intent of the Authors of the Gospels.**)⁴⁵²

Sha'ul (Paul) was a staunch observer of Torah and the *Messiah following* (Messianic) Jewish leader with Ya'acov (James – the head rabbi then). This was confirmed in Acts from the vow Sha'ul kept:

*"So do what we tell you. We have four men who are under a vow. Take them with you, be purified with them, and pay the expenses connected with having their heads shaved. Then everyone will know that there is nothing to these rumors which they have heard about you; but that, **on the contrary, you yourself stay in line and keep the Torah.**"* (CJB Acts 21:23-24)

People were taught of the Messiah from the Torah and when they believed what was written in the Torah, they became *Followers of the Messiah*. What made it any different today from the time of Acts?⁴⁵³ Why should it be any different today and why do so many teachers and preachers teach and preach Torah is *legalism* and not necessary anymore? Sha'ul continually showed how to be a *Follower of the Messiah* through example:

*"So they arranged a day with him and came to his quarters in large numbers. From morning until evening he explained the matter to them, giving a thorough witness about the Kingdom of God and **making use of both the Torah of Moshe and the Prophets to persuade them about Yeshua. Some were convinced by what he said, while others refused to believe.**"* (CJB Acts 28:23-25a)

Is this the reason why there are so many disagreements between believers of the Messiah today, because people *refuse* to know Torah, by actually rejecting the Gospel? The Word

⁴⁵² Destination Yisra'El - <http://destination-yisrael.biblesearchers.com/destination-yisrael/2012/02/french-president-nicolas-sarkozy-is-a-frankist-jew-no-wonder-he-resents-israeli-pm-benjamin-netanyahu.html>; 18/09/2014.

⁴⁵³ Acts 2:44-47, 4:32; Acts 8 shows Philip a Greek speaking Jew, a Follower of the Messiah, (Acts 6:5) teaches that Yahshua was the promised Messiah. Acts 11:27-30 also gives an example in what spirit the Followers of the Messiah kept the Torah: *"And in these days prophets came down from Jerusalem to Antioch. And one of them named Agabus rising up, he signified through the Spirit that a great famine was about to be over all the habitable earth, which also happened on Claudius Caesar's time. And according as any was prospered, the disciples, each of them, determined to send for ministry to those brothers living in Judea, which they also did, sending to the elders through the hand of Barnabas and Saul."* (LITV)

says, because "the hearts have grown thick, for the fear they should see with their eyes and the ears barely even hear".⁴⁵⁴⁴⁵⁵

3) GRACE and the Word

Grace must be found in the Eyes of GOD when a person has *faith* in Him. Grace is *frequently pushed* above text in the BIBLE when *rectification of sin*⁴⁵⁶ is cited by Scripture to show *reprove* and *correction* of sin; when Scripture explicitly said *correction of sin* must come from Scripture. *Grace* is not *above* the Word of GOD, but *grace* will only be known **from** the Word of GOD.

When correction of sin is given from Scripture to know sin⁴⁵⁷, which is a Command from GOD to adhere to not commit sin, people are then quick to say, "but we have the grace of GOD and He will forgive us". Yes, it is true that by the *grace of GOD* people will be forgiven of their sins and also through *grace can any person* be saved.

What people tend to forget is that every human being can only be saved by the *grace of GOD* and not just a certain group or religion of people receives the *gift of grace from GOD*. It seems if *Christendom* takes the *gift of grace from GOD* and put it above the Word from GOD for self-merit, *boasting* of receiving GOD's *grace free* and not as a *gift*. The *gift of grace* will be received from the Creator for living in "*faith in Him*" by following His complete Word, which shows *His Way* and *His Footsteps*. The same *Way and Footsteps* HaMashiach walked on earth *honouring* and *guarding* GOD's Instructions, Statutes and Precepts.

Grace and mercy was the *gift* to every human believer in GOD the Creator long before the "*legalization*" of *Christianity* started:

⁴⁵⁴ Acts 28:27

⁴⁵⁵ Matt 13:15

⁴⁵⁶ 2 Tim 3:16-17: "All Scripture is God-breathed and is valuable for teaching the truth, convicting of sin, correcting faults and training in right living; thus anyone who belongs to God may be fully equipped for every good work." 1 John 3:4: "Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, sin is violation of Torah."

⁴⁵⁷ CJB Rev 2:24-26: "But I say to you and to the rest in Thyatira, **as many as do not have this teaching, and who did not know the deep things of Satan**, as they say: **I am not casting another burden on you; but what you have, hold until I shall come. And the one overcoming, and the one keeping My works until the end**, "I will give to him authority over the nations,"

*"And Yahweh saw that the **wickedness of man** was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. And it repented Yahweh that He had made man on the earth, and it grieved Him at His heart. And Yahweh said, I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth; both man, and beast, and the creeping thing, and the fowls of the air; for it repenteth Me that I have made them. **But Noah found grace**⁴⁵⁸ (favour) **in the eyes of Yahweh**. These are the generations of Noah: Noah was a just (righteous) man and perfect (complete) in his generations, and **Noah walked with Elohim**."* (WOY Gen 6:5-9)

"Didn't I myself make all these things? This is how they all came to be," says Adonai. "The kind of person on whom I look with favour (grace) is one with a poor and humble spirit, who trembles at my word." (CJB Isa 66:2)

Noah was a righteous man and walked with GOD and had *faith* only in Him, just like Yahshua came to teach His followers and Apostles in Hebrews 11 and still Noah had to receive *favour (grace)* from the Almighty.

"By faith Noah, being warned by God concerning events as yet unseen, in reverent fear constructed an ark for the saving of his household. By this he condemned the world and became an heir of the righteousness that comes by faith." (ESV Heb 11:7)

All the early believers in GOD and the Patriarchs were saved only by the *gift of grace* through their *faith in GOD*, but never did they receive grace above their faith in GOD that they knew from the Word of YHVH. Grace comes from the knowledge of the Way of GOD through the Word of GOD; to believe in Him and to love only Him with all the might (heart, soul and being).

⁴⁵⁸ Strong's: **H2580** – חֵן - chên: From H2603; *graciousness*, that is, subjectively (*kindness, favor*) or objectively (*beauty*): - favour, grace (-ious), pleasant, precious, [well-] favoured.

HaMashiach said:

"He told him, ""You are to love Adonai your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength."" (CJB Matt 22:37)

Thereafter Yahshua explained where the knowledge of the *faith in GOD* is found and how the knowledge of love to the Creator GOD will grow:

"All of the Torah and the Prophets are dependent on these two mitzvot (Commandments)." (CJB Matt 22:40)

Grace is a *gift* from GOD! Grace is known only from the Word of GOD; therefore can *grace* never be taken and used *above* the Word of GOD. Grace cannot be used as a *substitute* to an instruction of GOD (Torah of GOD) when sin is wilfully committed⁴⁵⁹; when the truth has been revealed from within His Word. Torah cannot be run from or be discarded to expect the *gift* of grace from GOD. Listen to what Jude says:

*"For certain individuals, the ones written about long ago as being meant for this condemnation, have wormed their way in — ungodly people (1:15) **who pervert God's grace** (1:16, 18) **into a license for debauchery** (lasciviousness) and disown our only Master and Lord (1:19), Yeshua the Messiah." (CJB Jude 1:4)*

*"For certain men have come among you secretly, marked out before in the holy Writings for this evil fate, men without the fear of God, **turning his grace into an unclean thing**, and false to our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ." (1965 Bible in Basic English – Jude 1:4)*

*"For some people have slipped in among you unnoticed. They were written about long ago as being deserving of this condemnation because they are ungodly. **They turn the grace of our God into uncontrollable lust and deny** our only Master and Lord, Jesus the Messiah." (ISV Jude 1:4)*

⁴⁵⁹ Heb 10:26-28

The Prophecy of YHVH is Salvation was prophesied by the Prophets and the Torah was honoured:

*"Then I said, "Here I am! I (Yahshua) have come! In the scroll of the book it is written about me (Yahshua). I (Yahshua) **delight to do your will, my God. Your Law (Torah) is part of my inner being (within my heart).**" (ISV Psa 40:7-8)*

"To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them." (WOY Isa 8:20)

Grace can never replace Torah, i.e. grace cannot be separated from Torah. Grace must never be turned into debauchery⁴⁶⁰, into filthiness from not knowing sin, because it is all Godlessness. Grace cannot come as a gift from **perverting Torah into legalism**, because Torah teaches sin and Godlessness (wicked things). By not want to know sin and Godlessness / wickedness, a person actually says he / she wants to receive the *gift of GOD's grace for free*, which makes GOD's grace **cheap**.

Grace is not necessary if sin and Torah does not exist. Why does the human race need the *gift of grace* if the Torah (Law) is not necessary or abolished when the Torah **only** exist to know the Adversary (Satan)⁴⁶¹; to not do sin / evil things. GOD does not approve of things like perverting His Word (Torah) into *legalism* and abolishing His Torah.

Here is a short analysis of 1 John 3:4 to see if *grace* is necessary without Torah:

"Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, sin is violation of Torah." (CJB)

"Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law." (KJV)

"Everyone who sins is breaking God's law, for all sin is contrary to the law of God." (NLT)

⁴⁶⁰ Strong's dictionary: **G766** — ἀσελγεία — aselgeia:

From a compound of G1 (as a negative particle) and a presumed σεληγής selgēs (of uncertain derivation, but apparently meaning *continent*); *licentiousness* (sometimes including other vices): - filthy, lasciviousness, wantonness.

⁴⁶¹ Rev 2:24

"Everyone who is a sinner goes against the law, for sin is going against the law."

(BBE)

"Everyone practicing sin also practices lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness."

(LITV)

Above is the translation from five (5) different Bibles and it can be translated as anyone seems fit, but still does each and everyone teach that the Torah (Law) must **not** be broken (violated), rather should the Torah (Law) be practised to not commit sin. Sin is against (contrary to) GOD's Law (Torah) and it is idolatry to GOD.

Does the Author of the Book of Hebrews teach the truth in 10:28? Does Moshe teach the truth in the Torah in Deut 10:12-13 and 11:1? Does the Word in Flesh teach the truth in Matt 5:17? The BIBLE is full of these teachings: not to *pervert* Torah (Law) into *legalism* like many wants to do, but to teach righteousness and surely to receive the *gift of grace*.

Therefore:

- ✧ Without Torah there is no sin, sin would not be known
- ✧ Therefore if there is no sin no Torah would have been necessary
- ✧ If there is no sin then no *grace* is necessary
- ✧ If no *grace* is necessary then the Word of GOD is not necessary to preach faith
- ✧ Without preaching the Word of GOD to know faith in GOD, no BIBLE is necessary
- ✧ Without the BIBLE no preachers are necessary to preach from the BIBLE
- ✧ Without preachers no Assembly of GOD is necessary for holy convocations

If someone keeps on preaching *no* Torah (Law) of GOD is necessary then such a person teaches no *gift of grace* is necessary. All sin *is acknowledged* from the Torah (Law) and every person needs *grace* to become righteous. If the Torah (Law) is abolished or discarded or perverted into legalism, then sin will not be known⁴⁶² and then a person will keep on with wilfull sinning, which is an abomination (idolatry) to GOD.

⁴⁶² CJB Rom 7:8: "***But sin, seizing the opportunity afforded by the commandment, worked in me all kinds of evil desires — for apart from Torah, sin is dead.***"

By *perverting Torah into legalism*, one perverts the Character of GOD! Creator GOD who revealed Himself to Moshe [in the Torah] as the *GOD of grace*.⁴⁶³

*"Adonai passed before him and proclaimed: "YUD-HEH-VAV-HEH!!! Yud-Heh-Vav-Heh (יְהוָה) [Adonai] is God, **merciful and compassionate**, slow to anger, **rich in grace and truth**;" (CJB Exo 34:6)*

*"And the Lord went past before his eyes, saying, The Lord, the Lord, a God **full of pity and grace**, slow to wrath and **great in mercy and faith**;" (BBE Exo 34:6)*

4) ISRAEL and the "Church"

It is ironic when a "church member" or the "church" preacher admits to *being Israel* or as *part of the Israel nation*, but discard the text in the Word where *Israel* is mentioned. Israel cannot be Israel selectively and be Israel when it feels fit to be *Israel*.

What must *Israel* do or when is someone part of *Israel*? Does a person want to be part of the *commonwealth of Israel*? Let the Word of YHVH interpret for itself. The literal Word of the Creator teaches concerning *Israel*:

*"Then the man said, "From now on, you will no longer be called Ya`akov, but Isra'el; **because you have shown your strength to both God and men and have prevailed**." (CJB Gen 32:28(29))*

*"God said to Moshe, "Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh [I am/will be what I am/will be]," and added, "Here is what to say to the **people of Isra'el**: 'Ehyeh [I Am or **I Will Be**] has sent me to you.' God said further to Moshe, "**Say this to the people of Isra'el**: '**Yud-Heh-Vav-Heh (יְהוָה – YHVH) [Adonai], the God of your fathers**, the God of Avraham, the God of Yitz'chak and the God of Ya`akov, has sent me to you.' **This is My name forever**; this is how I am to be remembered **generation after generation**." (CJB Exo 3:14-15)*

⁴⁶³ CJB Exo 20:6: "**Exo 20:6** but displaying grace to the thousandth generation of those who love me and obey my mitzvot.", 34:6; Num 14:18

*"Then, when I stretch out my hand over Egypt and **bring the people of Isra'el out from among them**, the Egyptians will know that I am Adonai."* (CJB Exo 7:5)

The Creator Elohim should be the GOD of every person and nation and it should be remembered *forever for generation after generation*. This was said many times by the Creator so that people **remember it for all generations**, because if GOD did not make the exodus from Egypt happen, the whole nation of Israel would have been destroyed and Israel would not have existed anymore. The Word of YHVH continues to teach *Israel*:

*"But the people of Isra'el walked on **dry ground** in the sea, with the water walled up for them on their right and on their left. **On that day, Adonai saved Isra'el** from the Egyptians; Isra'el saw the Egyptians dead on the shore. When Isra'el saw the mighty deed that Adonai had performed against the Egyptians, the people feared Adonai, and they believed in Adonai and in his servant Moshe."* (WOY Exo 14:29-31)

Israel was saved **on that day** by Adonai the Creator. They walked on **dry ground** and did not struggle by walking on wet ground. If GOD Almighty did not save Israel there from the Egyptians they would have been destroyed and Israel would not have continued to exist anymore. Thank GOD that did not happen, because His Word to Avraham and Ya'akov (Israel) would have been questionable.

Israel had been saved (immersed through the waters of the see – deeper level of interpretation)⁴⁶⁴, they could *continue* with their existence together with their *faith in Adonai* by continuing adhering to His Torah; to love GOD with everything they have.

How does the Word of YHVH commands Israel to give honour to Him and to accept YHVH as their GOD:

*"Moshe went up to God, and Adonai called to him from the mountain: "Here is what you are to say to the household of Ya'akov, to tell the **people of Isra'el**: 'You have seen what I did to the Egyptians, and how I carried you on eagles' wings **and brought you to Myself**. Now **if you will pay careful attention** to what I say and **keep My covenant, then** you will be My own treasure from **among all the***

⁴⁶⁴ Levels of interpretation are discussed in Chapter 4

peoples, for all the earth is mine; and you will be a kingdom of cohanim (priests) for Me, a nation set apart.' These are the words you are to speak to the people of Isra'el." (WOY Exo 19:3-6)

Be quiet... sit still for a while and meditate on this verse and remember what GOD Almighty (El Shaddai) said here when you read the word *Israel* again in the BIBLE!

*"Next Moshe and the cohanim, who are L'vi'im, spoke to all Isra'el. They said, "**Be quiet; and listen, Isra'el! Today you have become the people of Adonai your God.** Therefore you are to listen to what Adonai your God says and obey his mitzvot and laws, which I am giving you today."* (CJB Deut 27:9-10)

People from the nation of Israel, give thanks to the Creator YHVH for making everyone priests in His Kingdom, who choose to be a Set-Apart nation among all the other nations. What does the Word of YHVH say must this nation do to be Set-Apart to Him to be a chosen one as cohanim (priest):

*"Adonai said to Moshe, "Here is what you are to say to the people of Isra'el: '**You yourselves have seen that I spoke with you from heaven.**'"* (CJB Exo 20:22)

*"To Moshe [Adonai] said, "Come up to Adonai — you, Aharon, Nadav, Avihu, and seventy of the leaders of Isra'el. Prostrate yourselves at a distance, **Moshe wrote down all the words of Adonai.** He rose early in the morning, built an altar at the base of the mountain and set upright twelve large stones **to represent the twelve tribes of Isra'el.**"* (CJB Exo 24:1, 4)

*"There I will meet with you. **I will speak with you from above the ark-cover,** from between the two k'ruvim which are on the ark for the testimony (His Sh'kainah Glory); about **all the orders I am giving you for the people of Isra'el.**"* (CJB Exo 25:22)

*"**Tell the people of Isra'el,** 'You are to observe my **Shabbats** (plural); for this is a **sign between Me and you through all your generations;** so that you will know that I am Adonai, who sets you apart for me."* (CJB Exo 31:13)

"Regularly, every Shabbat, he is to arrange them before Adonai ; they are from the people of Isra'el, as a covenant forever." (CJB Lev 24:8)

"The people of Isra'el are to keep the Shabbat, to observe Shabbat through all their generations as a perpetual [an eternal] covenant. It is a sign between Me and the people of Isra'el forever; for in six days Adonai made heaven and earth, but on the seventh day he stopped working and rested." (CJB Exo 31:16-17)

"Adonai said to Moshe, "Write these words down, because they are the terms of the covenant I have made with you and with Isra'el." (CJB Exo 34:27)

"They are not to profane the holy things of the people of Isra'el that they have set apart for Adonai" (CJB Lev 22:15)

"Tell the people of Isra'el: 'The designated times of Adonai which you are to proclaim as holy convocations are My designated times." (CJB Lev 23:2)

"Speak to the people of Isra'el, instructing them to make, through all their generations, tzitziyot on the corners of their garments, and to put with the tzitzit on each corner a blue thread." (CJB Num 15:38)

"Now, Isra'el, listen to the laws and rulings I (Adonai) am teaching you, in order to follow them, so that you will live; then you will go in and take possession of the land that Adonai, the God of your fathers, is giving you. This is the Torah which Moshe placed before the people of Isra'el –" (CJB Deut 4:1, 44)

"Then — Moshe called to all Isra'el and said to them, "Listen, Isra'el, to the laws and rulings which I am announcing in your hearing today, so that you will learn them and take care to obey them." (CJB Deut 5:1)

"Therefore listen, Isra'el, and take care to obey, so that things will go well with you, and so that you will increase greatly, as Adonai, the God of your ancestors, promised you by giving you a land flowing with milk and honey. Sh'ma, Yisra'el!

Adonai Eloheinu, Adonai echad [Hear, Isra'el! Adonai our God, Adonai is one];"
(CJB Deut 6:3-4)

"So now, Isra'el, all that Adonai your God asks from you is to fear Adonai your God, follow all his ways, love him and serve Adonai your God with all your heart and all your being;" (CJB Deut 10:12)

"Then Moshe and all the leaders of Isra'el gave orders to the people. They said, "Observe all the mitzvot I am giving you today." (CJB Deut 27:1)

"This is the blessing that Moshe, the man of God, spoke over the people of Isra'el before his death: "Adonai came from Sinai; from Se`ir he dawned on his people, shone forth from Mount Pa'ran; and with Him were myriads of holy ones; at his right hand was a fiery law for them. He truly loves the peoples - all his holy ones are in your hand; sitting at your feet, they receive your instruction, the Torah Moshe commanded us as an inheritance for the community of Ya`akov." (CJB Deut 33:1-4)

The Prophets, the Council of Adonai⁴⁶⁵, spoke everything of the Creator Words to Israel through Moshe, nothing against it. If YHVH wanted the people to believe something different in the future from what He gave to Moshe, He would have given it to the Prophets.⁴⁶⁶ YHVH would have revealed it to His Council, but GOD gave the following:

"He is there to be a sanctuary. But for both the houses of Isra'el he will be a stone to stumble over, a rock obstructing their way; a trap and a snare for the inhabitants of Yerushalayim. To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them." (CJB Isa 8:14, 20)

"The time is coming when Ya`akov will take root; Isra'el will bud and flower, and fill the whole world with a harvest. (The rescue from the forces of the world) On that day Adonai will beat out the grain between the Euphrates River and the Vadi of Egypt; and you will be gathered, one by one, people of Isra'el!" (CJB Isa 27:6, 12)

⁴⁶⁵ Amos 3:7; Jer 26:5

⁴⁶⁶ Amos 3:7

"People of Isra'el! Return to Him to whom you have been so deeply disloyal!"

(CJB Isa 31:6)

*"But you, Isra'el, my servant; Ya`akov, whom I have chosen, descendants of Avraham my friend, I have taken you from the ends of the earth, summoned you from its most distant parts and said to you, 'You are my servant' — I have chosen you, not rejected you. Don't be afraid, for I am with you; don't be distressed, for I am your God. I give you strength, I give you help, I support you with my victorious right hand. All those who were angry with you will be disgraced, put to shame; those who fought against you will be destroyed, brought to nothing. You will seek them but not find them, those who contended with you; yes, those who made war with you will be brought to nothing, nothing at all. For I, Adonai, your God, say to you, as I hold your right hand, 'Have no fear; I will help you. Have no fear, Ya`akov, you worm, **you men of Isra'el!**' I will help you," says Adonai; **"Your redeemer is the Holy One of Isra'el."*** (CJB Isa 41:8-14)

*"For Adonai will have compassion on Ya`akov — he will once again choose Isra'el and resettle them in their own land, where foreigners will join them, **attaching themselves to the house of Ya`akov.** Peoples will take and escort them to their homeland, and the house of Isra'el will possess them in the land of Adonai as male and female slaves. They will take their captors captive and rule over their oppressors."* (CJB Isa 14:1-2)

*"This is what the LORD of the Heavenly Armies says: "In the future, **ten men speaking all the languages of the nations** will grab hold of one Jewish person by the hem of his garment and say, 'Let us go up to Jerusalem with you, because we heard that God is with you.'"* (ISV Zech 8:23)

The Covenant of YHVH was breached and people faded from the Covenant. This Covenant will be fully restored among the whole House of Israel (Jew and Gentile) in the Kingdom of GOD. People will totally recognize this Covenant as truth again and the Torah (Law) of YHVH the Creator will be in the hearts and mind of the people. The Author of the Book Hebrews taught this prophecy direct from the mouth of Prophet Jeremiah:

*"Behold, the days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and the house of Judah, Not like the covenant that I made with their fathers on the day when I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt, my covenant that they broke, **though I was their husband**, declares the LORD. **For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, declares the LORD: I will put my law (Torah) within them, and I will write it on their hearts.** And I will be their God, and they shall be my people. And no longer shall each one teach his neighbour and each his brother, saying, 'Know the LORD,' for they shall all know me, from the least of them to the greatest, declares the LORD. For I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more."* (ESV Jer 31:31-34)

*"For if that first covenant had been faultless, there would have been no occasion to look for a second. For he finds fault with them when he says: "Behold, the days are coming, declares the Lord, when **I will establish a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah**, not like the covenant that I made with their fathers on the day when I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt. For they did not continue in my covenant, and so I showed no concern for them, declares the Lord. **For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, declares the Lord: I will put my laws (Torah) into their minds, and write them on their hearts,** and I will be their God, and they shall be my people."* (ESV Heb 8:7-10)

Everyone does not know this Covenant yet. If everyone knew this Covenant, then the Torah would have been written on everyones heart and it will be in everyones minds. If someone has the knowledge of something (the Torah in this context) it would have been *written* on the hearts and the *fruit* from the *heart* will pour from the *insight*, because of what was *put* (Torah) in the mind by GOD. People need to *accept* this Covenant from the Creator *again* and "say yes" to be part of the Bride (Yisra'El) of Elohim and let Him put the Torah in the minds and let it be written on the hearts!

Become part of the whole House of Israel and let GOD be the GOD of the people and people be people to GOD again. This is the very reason YHVH is Salvation (Yahshua) said explicitly that He **only** came for the lost *ones* (sheep) of the House of Israel and that His disciples should *rather* go and find the *lost ones* (sheep) of the House of Israel:

*"He (Yahshua) said, **"I (Yahshua) was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Isra'el."*** (CJB Matt 15:24)

*"These twelve Yahshua sent forth, and commanded them, saying, **Go not into the way of the Gentiles**, and into any city of the Samaritans enter ye not: **But go rather to the lost sheep of the house of Israel.**"* (WOY Matt 10:5-6)

Be part of the *commonwealth* of Israel and pray for the Land of Israel!

*"Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; burst into singing, O mountains! For YHVH has comforted his people, and will have mercy upon His afflicted. But Zion (Jerusalem) said, "YHVH has forsaken me, and YHVH has forgotten me. Never! Can a woman forget her nursing child, that she should not have compassion on the son of her womb? **Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee.** Behold, I have written your name upon the palms of My hands. **Ever before Me is a picture of Jerusalem's walls in ruins.** Soon thy children will come back; and all who are trying to destroy you will go away."* (WOY Isa 49:13-17)

*"Then what advantage has the Jew? What is the value of being circumcised? Much in every way! In the first place, **the Jews were entrusted with the very Words of GOD.** If some of them were unfaithful, so what? Does their faithlessness cancel God's faithfulness? Heaven forbid! God would be true even if everyone were a liar! — as the Tanakh says, **"so that you, God, may be proved right in your words** and win the verdict when you are put on trial."* (CJB Rom 3:1-4)

The "church" cannot just take the "title" of *Israel* and say the *church* and its members are now part of Israel, because the Word of GOD does not reveal such a fact or *dogma*. GOD said that everything will be declared in His Word and that nothing will happen if it was not declared through His Prophets, His Council. GOD did nowhere mention in His Word that the "church" will be Israel.

There is first of all a *mainland* named Israel, and can the *spiritual body* "called" *Israel* never replace the GOD created *mainland of Israel*! Augustine, a "Christian church

father"⁴⁶⁷ who converted to *Christianity* after reading the book "Hortensius" written by a *heathen*⁴⁶⁸, Cicero, said in his book of *Confessions*⁴⁶⁹, "I changed my affections and turned my prayers to you "Lord Cicero". *Theodicy's*⁴⁷⁰ origin is from this man Augustine, which is *theology of justifying* GOD. This is an absurd practise, because no human being can even try or start to imagine *justifying* the Creator. Augustine also started the *spiritualization* of Scripture⁴⁷¹ and it was quickly adopted by the Roman-Catholic, because it gave **enhanced importance** to the "church".

Augustine never *left* the *heathen* "cult" when he converted to the *Christian doctrine*, because the *cult*⁴⁷² was decisive for him. When the "*Confessions of Augustine*" and his "*Original Sin doctrine*" is extensively read, is it clear that Scripture is not taken as the *direct* Word from GOD and that he still had the *believe* of *Manichaeism*⁴⁷³ in his roots; and it is because of the *spiritualization of Scripture*. The "*Confessions of Augustine*" consist of *thirteen books* where ten (10) of the books were written about himself and three (3) about Scripture.⁴⁷⁴⁴⁷⁵

Most *Christian denominations* do not see a literal *new earth* on earth like Scripture explicitly gives proof of, but a *new Kingdom* in Heaven will exist for Eternity, which is not *Sola-Scriptura*. The *spiritualization of Scripture* within most of *Christianity* is problematic in their *dogma* and proof is in the research of Augustine above. Another reason is the

⁴⁶⁷ Augustine of Hippo, Wikipedia - http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Augustine_of_Hippo; 15/09/2014.

⁴⁶⁸ Augustine and Original Sin, Specialty Interests - <http://www.specialtyinterests.net/augustine.html>; 05/09/2014.

⁴⁶⁹ Confessions of Augustine, p 3.

⁴⁷⁰ Theodicy, Wikipedia - <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Theodicy>; 15/09/2014.

⁴⁷¹ Amillennial Problems; The pre-existing view, Lamb and Lion Ministries - http://www.lamblion.com/articles/articles_millennium3.php; 15/09/2014.

⁴⁷² Prolegomena: Avenues of Approach, The Stoa Consortium - <http://www.stoa.org/hippo/comm.html>: There is a proportion to be redressed, and no accurate guide to the correct balance. Augustine's Christianity was not 100% doctrine, 0% ritual, nor even 80%-20%; but was it 20% doctrine, 80% ritual? That is possible, but on balance unlikely. We are left to wander between the extremes, following our hunches. **What is clear is that cult was decisive for him: without cult, no Christianity.** But he was prepared to be **very lenient on matters of doctrine**; error alone has rarely been sufficient for excommunication: it is contumacy that draws anathema. He surely admitted to full church membership many ordinary citizens of Hippo for whom halting recital from memory of the apostle's creed and lord's prayer marked the upper limits of their capacity to master the verbal formulae of their new cult.

⁴⁷³ Manichaeism was started by Manichaeus (A.D. 215-275), a Persian who taught that all matter, everything that exists, is inherently evil. Specialty Interests - <http://www.specialtyinterests.net/augustine.html>; 15/09/2014.

⁴⁷⁴ From **AUGUSTINE: CONFESSIONS**. Newly translated and edited by **ALBERT C. OUTLER, Ph.D., D.D.** A Professor of Theology; Perkins School of Theology; Southern Methodist University; Dallas, Texas. 216 Pages

⁴⁷⁵ Picture: "Take up and read" on the life of Augustine, bishop of Hippo (now Annaba, Algeria) by Benozzo Gozzoli in [San Gimignano](#) (1465)

"believe" that the *church* is the new *Israel* replacing the old *Israel* composed of the Jewish people.

With this *Replacement Theology* by the *Christian fathers* is it clear that all the curses fell on the Jewish people and their blessings became the blessings of the *church* with the replacement of a curse onto the Jews, which still today provoke Anti-Semitism in the "Christian" churches. This is definitely not within the BIBLE Prophecy of the Creator.

It is not just Anti-Semitism, but outright not Scriptural at all! GOD instructs throughout the BIBLE to pray for the Land of Israel and for the people of the Holy Land. Yes, Israel the mainland is the Holy Land and not any other part of the world, if people want to believe it or not. The BIBLE says so and therefore GOD said so – therefore can it be taken as truth!

People need to accept the Covenant of YHVH and be part of the *children* of Israel **together** with the House of Y'hudah (Judah) to pass through the Gates of the Tribes of Israel:

"And had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of the children of Israel:" (WOY Rev 21:12)

People cannot change GOD's Word given *directly* to mankind from the Creator Himself, therefore must the BIBLE be the *literal* Word from GOD; and not taken *spiritually* first. Self-interpretation (personal interpretation) of the Word will occur and *Eiseges* (poor Exegeses) will be the cause of *believing something that is not written in the Scriptures*.

A person does not have the authority at all to change the Word of GOD, and it surely happens with personal interpretation. This is the very reason why *Christendom* has 41,000 denominations. Also there is another reason: the "Vicar of Christ"⁴⁷⁶. Such a person has been given the *authority* by the *church* to "represent God on earth". Absolute absurdity!

The pope (Saint) represents the "Vicar" on earth and he has the authority to *claim* or constitute a *principle*. This is the result of the origin of the "church" and not the continuation of the *Synagogue*, why pope Constantine's Sabbath change was approved,

⁴⁷⁶ Vicar of Christ, New Advent - <http://www.newadvent.org/cathen/15403b.htm>; 15/09/2014.

why the *Trinity* was accepted and why the *legalization* of *Christianity* were approved, because the people involved were seen as the "Vicar of Christ" at that time.

The *Vicar* is seen as the *substitute* for *Christ* (the Messiah) and he is the pastor of the **entire** "church". He also has the full, **supreme** and universal power over the **whole** "church". The *souls* are to be kept under universal safekeeping of a *Divine Person* of the Holy Spirit. It is **blasphemy** in the highest grade, against the Almighty's Word.⁴⁷⁷

*"The majesty, greatness and indescribable power of the true office of Vicar of Christ are such that a believer stands in awe of His divine Person. That any human being should lay claim to the office of Vicar of Christ seems totally absurd and blasphemous."*⁴⁷⁸

The BIBLE is full with text against such *doctrine* and against the *altering* of the Word⁴⁷⁹, and with all these *self-interpreted doctrines* came one of the *replacement theologies*; the *church* replacing *spiritually* the *old Israel* composing of the Jewish nation and "taking" the inherited blessing of Israel and placing a curse on the Jewish nation. People do not want to adhering to the Words of the Creator anymore and therefore is the Torah *perverted* to legalism when Scriptures clearly mention to observe the Torah.

5) Feasts of YHVH have been abolished

The question is, did Yahshua, the Apostles and His disciples observed the Feasts of YHVH according to their ancient Appointed Times? This discussion does not include the pagan feasts appointed by men, the post-apostolic theologians.

YHVH Set-Apart Feasts were given through His Word to Moshe and the *Salvation is YHVH* with His followers was *zealots* observing the Appointed Feasts, even in Jerusalem with all the Gentile and Jewish followers of HaMashiach.

If any man will do His will, he shall know of the doctrine (teaching), whether it be of Elohim, or whether I speak of myself. (WOY John 7:17)

⁴⁷⁷ ERRB **Act 4:12**: "Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men **by humanity**, whereby we must be saved."

⁴⁷⁸ Who is the true Vicar of Christ? The Roman Catholic Pope or the Holy Spirit? Christian Answers - <http://christiananswers.net/q-eden/popevicarofchrist.html>; 15/09/2014.

⁴⁷⁹ Torah – Deut 4:2, 12:32; Prophets – Prov 30:6; Messianic Writings – Rev 22:18-19.

The biggest misconception about the Feasts is the misinterpretation of Col 2:16-17, because Christians are quick to *judge* the Jews and people who Set GOD's Feasts Apart, but they observe *man-made doctrine "religious"* feasts of pagan origin.

Let no [pagan] therefore judge you about food and drink, or about the distinctions of festivals and new moons (Rosh-Hodesh) or Shabbats, which are shadows of the things then future, but the body of Mashiyach. (AENT)

What did GOD say about His Shabbat:

*The people of Isra'el are to keep the Shabbat, **to observe Shabbat through all their generations** as a perpetual covenant. It is a sign between me and the people of Isra'el **forever**; for in six days Adonai made heaven and earth, but on the **seventh day** he stopped working and rested."* (CJB Exo 31:16-17)

What do we have to do in the New Kingdom of GOD when He comes as One (Echad) in the Name of HaMashiach:

*Finally, everyone remaining from all the nations that came to attack Yerushalayim will go up every year to worship the king, Adonai-Tzva'ot, and to **keep the festival of Sukkot (Tabernacles)**. If **any of the families of the earth** does not go up to Yerushalayim to worship the king, Adonai-Tzva'ot, no rain will fall on them. This will be Egypt's punishment and the **punishment of all the nations** that don't go up to keep the **festival of Sukkot**. (CJB Zech 14:16-17, 19)*

People still say but surely it will not be necessary anymore to go up to Israel (Jerusalem) then. As the researcher I cannot tell anyone what he or she must do, but what I can say is read and listen to the Word of Yah and see what He tells you to do without any own interpretation or explanation *that is not in the Word*. Above it clearly says what people *will have to do* and what *will be the consequences* if they don't.

Rebellion against YHVH the Creator is rebellion against His literal direct Word, which is outright *witchcraft*. Witchcraft is directly connected in Scripture with *idolatry* when someone is against the direct Word of GOD. It is seen as pagan practices mostly originated from Babylon (it was proven in this research that all *worldly customs and doctrines* were from

pagan and Babylon origin, like Christmas, Easter, Sunday worship, sorcery, Halloween, child sacrifice on 25th December, etc), which is literally against GOD's spoken Word⁴⁸⁰:

"You were at ease in your wickedness, you thought, "No one sees me." Your "wisdom" and "knowledge" perverted you, as you thought to yourself, "I am important, and no one else." (CJB Isa 47:10)

Satan is the *inventer of lies* and he wants people to believe in the lies man (with the works of the devil) created to follow and to dishonour GOD the Creator who spoke the truth in His Word, like the Feasts of GOD replaced with feasts of pagan origin (Christ[mass], Halloween and Easter) and Shabbat replaced with [Sun]day worship.⁴⁸¹

The Feasts of YHVH will only end when the sun, moon and cosmos are non-existent anymore and when *time itself ends*.⁴⁸² Just like Rav (Rabbi) Sha'ul said in Collossians 2 that the Feasts assist to *equip the Body* of HaMashiach and those who *guard and protect* the Feasts of YHVH must keep on doing so and do not let anyone (pagan who observes pagan feasts) judge you when observing the Mo'edim (Appointed Times Feasts).

⁴⁸⁰ Listen what the *Believer's Bible Commentary* on e-sword has to say regarding such practice under the heading, **Comfort from the fall of Babylon**: "2. She was proud and arrogant, supposing that nothing could ever destroy her prosperity. She will become widowed and childless **in one day**, and none of her **sorceries** will be able to prevent the calamity. 3. She considered herself immune from detection and punishment. But her smugness and proud self-sufficiency will be rewarded with disaster."

According to Lange's Commentary OT / NT the following is said under the heading, **The Fall of Babylon, the Causes of it, and the uselessness of the means to prevent it** under Exegetical and Critical Commentary: "Jehovah (GOD), as the only true God, neither desires nor uses human help. The taking of Babylon must appear as God's doing, not as a fact accomplished by human power. And if it be asked, what God has showed Himself stronger than the gods of Babylon, thus who is the accomplisher of the said divine doing, Israel alone has the correct reply when it cries out: **Our Redeemer, Jehovah of hosts is His name** (comp. Isa 48:2; Isa 54:5), **the Holy One of Israel**"

More commentary regarding *witchcraft* by Lange: "For conjuring demons, as in general all sorts of sorcery were often joined with the offer of sacrifices, sometimes of pleasure, sometimes atrocious. "The relation of all idolatry with sorcery lies in this that **in the names of the gods the name of God is abused for egoistic, sinful ends, with the application of self-elected, senseless and mercenary forms of religion**," says Lange in the article on witchcraft in [Herz](#). R. Enc. XVIII. p. 395."

⁴⁸¹ Lang's Commentary under **Doctrinal and Ethical**: "He would rather let the laws of nature grind him to pieces, than acknowledge a personal God that sees and judges all things. This endeavor to get the personal God out of the world, that has its source equally in fear and hatred, has not, however, its roots in human nature as such. For then it must be found in all men. **It is rather the hatred and fear of the devil that reflect themselves in those men** who, according to John 8:41-48, have the devil for their father."

⁴⁸² Matt 5:17-18

It is therefore of utmost importance to know the difference between the Torah of YHVH and the man-made doctrine and rules, because confusion will appear within the human mind and wrong interpretation (Eisegesis and not proper Exigesis) of the Word will cause to **not know the truth**. The following is a perfect example regarding the Feasts:

*Wherefore if ye be dead with the Messiah from the rudiments of the world, why, as though living in the world, are ye subject to ordinances, Touch not; taste not; handle not; Which all are to perish with the using; **after the commandments and doctrines of men?** (WOY Col 2:20-22)*

Why do most people not understand these verses correctly? Because the Torah is not yet in the minds and on the hearts of every person to observe them, people misinterpret Collossians 2, even if they read verse 22.

Is the Feasts of Yah doctrine of man or commandments of men, or are they Appointed by GOD Himself? Is the Torah Instructions regarding holy / clean and unholy / unclean food doctrine and commandments of men? Are the Instructions by GOD of the *drinking of wine* doctrine and commandments of men? Are the Rosh-Hodesh (new moons) and Shabbats Instructed and Created by Almighty GOD or instructed by men?

Everything above have been instructed and Created by YHVH the Creator, and men came and wilfully disobey these Commandments of GOD by discarding the Torah of YHVH. People started to follow the re-birthed pagan rituals and festivals, which are *doctrines of men* followed under *Christianity* **legalized** by *Roman-Catholic Christianity*.

*These men are filthy spots at your festive gatherings meant to foster love; they share your meals without a qualm, while caring only for themselves. They are waterless clouds carried along by the winds; trees without fruit even in autumn, and doubly dead because they have been uprooted; savage sea-waves heaving forth their shameful deeds like foam; wandering stars for whom the blackest darkness has been reserved forever. Moreover, Hanokh (Enoch), in the seventh generation starting with Adam, also prophesied about these men, saying, "Look! Adonai came with his myriads of holy ones to execute judgement against everyone, that is, to **convict all the godless for their godless deeds** which they have done in such a godless way, and for all the harsh words these godless*

*sinners have spoken against him." These people are grumblers and complainers, they follow their **evil passions**, their mouths speak grandiosities, and they flatter others to gain advantage. (CJB Jude 12-16)*

Without Torah, people will not know righteousness from unrighteousness and Godly deeds from godless deeds. The Mo'edim⁴⁸³ of YHVH is neglected and abolished where pagan origin man-made doctrines of feasts are kept as holy feasts, but the Feasts of the body of the Messiah will be restored to gather His followers to worship Him.

*And it shall come to pass, that from **one new moon to another**, and from one **Sabbath to another**, shall **all flesh come to worship before me**, saith Yahweh. (CJB Isa 66:23)*

HaMashiach even instructed His Talmudim (Disciples) to observe the Feast of Sukkot and Yahshua Himself went to the Feasts and even went to the Temple in Israel to teach people.

*But the **festival of Sukkot** (Tabernacles) in Y'hudah was near; The **world** can't hate you, but it does hate Me, **because I keep telling it how wicked its ways are. You, go on up to the festival**; as for me, I am not going up to this festival now, because the right time for me has not yet come." (CJB John 7:2, 7-8)*

Now about the midst of the feast Yahshua went up into the temple, and taught. (CJB John 7:14)

HaMashiach said people will know the truth and righteousness when they know what GOD has Spoken from His Word.

*Yahshua answered them, and said, **My doctrine is not mine, but his (YHVH) that sent me**. If any man will do his (YHVH) will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of Elohim, or whether I speak of myself. He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own honour: but **he that seeketh his (YHVH) honour that sent him***

⁴⁸³ Appointed Feasts

(Yahshua), the same is true, and **no unrighteousness is in him** (Yahshua).

(WOY John 7:16-18)⁴⁸⁴

On the last day, the seventh (7th) day of the Feast, Yahshua said those who are thirsty let them **drink**, implies that Yahshua observed all seven Feast days of YHVH.

Collossians 2:16 says that people must not judge those who observe the consumption of the *food and drink* of the Feasts and Shabbats the Torah instructs, because it is of the Body of Mashiach. HaMashiach ordered the people to drink according Torah during the Mo'edim (Appointed Feast) and the Rosh-Hodesh (new moon) declared the start of the festival.

*In the **last day**, that **great day of the feast**, Yahshua stood and cried, saying, If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and **drink**.* (WOY John 7:37)

Knowing the Torah will give wisdom to know righteousness, like knowing the Feasts of YHVH, which have been set already before the Foundation of the earth from pagan feasts.

"But this multitude who know not the Torah are cursed!" (ECB John 7:49)⁴⁸⁵

Listen to the *doctrine of YHVH*, which is the *doctrine of His Word* only. Precious few do *fellowship* with HaMashiach where others go and listen to *ideas of others* when "fellowship". GOD the Creator does not look for quantity during His holy convocation He called to gather, but He calls *only the lost sheep from the House of Israel* to observe the Word of YHVH and to gather *Spiritual refinement* during this *holy convocation gatherings*⁴⁸⁶.

"Hear the Word of YVHV, you that tremble at His word; Your brethren that hated you, that cast you out for My Name's sake, said, Let YHVH be honoured: but he shall appear to your joy, and they shall be ashamed." (CJB Isa 66:5)

⁴⁸⁴ Deut 18:18-19

⁴⁸⁵ Heb 10:28

⁴⁸⁶ Lev 23:2

3.18 MESSIAH WILL COME AS A THIEF

How can the Messiah's Coming be compared to a thief? How is it possible that the Messiah will *sneek up* to the children He loves if He said explicitly that GOD will be a GOD to the people and the people will be His people if they follow His Way? A *thief* is a wicked person and an unrighteous person according to the Torah, how is it possible for the Messiah to be mentioned "like a thief" in the smallest way?

This is because proper interpretation and Exegesis are not used when text is interpreted. The Word said explicitly that this will happen if a person is not expecting Him, if a person is *not ready* to receive the Messiah in a home. People should be *looking out* for Him and *prepare* themselves for the Messiah **not to be** "like a thief" in the night.

Night represents darkness, death, unrighteousness, sin and Satan where light represents life, righteousness, Torah and Adonai.

The Word exhorts vigilance:

"So stay alert, because you don't know on what day your Lord will come. But you do know this: had the owner of the house known when the thief was coming, he would have stayed awake and not allowed his house to be broken into. Therefore you too must always be ready, for the Son of Man will come when you are not expecting him. "Who is the faithful and sensible servant whose master puts him in charge of the household staff, to give them their food at the proper time?" It will go well with that servant if he is found doing his job when his master comes. Yes, I tell you that he will put him in charge of all he owns. But if that servant is wicked and says to himself, 'My master is taking his time'; and he starts beating up his fellow servants and spends his time eating and drinking with drunkards; :50 then his master will come on a day the servant does not expect, at a time he doesn't know;" (CJB Matt 24:42-50)

A person must be ready at all times. Do not delay! If a person does not follow His Way and the person suddenly dies, then the *thief* will *rob* him from his *belongings*. Have *oil* always

 Research is the process of elimination, whatever remains is the truth.⁴⁸⁷ *Hendrik Stephanus Marthinus Josephus Marx*
in the *lamp* to shine and to give *light* for the *Path* to follow.⁴⁸⁷ Do not be caught off guard
says the Word, be prepared. Be on the *look-out*:

"There will appear signs in the sun, moon and stars; and on earth, nations will be in anxiety and bewilderment at the sound and surge of the sea, as people faint with fear at the prospect of what is overtaking the world; for the powers in heaven will be shaken." (CJB Luke 21:25-26)

There are numerous Prophecies of the Coming of the Messiah and the prophecy is not to be a secret or to be mysterious to believers, but should be known to be *prepared* for His Coming:

*"When these things start to happen, stand up and hold your heads high; **because you are about to be liberated!**" Then he told them a parable: "Look at the **fig tree** — indeed, all the trees. As soon as they sprout leaves, you can see for yourselves that summer is near. In the same way, when you see **these things taking place**, you are to know that the **Kingdom of God is near!** Yes! I tell you that this people will certainly not pass away before it has all happened."* (CJB Luke 21:28-32)

To know if the *fig tree* sprouted its leaves will make the people known that the *Kingdom of GOD* is near. Who or what is the *fig tree*?

Israel in the past: prophecy of the *Vineyard*. (Jer 12:7-17; Isa 5:7)

Israel currently: prophecy of the *Fig tree*. (Hos 9:10)

Israel of the future: prophecy of the *Olive tree*. (Rom 11:17-28)

Will the people know when to expect the *Son of Man* not to be caught by a *thief*, *Satan*?

The prophecy of the Coming of the *Son of Man* says the following:

*"Then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, all the tribes of the Land will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with tremendous power and glory. He will send out his angels with a **great shofar**; and they will gather together his **chosen people** from the four winds, from one end of*

⁴⁸⁷ WOY Prov 6:23: "For the commandment *is* a lamp; and the law *is* light; and reproofs of instruction are the way of life."

heaven to the other. "Now let the **fig tree teach you its lesson**: when its branches begin to sprout and leaves appear, you know that **summer is approaching**. In the same way, **when you see all these things, you are to know that the time is near, right at the door**. Yes! I tell you that this people will certainly not pass away before all these things happen⁴⁸⁸. Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away. "But when that day and hour will come, no one knows — not the angels in heaven, not the Son, only the Father. **For the Son of Man's coming will be just as it was in the days of Noah.**" (CJB Matt 24:30-37)

The shofar will sound loud. Summer will approach. *This* generation will not pass before these things happen, knowing that the time is *near*, right at the door. It will be exactly like in the days of Noah.

When is it within *this generation* to be certain to know the *time is near*? When is the start of *this* generation and how long is a generation in the Prophetic Word?

"The span of our life is seventy years, or if we are strong, eighty; yet at best it is toil and sorrow, over in a moment, and then we are gone." (CJB Psa 90:10)

The generation started when the branches begin to sprout and when leaves started to appear of the *fig tree* (Israel). When did this Prophetic Word became reality? In 1948 Israel became a *nation* again and the *fig tree* started to *blossom*. This generation of 70 years or 80 years if the nation is strong, is the timespan for Messiah to come.

The day or hour is not known, but the season is known to this generation. The season is known, because the type and shadow of the Coming of the Messiah is Yom Teruah (Rosh Hashanah) when the sound of the shofar will be loud (Feast of Trumpets). This Feast is celebrated over two (days) and therefore will we not know which day it will be or the year, but the world is for certain in the end-time of this generation, right at the door!

It will be as in the time of Noah, when the *man of righteousness*, made preparation for the "coming". Everybody must be *prepared* just like him and his family, living a righteous life not to be taken away by the wrath of the Creator.

⁴⁸⁸ KJV, WOY, ECB Matt 24:34: "This generation never no way passes until all these fulfill:"

This Prophetic Word is a warning to humankind to be *prepared* and be dressed with *fine white linen*, which is the symbol of *righteous deeds*.⁴⁸⁹ Be prepared!

3.19 SUMMARY OF FACTS ESTABLISHED

1. Every person should appreciate what GOD had done to communicate His Word **with** us and that GOD's Word cannot be personally interpreted, because no Prophecy is from man, but all from the Creator declared from the beginning.
2. Believers must use proper Exegesis and Hermeneutic tools when interpreting the Word of GOD for understanding.⁴⁹⁰
3. This Chapter and dissertation is not to *provoke* "Christianity" to disbelieve, but to *provoke* to love, to truly love GOD the Creator with the whole being.⁴⁹¹
4. This research was chosen; because *YHVH is Salvation* came to earth and He explicitly said similar to the love of GOD everybody should love thy neighbour like you love yourself.
5. GOD gave explicit Instructions to Ezekiel as a *Watchman* and the researcher also wants to obey these Instructions of GOD; to "warn" every believer (righteous person) and non-believer (non-righteous person) of the Truth from within Scriptures.⁴⁹²
6. Make clear distinctions between GOD's Commands given in the whole BIBLE and the commands of man, because the commands of man normally contradict the Commands of the Creator.
7. Commands of man will not be found in the BIBLE and they are described by GOD as *doctrine of man or traditions of man*, by setting aside the Commandments of GOD.⁴⁹³
8. The Messiah is a Jew and He will return with all His Jewishness just like He Ascended and He will return as the Lion of Y'hudah (Zion).

⁴⁸⁹ Rev 19:8

⁴⁹⁰ "Once we appreciate what God has done to communicate with us, we may begin to apply the principals of interpretation, or hermeneutics, to the text. To be successful this process must take into account the cultural, historical, and language barriers that limit our understanding of the original writings. There are no shortcuts to the hard work necessary to accomplish this task.

Some have wrongly argued that knowledge of the culture and languages of biblical times is not necessary, that the Holy Spirit will interpret the text for us. The role of the Holy Spirit is to illumine the believer in order to accept and apply what is found in Scripture. The Bible says that the natural man does not accept the things of the Spirit (1 Cor 2:14). The Greek word for "accept" means "to take something willingly and with pleasure." The key role of the Spirit is not to add information to the text, or to give us special translating abilities, but to soften our hearts in order to receive what is there.": GOD's Communication Link, Leaderu -

<http://www.leaderu.com/orgs/probe/docs/hermen.html>; 08/09/2014.

⁴⁹¹ Matt 22:36-40; Deut 10:12-13

⁴⁹² Ezek 3:17-21

⁴⁹³ Matt 15; Mark 7

9. Anti-Semitism towards the Jews ignited persecution of the Jews from early *Christian church fathers*, which caused praising and honouring YHVH the Creator different from the Jewish nation.
10. Early Messiah Followers were all Jewish people and non-Jews fellowshipped with the Jews in Synagogues.
11. Pagan practices were adopted again from Babylon and implemented in the *Christianity* religion, like Christmas, Easter, Halloween, Sun worshipping and Trinity. Tertullian, an early church father admitted to Sunday as the *sun worship day*.
12. All the changes happened because of the "appointed" pope as the "Vicar of Christ", which is the *substitute* for the Messiah on earth and has authority as pastor over the whole church, which is totally blasphemy and idolatry in the Eyes of the Creator. Constantine was one of them.
13. All Greek pagan gods were born on December 25th, where "Christs" birth originated from, because the Creator's Appointed Feasts are not known in Scripture.
14. Christ originated from Khristos (Greek), which is from Mashiach (Hebrew).
15. Yahshua or Yeshua was given the Name by YHVH, because the Name is the exact essence of It's meaning: "*YHVH is Salvation*".
16. Yahshua's Name was changed by the Romans after their Greek gods, just like everything else they named after like the days of the week and the names of the months.
17. Yahshua was changed to "Iesous", where the name "Jesus" came from and the Name only originated in the 1600's.
18. Iesous comes from *IE SOUS*, which means "Hail Zeus".
19. The early church father Augustine started the Replacement Theology of: *Iesous* came and replace the Torah (Law), which is totally wrong *doctrine*.
20. Torah existed through the Word of the Creator, which was Spoken directly by the Mouth of the Creator, which is Prophecy of the Creator.
21. The Word of the Creator became Flesh and this Word is exactly the same yesterday, today and tomorrow; and this Word in the beginning is nothing different from the Word that will return at the end.
22. Sabbath Day was the seventh day of creation, it is still today the seventh day (secular Saturday) and it will be the seventh day until Heaven and earth is non-existent. The same goes for the Feasts of the Creator and the Torah He created.

23. The Creator gave humankind only His direct and literal Word to adhere to, to learn and to teach and to never stop Worshipping Him; and the highest form of Worshipping YHVH the Creator is to keep on studying His Word, Yahshua HaMashiach.
24. By acknowledging this a person will know how to use Scripture to seek for Scripture to interpret Scripture with Scripture.
25. Everything humankind needs to know and have to know is in the Word of YHVH, because YHVH is the Salvation of all humankind.
26. Every human being needs *favour* (grace / mercy) from YHVH, because all mankind is with sin and everyone needs to know the Torah-Giver's spoken Instructions to know sin to find *favour* in the eyes of the Redeemer and Maker. GOD's *Favour* is not only for one "religion group", but for every human being.



CHAPTER 4

Solution and Model of the Research

4.1.	Introduction	227
4.2.	Principles of PARDES	231
	• P'shat	232
	• Remez	233
	• D'rash	234
	• Sud	238
4.3.	PRDS – PARDES for correct interpretation	244
4.4.	Examples of Sola-Scriptura	249
4.5.	Researcher's PARDES interpretation	252
4.6.	Summary of facts established	254

With regards to the proper understanding of the Hebrew Scriptures in their proper context, including the Books / Writings of the Apostles, there are in fact "levels" of interpretation that must be taken into consideration without practising personal (self / own) interpretation.

These were the ancient methods used to write and interpret Scripture by the Authors themselves as well as the audience of their time and their culture played a vital role. Now come and journey with me as we mine for the hidden jewels in Scripture using only Scripture to interpret Scripture.

Let's use Psalms of the Prophet David ben Isai:

"1 My people, give ear to my Torah⁴⁹⁴, Incline your ears to the words of my mouth.

The first eleven (11) verses explain the Teaching from the Creator's Torah / Law from the direct Voice of His Mouth. Words of wisdom and discipline to be taught to everyone's children for all their generations and not to withheld these Teachings from a child:

⁴⁹⁴ In vv. 1-11 the words "teaching, words, witness, commands, covenant, law," are used interchangeably, as parallels, almost synonymously. We find the same in Ps. 119.

2 I open my mouth in a parable; I utter riddles of old, 3 Which we have heard and known, For our fathers have related them to us. 4 We do not hide them from their children, Relating to the generation to come the praises of יהוה (YHVH / YAHUAH), And His strength and His wonders which He has done.

The Creator demanded Avraham to teach the children in all their generations to keep His Words to live a *righteous and just way*⁴⁹⁵. The whole / complete Teaching of the Torah is *righteous* and must **never** leave the *heart* of his children⁴⁹⁶. Avraham and his generations after him were Torah observant people within their hearts and they must be the witness of the Creator's Torah Teachings, because His Torah Instruction is a Witness of His Word⁴⁹⁷:

5 For He raised a witness in Ya'aqob, And set a Torah in Yisra'el, Which He commanded our fathers, To teach them to their children;

The Torah Teachings of the Creator are the Commandments, Right-Rulings, Statutes, Precepts and Judgements set by the Almighty⁴⁹⁸, not to be burdensome, but to be kept in the heart just as Avraham (Gen 26.5) kept the Torah, to be *prosperous* wherever believers in YAHUAH find themselves to live and where they travel to⁴⁹⁹:

6 That it might be known to a generation to come, To children who would be born, To rise up and relate them to their children, 7 And place their trust in Elohim, And not forget the works of Ėl, But watch over His commands,

⁴⁹⁵ CJB Gen 18.19: "For I have made myself known to him, so that he will give orders to his children and to his household after him to keep the way of Adonai and to do what is right and just, so that Adonai may bring about for Avraham what he has promised him."

⁴⁹⁶ CJB Deut 4.8-9: "And what great nation is there that has such laws and righteous right-rulings like all this Torah which I set before you this day? Only, guard yourself, and guard your life diligently, lest you forget the Words your eyes have seen, and lest they turn aside from your heart all the days of your life. And you shall make them known to your children and your grandchildren. "

⁴⁹⁷ Scriptures 1998+ Deut 4.44-45: "And this is the Torah which Mosheh set before the children of Yisra'el. These are the witnesses, and the laws, and the right-rulings which Mosheh spoke to the children of Yisra'el after they came out of Mitsrayim," Deut 6.17-18a: "Diligently guard the commands of יהוה your Elohim, and His witnesses, and His laws which He has commanded you. "And you shall do what is right and good in the eyes of יהוה"

⁴⁹⁸ Scriptures 1998+ Deut 6.1-2: "And this is the command, the laws and right-rulings which יהוה your Elohim has commanded, to teach you to do in the land which you are passing over to possess, so that you fear יהוה your Elohim, to guard all His laws and His commands which I command you, you and your son and your grandson, all the days of your life, and that your days be prolonged."

⁴⁹⁹ Scriptures 1998+ Deut 6.1-2: "And these Words which I am commanding you today shall be in your heart, and you shall impress them upon your children, and shall speak of them when you sit in your house, and when you walk by the way, and when you lie down, and when you rise up,"

8 And not be like their fathers, A stubborn and rebellious generation, A generation which did not prepare its heart, Whose spirit was not steadfast to Ėl. 9 The children of Ephrayim, armed bowmen, Turned back in the day of battle. 10 They did not guard the covenant of Elohim, And they refused to walk in His Torah,

These Words of the Creator are so *perverted* and *twisted* for millennia by pastors and preachers by teaching and preaching that observing of Torah is labled as "legalism". Why would the Creator specifically Teaches obedience to His Torah will lead to blessings and love from the Almighty; and your fruit will be proof of your obedience⁵⁰⁰? When were these blessings abolished⁵⁰¹ or withdrawn from the generations of Avraham?

11 And they forgot His deeds And His wonders which He had shown them.

The Creator said so many times that people must not forget His Teachings and His Righteous Rulings. He even said that those who forget His Righteous Rulings that He will forget them⁵⁰². He did so many signs and wonders *for* people to remember His Authority and for people to never forget the Teachings of the Torah He gave:

12 He did wonders in the sight of their fathers, In the land of Mitsrayim, in the field of Tso'an. 13 He split the sea and caused them to pass through, And He made the waters stand up like a heap, 14 And led them with the cloud by day, And all the night with a light of fire. 15 He split the rocks in the wilderness, And made them drink, as from the great depths, 16 And brought forth streams from the rock, And caused waters to come down as rivers. 17 Yet they sinned still more against Him

⁵⁰⁰ CJB Deut 7.11-13: "Therefore, you are to keep the mitzvot, laws and rulings which I am giving you today, and obey them. "Because you are listening to these rulings, keeping and obeying them, Adonai your God will keep with you the covenant and mercy that he swore to your ancestors. He will love you, bless you and increase your numbers; he will also bless the fruit of your body and the fruit of your ground - your grain, wine, olive oil and the young of your cattle and sheep - in the land he swore to your ancestors that he would give you."

⁵⁰¹ Scriptures 1998+ Matt 5.17-20" "17Do not think that I came to destroy the Torah or the Prophets.(1) I did not come to destroy but to complete. Footnote: 1 The Law and the Prophets is a term used for the pre-Messianic Scriptures. 18 "For truly, I say to you, till the heaven and the earth pass away, one jot or one tittle shall by no means pass from the Torah till all be done.(2) Footnote: 2 Lk. 16:17. 19 Whoever, then, breaks one of the least of these commands, and teaches men so, shall be called least in the reign of the heavens; but whoever does and teaches them, he shall be called great in the reign of the heavens. 20 For I say to you, that unless your righteousness exceeds that of the scribes and Pharisees,(3) you shall by no means enter into the reign of the heavens. Footnote: (3) Mt. 15:3-9, Mk. 7:7-13, John 7:19, Acts 7:53, Rom. 2:23-27, Gal. 6:13."

⁵⁰² Scriptures 1998+ Hosea 4.6: "My people have perished for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I reject you from being priest for Me. Since you have forgotten the Torah of your Elohim, I also forget your children. As they were increased, so they sinned against Me. My esteem they have changed into shame."

To rebel against the Most High in the desert. 18 And they tried Ėl in their heart
By asking food according to their desire. 19 And they spoke against Elohim. They
said, "Is Ėl able to set a table in the wilderness? 20 "Look, He struck the rock, So
that the waters gushed out, And the streams overflowed. Is He able to give bread
also? Would He provide meat for His people?" 21 Therefore יהוה heard, and He
was wroth; So a fire was kindled against Ya'aqob, And displeasure also came up
against Yisra'el, 22 Because they did not believe in Elohim, Neither did they trust
in His deliverance. 23 Yet He had commanded the clouds above, And opened the
doors of the heavens,

The water flowing from the rock came from the Works of the Creator to give them *life* so they do not succumb of thirst. Some believers in the desert continued to *rebel* against the Creator even though all the miraculous Works done by the Almighty like giving them Heavenly manna daily to eat to give them *life* so that they do not starve of hunger. But they continued with their rebellious behavior. Is it not also still the situation today with so many people? People who have water to drink and bread to eat, but still murmur about how difficult life is!

24 And He rained down manna on them to eat, And He gave them the grain of the
heavens. 25 Men ate bread of the mighty; He sent them provisions to satisfaction.
26 He made an east wind blow in the heavens; And by His power He brought in
the south wind. 27 And He rained meat on them like the dust, And winged birds
like the sand of the seas, 28 And let them fall in the midst of His camp, All around
His Dwelling Place. 29 So they ate and were completely satisfied, For He brought
them what they desired.

The Book of Ecclesiastes says the more people receives the more will people want to have. People will not be satisfied ... If, they do not know and acknowledge the *Fear of the Creator*, and do not turn to Almighty to distinguish between "flesh and earthly desires" and what is Qadosh (Holy / Set-Apart) to Him for the salvation of your soul:

30 They had not turned away from their desire, Their food was still in their mouths,
31 When the wrath of Elohim came against them, And He slew among their fat
ones, And He struck down the choice ones of Yisra'el.

People so often say, "but we do not have a cruel GOD". No, a merciful and gracious Almighty we have, but to the unrighteous ones who does not have full heart circumcision and turn away from their sins, He will have no mercy. The Creator dismissed His creation Adam and Evah from His perfect Garden of Eden, because of their sin. The Creator saved only eight (8) righteous people from the whole eaerth after He poured down His wrath, because of wantonness of the flesh and earthly sin / wicked deeds (wickedness, which is also ungodliness and Lawlessness).

The eight Righteous ones 'continued a new beginning' (gematria of the number "8" in Hebrew is "a new beginning"), on the "new earth". Sodom and Gamorrah (they were wealthy cities then) were totally demolished with no survivors, because not one (1) righteous person could be found in these cities!

People do not want to acknowledge the Torah Teachings of the Almighty Creator, but still expect *mercy and grace* (favour) from Him. Grace and mercy will only be given and can only be received when a righteous person acknowledge the sin he / she is doing, because of their knowledge of sin (Torah).

Example: when a satanic person sees the wrong doing in his acts and chooses to continue with a satanic life, what mercy is left for that person if he does not repent of his *sinful / unrighteous* deeds (fruit) before he returns to dust? The same principle counts for a Jewish believer and for a Christian. Any human being needs to have the knowledge and understanding of sin to not [to do] sin and to live a righteous life in the eyes of the Creator.

Therefore, people need grace *for* acknowledging the sin that was committed. Knowledge of sin can be acquired only through the Torah Teachings of the Creator, but when the Torah of the Creator is *perverted* as *legalism*, how will knowledge of sin be known: **"Everyone doing sin also does lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness."**⁵⁰³

⁵⁰³ *Scriptures 1998+ Bible in 1 Joh 3.4. Here follows the translation from the CJB "Everyone who keeps sinning is violating Torah — indeed, **sin is violation of Torah.**" and the KJV "Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for **sin is the transgression of the law.**" Every single Bible translation says clearly and explicitly that sin is **against** the Law of GOD. Why then would people still try to abolish the Law / Toah of Elohim or want to judge those as legalistic when observing a life according the Torah Teachings of the Almighty Creator?*

32 In spite of all this they still sinned, And did not believe in His wonders. 33 So He ended their days in a breath, And their years in trouble. 34 When He slew them, then they sought Him, And they returned and did earnestly seek Ėl. 35 And they remembered that Elohim was their rock, And the Most High Ėl their redeemer. 36 But they flattered Him with their mouth, And they lied to Him with their tongue, 37 For their heart was not steadfast with Him, And they were not true to His covenant.

The Covenant of the Creator He made to Avraham and taught to His Servant Moshe is the Covenant every single person should want to keep, because the Covenant was given to His *firstborn* "son" Yisra'el⁵⁰⁴, the grandson and generation of the Patriarch father Avraham. Today also like in the days of the wilderness people tend to reject (rebellion) the promise of the Covenant and provoke the Almighty to Jealousy, because He is a Jealous Elohim who dares no *teasing and testing* of His Character⁵⁰⁵; His Torah:

*38 But He, the Compassionate One, Pardoned crookedness, And did not destroy them. And many a time He turned His displeasure away, And did not stir up all His wrath. 39 For He remembered that they were but flesh, A passing breath that does not return. 40 How often they rebelled against Him in the wilderness, And grieved Him in the desert! 41 And again and again they tried Ėl, **And provoked the Set-apart One of Yisra'el.** 42 They did not remember His hand, The day when He redeemed them from the adversary, 43 **How He worked His signs in Mitsrayim, And His wonders in the field of Tso'an.***

The Everlasting ABBA and Creator described to His Followers exactly how people have to follow Him and what will happen if people do not obey His Words in Exo 7.14 – Exo 12.42.

⁵⁰⁴ CJB Exo 4.22-23: "Then you are to tell Pharaoh: 'Adonai says, "Isra'el is my firstborn son. I have told you to let my son go in order to worship me, but you have refused to let him go. Well, then, I will kill your firstborn son!"'"

⁵⁰⁵ The second Commandment of the Ten Commandments, from the Troah Teachings of the Creator: CJB Exo 20.5-6: "You are not to bow down to them or serve them; for I, Adonai your God, **am a jealous God**, punishing the children **for the sins** of the parents to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me, **but displaying grace** to the thousandth generation of **those who love me and obey my mitzvot** (Commandments / Teachings)."

The Almighty used His Authority and even killed every firstborn of the enemy who rebelled against His Word⁵⁰⁶, rejecting the Character of the Creator (by not guarding it in their hearts); which represents fullness and completeness (fulfillment) of love. Prophet David, another Patriarch father of a believer in the One True Elohim (Acts 2.29) understood the True Character and Authority of the Creator Father: read Psalm 119! David also knew the consequences of Judgment of the Words from the Mouth of the Almighty:

44 He turned their rivers into blood, And they could not drink their streams. 45 He sent among them swarms of flies which devoured them, And frogs which destroyed them, 46 And gave their crops to the caterpillar, And their labour to the locust. 47 He destroyed their vines with hail, And their sycamore trees with frost, 48 And gave their beasts over to the hail, And their livestock to bolts of fire. 49 He sent on them the burning of His displeasure, Wrath, and rage, and distress, A deputation of messengers of evils. 50 He made a path for His displeasure; He did not spare their being from death, But gave their life over to the plague. 51 And He smote all the first-born in Mitsrayim, The first-fruits of strength in the tents of Ham,

Not one plague touched the children of Yisra'el. The Almighty Creator guarded His chosen people from His wrath and He even led them through a dry-bedded sea. Every single person who went up after His Firstborn Yisra'el was slaughtered (drowned) by the Hand of the Creator Himself! Just like in the days of Noach! No man lifted a sword. And yet, some of the people of Yisra'el were still not prepared to keep the Testimonies / Witnesses of the Torah of Elohim:

52 Then made His own people go forth like sheep, And led them in the wilderness like a flock. 53 And He led them on safely, And they did not fear, But the sea covered their enemies. 54 And He brought them to the border of His set-apart place, This mountain which His right hand had gained, 55 And drove out nations before them, And allotted them a measured inheritance, And made the tribes of Yisra'el dwell in their tents. 56 Yet they tried and rebelled Against the Most High

⁵⁰⁶ Is this also not the reason why the Almighty taught the exact message to Followers who do not want to know what is sin (deliberate sin) almost 2,000 years after the Covenant was given to Avraham: CJB Heb 10.26-28: "For if we **deliberately continue to sin** after receiving the **knowledge of the truth**, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, but only the terrifying prospect of Judgment, of raging fire that will consume the enemies. **Someone who disregards the Torah of Moshe** is put to death **without mercy** on the word of two or three witnesses."

Elohim (El Elyon), **And did not guard His witnesses,** 57 But they turned back And acted treacherously (turned away and were faithless), like their fathers; They twisted like a treacherous bow. 58 For they enraged (teased / provoked) Him with their high places, And moved Him to jealousy with their carved images. 59 When Elohim heard this, He was wroth, And greatly despised Yisra'el,

The Creator became also so angry with the peoples' ungodliness / Lawlessness Torahlessness when a Prophet (Eli) does not take firm action against the people who are disobedient to what the Creator expects that He put the Prophet's life on earth to an end. Just like Moshe was Eli also a judge over the people of Yisra'el to rule over them according the Torah Teachings of the Creator:

60 And He left the Dwelling Place of Shiloh, The Tent which He had set up among men. 61 And He gave His strength⁵⁰⁷ into captivity, And His comeliness into the hand of the adversary. 62 And He gave His people over to the sword, And He was wroth with His inheritance (Yisra'el). 63 His young men were consumed by fire, And His maidens were not praised. 64 His priests fell by the sword, And their widows could not weep.

The Creator Almighty foretold the fate of Eli and his family to Shemu'el (1 Sam 2.27-36). YAHUAH's wrath led to the death of Eli and his sons (1 Sam 4.11-18), because of the sin of Eli's sons and the mere fact that he knew about their sin and did not do anything to correct / rebuke / discipline them: LITV 1 Sam 3.11-13: "And Jehovah said to Samuel, Behold! I am doing a thing in Israel at which the two ears of every one hearing it shall tingle. In that day I will confirm to Eli all that I have spoken to his house, beginning and making an end. And I declare to him that I am judging his house forever, **for the iniquity** (sin, wickedness, crookedness, perversity)⁵⁰⁸ **which he has known**; for his sons have been making themselves vile (committed blasphemy), **and he has not restrained them.**"

⁵⁰⁷ "Strength" and "comeliness" are used as symbolic names for His Ark. See also Ps. 63:2: "Therefore I have had a vision of You In the set-apart place, To see Your power and Your esteem.", Ps. 132:8: "Arise, O יהוה, to Your place of rest, You and the ark of Your strength." and 2 Chr. 6:41: "And now, arise, O יהוה Elohim, to Your resting place, You and the ark of Your strength. Let Your priests, O יהוה Elohim, be robed with deliverance, and let Your kind ones rejoice in goodness."

⁵⁰⁸ Iniquity was also used by KJV, Latin Vulgate, WOY, and ESV and different definitions of the word were used by the different Bible translations – (BBE; 1394 Wycliffe and CJB and Bishops' Bible 1568; Scriptures 1998+; exeGeses Companion Bible).

65 Then יהוה *awoke as one asleep, As a mighty man who shouts because of wine.*

66 And He smote His adversaries backward, He put them to an everlasting reproach. 67 Then He rejected the tent of Yosëph, And did not choose the tribe of Ephrayim, 68 **But chose the tribe of Yehudah, Mount Tsiyon, which He loved.**

How many people know what these Words of verses 67 and 68 really mean? If the Creator's Teachings of the Torah is:

- ✧ not guarded in the heart,
- ✧ perverted as legalism by many,
- ✧ rejected / abolished when seen as not necessary [anymore],
- ✧ "branded" as a "cultic sect" because of Torah observance...

how could these people even try to understand and interpret the True meaning of:

- ✧ the Torah Teachings given by the Creator Almighty to our Patriarchs,
- ✧ Y'hudah and Ephraim,
- ✧ Mount Tziyon and the Mainland Yisra'el,
- ✧ Yisra'el as the Creator's Inheritance and Firstborn son,
- ✧ the Covenant to be guarded in the heart forever on earth when you are chosen as Almighty's Inheritance Yisra'el?

69 And He built His set-apart place like the heights, Like the earth He founded it forever. 70 And **He chose Dawid His servant**, And took him from the sheepfolds; 71 He brought him in from tending the ewes, To shepherd Ya'aqob His people, And Yisra'el His inheritance.

Ya'acov, the son of Yitz'chaq and the grandson of Avraham is the blessed generation of YAHUAH who quarded the Torah and stayed in Covenant with YAHUAH. David, part of the generation of the sons of (Tribe of) Yehudah (the Jews) are the *chosen ones* by YAHUAH Almighty Himself to *shepherd* (look after and teach):

- ✧ the nation Yisra'el (Ya'acov)
- ✧ and the land Yisra'el!

The Torah of / by Moshe indicated this through the complexed Words of the Creator⁵⁰⁹. The descendants of Y'hudah will be the *ruler* of Yisra'el and their descendants and Y'hudah will **never** be without the Law-Giver! These are crucial and enormous Words of the Creator of all things.

Put in simplicity, Y'hudah's generation *is the* Jewish people today and Christianity *should form part* of the Yisra'el nation today! This might be the reason why so many Christians do not *recognize* their Y'hudah brothers today! This might also be the very reason why Christians do not like to be taught Torah by Y'hudah!

As the Creator said in His Torah, "Y'hudah will never be without the Torah-Giver" and then what maybe makes it worse, is the fact that the Creator said Y'hudah will teach Torah to all the other nations: "*Gil'ad is Mine and Menashsheh is Mine, And Ephrayim is the defence of My head, Yehudah is My lawgiver.*" (Scriptures 1998+ Psa 60.[7]9) and again "*Gil'ad is Mine, Menashsheh is Mine, And **Ephrayim** is My chief defence, Yehudah is My lawgiver.*"

A Navi, the Prophet Hosea summarized these Words of the Torah (Gen 49.1-28) in one sentence what believers should know about the House of Y'hudah (represented by Ya'acov's two sons, the Tribes of Y'hudah and Binyamin, seen as the Southern Tribes) and the House of Yisra'el or Ephrayim (represented by the other 10 remaining sons of Ya'acov, the Northern Tribes): "*Ephrayim has surrounded Me with lying, and the house of Yisra'el with deceit. **But Yehudah is still wandering with Ėl, and is true to the Set-apart One.***" (Scriptures 1998+ Hos [11.2]12.1)⁵¹⁰

*72 And he shepherded them **According to the integrity of his heart**, And led them by the skill of his hands.*

The people who are living in Covenant with El Elyon (Elohim Most High) must act as the defence of His Head and as His obedient Torahgiver!

⁵⁰⁹ CJB Gen 49.8-10: "Y'hudah, **your brothers will acknowledge you**, your hand will be on the neck of your enemies, **your father's sons will bow down before you**. 9 Y'hudah is a lion's cub; my son, you stand over the prey. He crouches down and stretches like a lion; like a lioness, who dares to provoke him? 10 **The scepter will not pass from Y'hudah, nor the ruler's staff from between his legs**, until he comes to whom [obedience] belongs; [or: until Shiloh comes] and it is he **whom the peoples will obey**."

⁵¹⁰ Afrikaans speaking people are misled with the **mistranslation** of this verse like so many others. All the other English (19 in total in my possession, including the KJV) translations and the Hebrew / TaNaCh and Aramaic are the same translated as the one cited above!

David an Y'hudim (a Jewish man) must lead and "shepherded" the nations (sons of Ya'acov), wandering with an *upright heart* with Elohim as an example never without the Torah-Giver and as authority of the Almighty's Head!

Surely it means that the knowledge of the Almighty's Teachings must be in our minds to be as the defence (authority) of His Head and that the Torah of YAHUAH must be kept / guarded in our hearts in an *upright* manner, not to ever depart from the heart!

Is that not what the Almighty said is the *real* meaning of His Covenant; and for Him to be really the Elohim for people who wants to be part of His people? The Prophet Yirmeyahu Prophesied these exact Words and also did the Creator emphasize these Words to the Hebrews:

*"For finding fault with them, He says, "See, the days are coming," says יהוה, "when I shall conclude with the house of Yisra'el and with the house of Yehudah a renewed covenant, not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Mitsrayim, **because they did not continue in My covenant, and I disregarded them,**" says יהוה. "Because **this is the covenant** that I shall make with the house of Yisra'el after those days, says יהוה, **giving My laws in their mind** (The Torah-Giver), and **I shall write them on their hearts** (keep it with an upright heart), and I shall be their Elohim, and they shall be My people."*

The Sceptre who did not pass from Y'hudah (who is a Jew), who is the *real* Torah-Giver is the One who will be responsible for imprinting His Torah Teachings in the minds (heads, for understanding His Authority / Torah) and engraving His Torah Teachings on the hearts (to live His Character / Torah) of those who wants to be His people!

The hands must do exactly what is in the mind and heart, and feet must also walk the same *idea* of what is in the mind and heart.

The following phrase "the fruit is of the heart" should now more be seen in the correct context in the following texts:

"But what comes out of your mouth is actually coming from your heart, and that is what makes a person unclean. For out of the heart come forth wicked thoughts, murder, adultery and other kinds of sexual immorality, theft, lies, slanders. . . ."
(CJB Matt 15.18-19)

and

"But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, humility, self control. Nothing in the Torah stands against such things." (CJB Gal 5.22-23)

The interpretation of a clean (Holy) and unclean (unholy) person should now also be clearer understood and seen in the correct context.

The Creator will never separate His Torah Teachings from a person's heart or mind, because He is the real Torah-Giver and He Authorized Y'hudah to be the teachers of His Torah to all the other nations with an upright heart! When a person wants to learn the Creator's Torah in his / her mind and guards the Torah in his / her heart, only then you are in Covenant with the Almighty.

The same Covenant Avraham had with the Almighty Creator when he understood the Torah in his mind and guarded the Torah in his heart:

"And in your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because Abraham obeyed My voice and guarded My Charge: My commands, My laws, and My Torot¹." Footnote: ¹Torot - plural of Torah, teaching" (Scriptures 1998+ Gen 26.5)

The Torah of YAHUAH was *completely with* Avraham 400 years before Moshe received the Torah from the Creator on Mount Sinai. The Way every person should live and be obedient to the Almighty by knowing the Torah in the mind and by safe guarding the Torah in the heart. Only through proper heart circumcision will the Torah Teachings of the Creator be able to be engraved on the heart by Elohim!

4.1 INTRODUCTION

The BIBLE clearly instructed and demanded that no Prophecy in the complete Word of YHVH may be interpreted by *man's own interpretation*! YHVH explained thoroughly throughout His whole Word that the BIBLE is His Word, and He clearly said that His Word became Flesh and that this Flesh came as the Messiah to *man*. The Messiah's language was and is Hebrew and it was written several times with intension, because nothing was mentioned in the Word for no reason or just by accident.

Thus, "*the Word was in the beginning and the Word was GOD*", and all the Prophets in the TaNaKh were Hebrew, therefore is it obvious that YAHUAH gave His Prophecy in the Hebrew language to the Hebrew Prophets and with a Hebrew mind-set; and in this same way the Prophets gave Scripture to humankind!

As said and confirmed within this research is it clear that there were words, phrases and idioms in Hebrew / Aramaic that did not exist in the Greek language and that Greek and English words had to be made up to fit and suit the Hebrew language. It is obvious that certain words, certain phrases and certain idioms do not have the same meaning and understanding in English, let alone other languages, than it has in Hebrew.

Therefore does it looks like Scripture oppose / contradicts itself in some of the Writings of the Apostles from what is written in the TaNaKh, which can never be. The Creator is not a GOD of contradiction, but surely a GOD of order and structure and He knew from before the foundation of the earth what is going to happen at the very end; and He gave His Prophecies to His Council, the Prophets for mankind in the TaNaKh.

If it seems to a BIBLE reader that Scripture contradicts Scripture, one can be sure that it has to be an interpretation error by the reader and that self-interpretation of the Word of YAHUAH is not allowed at all! Scripture has to be used to interpret texts, phrases, idioms, Parables and Prophecies in Scripture. The plain and simple reason is because the complete BIBLE is the Living (direct and literal) Word of the Creator to every human life.

*"Yes, we have the **prophetic Word** made very certain. **You will do well to pay attention to it as to a light shining in a dark, murky place, until the Day dawns and the Morning Star rises in your hearts. First of all, understand this: no***

prophecy of Scripture is to be interpreted by an individual on his own; for never has a prophecy come as a result of human willing — on the contrary, people moved by the Ruach HaKodesh spoke a message from God." (CJB 2 Pet 1:19-21)

Whatever a person *claim to say* what is written in the BIBLE has to be explained and interpreted in the BIBLE through the Word of GOD. GOD gave His Word in the TaNaKh and He walked the same Word on earth. He did not come to *Replace His Word* which He has spoken from the beginning nor did the Word come Alive to *oppose* what the Word had spoken before!

YAHUAH has a unique and pure language and He explained it in a unique and pure way to His Prophets; and He came to walk it in the same uniqueness. The Word has many levels of understanding, but never in a level can something be said that is not in Scripture and also must the direct literal Word of YHVH never be ignored or discarded. If His direct Word is ignored or disregarded then a person makes GOD's Word of no value and is it a sign of disobedience and rebellion against the true Word of the Almighty Creator.

YAHUAH used a method when He spoke His Word and the Prophets continued with this method by the Inspiration of the Almighty. The method that had been used for centuries and ages was is the PRDS method. It is then obvious the *same* Word of YAHUAH who was *generated to Live / Flesh* continued with the method, This method also shows the "*how-to*" and *approaches to the text*.⁵¹¹

PARDES

Here follows the definitions according the Strong's dictionary in Hebrew (H6508) and Greek (G3857), which is similar and which is used in The Interlinear Bible – Hebrew English Greek:

⁵¹¹ Four Departments of Torah; http://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/2398445/jewish/Is-Midrash-for-Real.htm; 25/08/2014.

H6508 – פַּרְדֵּס – *parde ḥs*: *Of foreign origin; a park: - forest, orchard.*

G3857 – *παράδεισος* – *paradeisos*: *Of Oriental origin (compare [H6508]); a park, that is, (specifically) an Eden (place of future happiness, "paradise")*: - *paradise.*

PaRDeS comes from the consonants P-R-D-S, which stands for P'shat, Remez, D'rash and Sud and vowels were added for pronunciation. Four levels of depths have been identified that assist the reader to search for deeper meanings within the Word as well as to assist readers to interpret Scripture with Scripture and has been used as a Hebraic interpretation tool, without discarding any Word in the BIBLE.

There are many other tools the Authors have been used throughout Scripture to ensure correct interpretation take place to understand the Prophecies of YHVH. These will be touched on in the Doctorate Degree after PaRDeS have been explained in detail in this dissertation.

Isaiah made it also clear that Scripture has to be used to interpret Scripture and that only Scripture has to be used when searching for the truth, and even then, like still today, people did not want to use the Word to look for the truth in the Word and rather "rely" on self-interpretation:

*"So now the word of Adonai for them comes **"precept by precept, precept by precept, line by line, line by line, a little here, a little there,"** so that when they walk, they stumble backward, and are broken, trapped and captured!"* (CJB Isa 28:13)

Why did YHVH the Creator say these Words:

"And I will make justice the measuring line, and righteousness the plumb line; hail will sweep away your refuge of lies, and floods will overflow your hiding place." (CJB Isa 28:17)

The Word of YHVH, which is also Torah, gave as:

- ☆ a guideline to measure sin
- ☆ direction to righteousness
- ☆ protection against believing lies and falsehoods
- ☆ His Word to keep wherever people find them to make a living

What did the Word instruct Sha'ul and Timothy:

"All Scripture is God-breathed and is valuable for teaching the truth, convicting of sin, correcting faults and training in right living; thus anyone who belongs to God may be fully equipped for every good work." (CJB 2 Tim 3:16-17)

What did the *Word of Salvation* come to teach the believer for salvation about His Prophecy:

"Yeshua said to them, "This is what I meant when I was still with you and told you that everything written about me (His prophecies) in the [Torah of Moshe], the [Prophets] and the [Psalms] had to be fulfilled." (CJB Luke 24:44)

Yahshua explicitly said that the complete TaNaKh will lead to truth and believing in Him and the Prophecies about His Second Coming have to be fulfilled just like the Prophecies of His First Coming had been fulfilled!

The Messiah explained here four levels, lets see why.

First level: Torah	–Torah / Law of Moshe
Second level: Nevi'im	–Prophets' Writings
Third level: Khetuvim	–Psalms forms part of all the other Writings in the TaNaKh
Fouth level: Messianic Writings	–The Word Walked and explained by the Word Self

All the Books fall in the exact order in the BIBLE as Yahshua has instructed to follow.

4.2 PRINCIPLES OF PARDES

The first letter of each word was taken and vowels were added to form the word for pronunciation:

- ☆ P'shat
- ☆ Remez
- ☆ D'rash
- ☆ Sud

The meaning of the word PaRDeS is "orchard, forest, paradise or vineyard". Here follows the meaning and explanation of each of the levels – the basic principles to know and to remember when the deeper meanings of a text are sought and when interpretations thereof are taken from Scripture:

☆ P'shat

This level is the *plain simple and literal meaning* of the written text. As Wilhelm Jordaan once said in the "Beeld" of 6 November 2013, "The Bible is literally the truth; GOD's Word, *finish and klaar*" (direct translated from the Afrikaans article: "Die Bybel is letterlik waar; God se woorde, finish and klaar.")

The P'shat **first** level is the *keystone* of understanding and interpretation of Scripture⁵¹². This is the understanding of Scripture given in its natural and normal sense with historical, philosophical and cultural settings, used together to understand the given written text in context, without reading into something that is not written in Scriptures.

The P'shat level may never be disregarded or discarded when correct and proper interpretation of Scripture is searched. True and accurate understanding of Scripture will objectively be retrieved (correctly and properly), which is proper and correct Exegesis, and reading into Scripture subjectively that is not written within a text is the consequences of incorrect interpretation that will happen, which is *poor Exegesis*, called *Eisegesis*.

⁵¹² The Rules of PARDES, Yashanet - <http://www.yashanet.com/studies/revstudy/pardes.htm>; 19/08/2014.

When the Word of GOD is studied and read, proper Biblical Exegesis must be performed, because the Words in the BIBLE was given direct from the Creator in a literal sense to the Authors from His Mouth and Voice. The complete BIBLE is prophecy from the Creator GOD to mankind and no self-interpretation are allowed to *figure-out* His Prophecy:

*"Yes, we have the prophetic Word made very certain. You will do well to pay attention to it as to a light shining in a dark, murky place, until the Day dawns and the Morning Star rises in your hearts. First of all, **understand this: no prophecy of Scripture is to be interpreted by an individual on his own**; for never has a prophecy come as a result of human willing — on the contrary, people moved by the Ruach HaKodesh spoke a message from God."* (CJB 2 Pet 1:19-21)

Thus, when a reader desires to go to a deeper level than the given literal Word of YHVH in a text, to research and understand certain Prophecy, the first level may then never be discarded. **Never can the second, third or fourth level neglect the recognition of the P'shat level.** Never must the first level of P'shat be discarded when deeper meaning of the Word is searched for interpretation, because proper and correct Biblical Exegesis starts with the first P'shat level and orderly followed through to the fourth level to reach the final level, the deepest level in Scripture, which is Eschatology⁵¹³ Prophecies.

Example: The second, third or fourth level must be explained with the *literal* Word of YHVH *direct* with text from the BIBLE. Scripture must interpret Scripture. Because the Word of YHVH can only be used to *explain* the Word of YHVH! No interpretation of man is allowed to interpret the Prophecy of YHVH, because all Prophecy comes from the Creator.

Here follows a poll in America that is done every year to seek how the people see the BIBLE as "reading material", and interesting to see is the fact how only few people accept the BIBLE as the direct Word of GOD the Creator of all things and how many people does not except everything in the BIBLE as GOD's literal and direct Word. Who is a human being to decide which Words from GOD are literal and which Words are not literal? Nothing in the whole BIBLE is from man, but everything is from the Creator. **GOD is ultimately the Creator of all things, even the Creator of the BIBLE!**

⁵¹³ Prof Liebenberg has 10 volumes regarding Midrashic Eschatology explaining all Prophetic views of Eschatology; of end-time events, Tribulation and Rapture, explanation of Daniël, last days in Noah's time, dispensation in Genesis and the revelation of Revelation.
Eschatology, Merriam Webster - <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/eschatology>; 10/10/2014.

1. The Bible is the actual word of God and is to be taken literally, word for word.	28%
2. The Bible is the inspired word of God but not everything in it should be taken literally.	47%
3. The Bible is an ancient book of fables, legends, history and moral precepts recorded by man.	21%

"A recent Gallup poll of more than a thousand American adults offered three different attitudes toward the Bible's historical accuracy, as follows; after the question we give the percentage of people who agreed with the particular viewpoint (totaling 96 percent; 4 percent had no opinion)"⁵¹⁴

☆ Remez

When there is a *hint* in a text that gives a *deeper* meaning to the text, then a person will reach the second level of Scripture interpretation to understand the *hint* inside the text. The first rule of interpretation of Scripture is that self-interpretation of the Word of GOD is not allowed and that Scripture can only be interpreted by the Word of YHVH the Creator⁵¹⁵.

Therefore must the *hint* be searched within the BIBLE and explained with text in the BIBLE; thus *Scripture only must interpret the meaning of the hint*. This is the reason why the first level of P'shat may never be discarded when deeper meanings of the Word of GOD are searched, because the Word of YHVH was given literally and direct to mankind.

The literal and direct Word of YHVH must be used to interpret the *hint* within the literal direct Word of YHVH, it was ultimately given by Him and He gave the *hint* from His Word.⁵¹⁶

⁵¹⁴ How do Biblical Archeological Review Reader differ? Biblical Archaeology - http://www.biblicalarchaeology.org/daily/biblical-topics/bible-interpretation/how-do-bar-readers-differ-you-tell-us/?mqsc=E3777835&utm_source=WhatCountsEmail&utm_medium=BHD+Daily%20Newsletter&utm_campaign=E4B825; 26/08/2014.

⁵¹⁵ 2 Pet 1:19-21

⁵¹⁶ Where does a person get wisdom and knowledge from? From knowing the Torah of GOD: Psalms 19:7-8: "The Torah of Adonai is perfect, restoring the inner person. The instruction of Adonai is sure, making wise the thoughtless. The precepts of Adonai are right, rejoicing the heart. The mitzvah of Adonai is pure, enlightening the eyes." Deut 4:6: "Therefore, observe them; and follow them; for then all peoples will see you as having wisdom and understanding. When they hear of all these laws, they will say, 'This great nation is surely a wise and understanding people.'"

☆ D'rash

Darash is a verb from the noun "*midrash*" from which the original name of Scriptural Exegesis was formed. Midrash is the discussion of a text from Scripture seeking the truth only from Scripture. "To wrestle with the Word of GOD" to receive truth and blessing, just as GOD said a person will be as the name says. Ya'acov's name was changed by GOD Himself to Yisra'El, which literally means "Wrestle with GOD".⁵¹⁷

The word *darash* is found in the Book of Ezra, where he seek the Torah of YHVH and he *investigated* it to live by it and to teach it to Israel who accepts GOD as the Creator and Saviour, as the only One True GOD:

*"For `Ezra had set his heart on **studying and practicing the Torah of Adonai** and teaching Isra'el the laws and rulings."* (CJB Ezra 7:10)

*"For Ezra had prepared his heart to **seek**⁵¹⁸ **the law of the LORD, and to do it,** and to teach in Israel statutes and judgements."* (KJV Ezra 7:10)

The Jewish Virtual Library explains according to PaRDeS the following and how the different levels give knowledge to a reader:

*"This ascension, however, can only be made gradually, after the mind has attained four various stages of knowledge; namely: (1) the knowledge of the exterior aspect of things, or, as the Zohar calls it (ii. 36b), "the vision through the mirror that projects an indirect light"; (2) the knowledge of the essence of things, or "the vision through the mirror that projects a direct light"; (3) the knowledge through intuitive representation; and (4) the knowledge through love, since the Law reveals its secrets to those only who love it (ii. 99b)."*⁵¹⁹

Yahshua came down to earth and gave the *Midrash meaning* of the Word, He *walked-and-taught* the literal Word of the very beginning through His Mouth and He used many times

⁵¹⁷ Gen 32:28

⁵¹⁸ Strong's: **H2580** – פָּדָה – chên – From **H2603**; *graciousness*, that is, subjectively (*kindness, favor*) or objectively (*beauty*): - favour, grace (-ious), pleasant, precious, [well-] favoured.

⁵¹⁹ PARDES and Biblical Exegesis, Jewish Virtual Library - <https://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/jsource/Judaism/Zohar.html#Pardes>; 22/08/2014.

Parables, **but never did His Word loses its P'shat**. Yahshua did not come to teach *new* things or things that the Creator Father did not say or from His own interpretation. Yahshua did not come to start a *Replacement Theology* from what the Creator Father said in the beginning, because Yahshua was the Word spoken in the beginning.⁵²⁰ He could not teach different from what is said from the beginning, He came and Spoke the *Word from the Word*.

The D'rash level interpretation can never be used to strip the text of the P'shat level meaning.⁵²¹ This third level of deeper interpretation of a text or passage **cannot override** the literal and direct first level meaning of P'shat, the same goes for the Remez (second level) and the Sud (fourth level) levels.

This level of interpretation must also come from Scripture to interpret the literal meaning of a text or passage as well as to interpret the *hint* within a text or passage.

A perfect example of the D'rash level, where the Word explicitly interpreted the Word of the beginning, is:

"How blessed are the poor in spirit! for the Kingdom of Heaven is theirs." (CJB Matt 5:3)

Yahshua came to explain the following Words in the beginning, nothing new⁵²²:

"And that I also have walked contrary unto them, and have brought them into the land of their enemies; if then their uncircumcised hearts be humbled, and they then accept of the punishment of their iniquity: Then will I remember my covenant with Jacob, and also my covenant with Isaac, and also my covenant with Abraham will I remember; and I will remember the land." (WOY Lev 26:41-42)

"You are to remember everything of the way in which Adonai led you these forty years in the desert, humbling and testing you in order to know what was in your heart - whether you would obey his mitzvot or not." (CJB Deut 8:2)

⁵²⁰ John 1:1, 14.

⁵²¹ The Rules of PARDES interpretation, Yashanet - <http://www.yashanet.com/studies/revstudy/pardes.htm>; 22/08/2014.

⁵²² From Commentories of the Treasury of Scriptural Knowledge

Yahshua said this, because He will never speak against what He said in His Torah when He spoke in the beginning and He taught this also to mankind through the Prophets (Moshe⁵²³ and David⁵²⁴ to name two):

"Don't think that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete." (CJB Matt 5:17)

YHVH gave this instruction through His Word in the beginning and no one is allowed to abolish the Torah given by YHVH:

*"I will raise up for them a Prophet like you from among their kinsmen. **I will put My words in His mouth, and He will tell them everything I order Him.** Whoever doesn't listen to My words, which He will speak in My name, will have to account for himself to Me." (CJB Deut 18:18-19 – John 8:28)*

Yochanan the Prophet, the Apostle taught exactly what the Word in Flesh came and taught and what was written in Scripture by the Prophets:

*"Philip found Natan'el and told him, "We've found the one that **Moshe wrote about in the Torah, also the Prophets** — it's Yeshua Ben-Yosef from Natzeret!" (CJB John 1:45)*

*"So **Yeshua said**, "When you lift up the Son of Man, then you will know that **I AM** [who I say I am]⁵²⁵, **and that of myself I do nothing, but say only what the Father has taught Me.**" CJB John 8:28)*

Above is a perfect example to find the *deeper meaning* of the literal Words direct to Matt in 5:17. HaMashiach did not come to *abolish* the Torah and also not what the Prophets taught regarding the Torah (because 5:17-18 is about abolishing of the Torah). He came to complete (**interpret**) the Torah and not teach against the Torah!

⁵²³ CJB Deut 30:10: "However, all this will happen only if you pay attention to what Adonai your God says, so that you obey his mitzvot and regulations which are written in this book of the Torah, if you turn to Adonai your God with all your heart and all your being."

⁵²⁴ CJB Psa 19:7: "The Torah of Adonai is perfect, restoring the inner person. The instruction of Adonai is sure, making wise the thoughtless."

⁵²⁵ CJB Exo 3:14: "God said to Moshe, "**Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh [I am/will be what I am/will be]**," and added, "Here is what to say to the people of Isra'el: 'Ehyeh [**I Am or I Will Be**] has sent me to you.'"

What did Yahshua come to fulfill / complete? Everything regarding the Messiah!

- ✧ The Word that was spoken in the beginning was fulfilled by *coming to life*.
- ✧ The Word which was spoken in the beginning about Prophecies that *still has to be* fulfilled.
- ✧ Prophecies (65) of the First Coming of the Messiah came to fulfillment – through the Word in the beginning.
- ✧ Prophecies (259) of the Second Coming of the Messiah that *still has to come* to fulfillment like the Word revealed it through the Prophets.

Yahshua said He came to complete, to fulfill the Torah. If a person *abolish* or destroy (discard) the Torah, can there then be *no fulfillment* of the Torah. By *abolishing the Torah* will Prophecies regarding the Messiah not exist and not be fulfilled. People will not know the *real* Messiah to believe truly in Him⁵²⁶. Yochanan confirmed this in the two verses above.

Matt 5:17 is the literal Word of YHVH direct to the Apostle Matthew. A hint of *completeness* was given and the literal Word of YHVH has to be used to interpret this hint. How can He complete what is said in the Torah or what has to be completed what is said in the Torah?

First of all, if a believer *abolishes* or discards the Torah, then obviously will the believer not use the Torah to find the truth and will the *truth of the completion* spoken about not be revealed. Proper Exegesis explained that the principles of Hermeneutics should be taken into account when interpretation is done, and these principles are used to take a text in correct context. To be able to know the true interpretation of the verse in correct context a person has to take into account the philosophy behind the text, the *method of first use* of the words in the text (when and where have the words in the BIBLE first been used and why), who are the audience addressed in the text and the history of the Author should be examined.

*"(a) **Don't think** that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. (b) I have come **not to** abolish but to complete."* (CJB Matt 5:17)

⁵²⁶ John 5:46-48

Deut 18:18-19 (Remez level for the P'shat level of Matt 5:17) is the literal Word of YHVH direct to His Prophet Moshe written in the Torah (a), which is Scripture to interpret the Scripture in Matt 5:17(b). The *hint* of Matt 5:17 is interpreted by Scripture from Deut 18:18-19.

Yochanan confirmed this statement in his Book with the *Midrash* (D'rash level using the P'shat level to interpret Matt 5:17 – explanation) by Yahshua Himself in John 8:28 and the verse must literally be used, because it is the direct Words of YHVH to Yochanan. No *personal interpretation* is allowed to be used according to Scripture.

Why also is there a reason for the reader to believe the Words of Moshe in Deuteronomy that Yahshua is the *Prophet* in the Torah and that what is written about Him will (or has to) be fulfilled? The reason is because of the Words of Yahshua to Yochanan in John 5:46-47 explaining the *faith* in Yahshua comes from the Writings of the Prophet Moshe in the Torah and because of the confirmation explained in John 8:28 by Yahshua and by His disciples in John 1:45.

Is there an even *deeper meaning* within this verse, a *Sud* level or an *Eschatology* Prophecy *hidden* within this text?

Surely there has to be, if the principles of interpretation are correctly followed in order.

For completion of the levels for Matt 5:17 (a) and (b), here follows the *Sud* level's interpretation from Scripture:

*"And he had in his hand a **little book** open: and he set his right foot upon the sea, and his left foot on the earth, **But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he shall begin to sound, the mystery of Elohim should be finished, as He hath declared to His servants the Prophets.** And the voice which I heard from heaven spake unto me again, and said, Go and take the little book which is open in the hand of the angel which standeth upon the sea and upon the earth."*
(WOY Rev 10:2, 7-8)

☆ Sud

This Fourth and final level of Biblical interpretation is the level where the *hidden secrets* (mysteries within the Word) are revealed within Scripture, but the interpretation for the *hidden secrets* must come from within Scripture by using the *P'shat* for interpreting *Sud*. The *Sud* level can also *never override* the *P'shat* level by *stripping* the literal text⁵²⁷ from the BIBLE to discard the literal and direct given Word of YHVH to mankind.

The *hidden secrets* in the *Sud* level are the *Eschatology* of Biblical Prophecy explaining *End-time Biblical Prophecy*, taken from Scripture only, which are mostly from the Books of Revelation and Daniël.

Sud is an integral part of *Judaism* and there is *uniqueness in Jewish Mysticism*.⁵²⁸ It is called *Jewish Mysticism* because it is the "Jewish nation" that started to seek the answers of Biblical *hidden secrets* (mysteries in the BIBLE) keeping the literal given Word of the Creator as His direct literal Word to mankind as the *main purpose* of the BIBLE for *interpretation of Prophecy and Scripture*.⁵²⁹

No human interpretation can exceed the given interpretation in Scripture!

The Jewish sages call this level also Kabbalah⁵³⁰, which is Jewish Mysticism. People who hear of Kabbalah without the knowledge of the origin of Kabbalah is talking against it and rated it as taboo or practised by a cult, which is **not the truth**.

When proper Kabbalah is used to seek the truth of the *mysticism* in the BIBLE with correct Biblical Exegesis in mind and keeping the *P'shat* level as the basis of interpretation by *never adding to or taking away*⁵³¹ from the Word of the Creator, a person will learn the *uniqueness of the given Word by GOD the Almighty Creator*.

⁵²⁷ Deut 4:2, 12:32; Prov 30:6; Rev 22:18-19

⁵²⁸ Uniqueness of Jewish Mysticism, Chabad -

http://www.chabad.org/kabbalah/article_cdo/aid/380317/jewish/Uniqueness-of-Jewish-Mysticism.htm;
25/08/2014.

⁵²⁹ 2 Pet 1:19-21

⁵³⁰ Kabbalah: A Brief Definition, Chabad -

http://www.chabad.org/kabbalah/article_cdo/aid/380617/jewish/Kabbalah-A-Brief-Definition.htm; 25/08/2014.

⁵³¹ Deut 4:2, 12:32; Prov 30:6; Rev 22:18-19

Kabbalah can never take the place of the given literal Word of GOD. Kabbalah can never be used as interpretation of the BIBLE above the given Word of GOD without the fact that Scripture has to be interpreted from Scripture⁵³².

Kabbalah is only a description used by Jewish scholars to interpret "mysticism" within BIBLE Prophecies. Some call the deepest level the Eschatology or End-time Prophecy and others call it Kabbalah, as long as these terms stay within the Scriptural boundaries where nothing may be added or taken away from the Word of GOD and that the GOD-given Prophecy can only be interpreted by Scripture and not by self-interpretation by *man* (personal interpretation).

Here follows another insight diagram of the four levels of PaRDeS⁵³³:

DEPARTMENT	HEBREW	REVEALS . . .	BELONGS TO . . .
Peshat	פשוט	Simplest meanings	World of Action
Remez	רמז	Hinted meanings	World of Formation
Derush	דרוש	Deeper meanings	World of Creation
Sod	סוד	Secret meanings	World of Emanation

Views within the BIBLE of PaRDeS by the researcher:

The Torah has four levels (depths) of interpretation approaches to the text to fully understand the literal direct Word of GOD to humankind. Torah was given by GOD Almighty by His direct Word spoken. To know and to believe the Messiah, one must know and believe in the Torah:

*"But don't think that it is I who will be your Accuser before the Father. Do you know who will accuse you? Moshe, the very one you have counted on! **For if you really believed Moshe, you would believe me; because it was about me that he wrote. But if you don't believe what he wrote, how are you going to believe what I say?**" (CJB John 5:45-47)*

⁵³² 2 Tim 3:16-17

⁵³³ The Orchard of Torah, Chabad - http://www.chabad.org/library/article_cdo/aid/2398445/jewish/Is-Midrash-for-Real.htm; 25/08/2014.

If a person started to read the Torah (the first five Books of Moshe / the BIBLE) to understand what is written within these Books, one will see the History of the creation by the Creator and the literal Commandments (Laws) given by the Creator. When a person starts to look *deeper into the text* a person will realise the given Prophecies by the Creator of the Messiah, keeping in mind proper Exegesis and the correct principles of PaRDeS without poor Exegesis (which leads to *reading into something that is not written in Scripture* – Eisegesis).

Yahshua also explains that to know the *Commandments of love*, a person must know the *complete Torah* and what the *Prophets* wrote, because the Torah was the first given Word to mankind to live by to not commit sin:

"All of the Torah and the Prophets are dependent on these two mitzvot (commandments)." (CJB Matt 22:40)

Sha'ul (Paul) teaches exactly that what GOD the Creator gave him to say and what the Word in Flesh came and taught:

"Love does not do harm to a neighbour; therefore love is the fullness of Torah." (CJB Rom 13:10)

Yahshua also gave the method of interpretation to understand the Prophecies regarding the Messiah, about Himself:

"Yeshua said to them, "This is what I meant when I was still with you and told you that everything written about me in the Torah of Moshe, the Prophets and the Psalms had to be fulfilled." (CJB Luke 24:44)

Readers of the BIBLE and believers in the Messiah have to use the *complete Scriptures* to gain knowledge for guidance, direction and protection (against falsehoods and sins) and also did GOD give this Prophetic Word to Sha'ul explaining the fullness and depth of His Word:

*"I pray that from the **treasures** of His glory He will **empower you with inner strength** by his Spirit, so that **the Messiah may live in your hearts through your***

trusting. Also I pray that you will be rooted and founded in love, so that you, with all God's people, **will be given strength to grasp the breadth, length, height and depth of the Messiah's love, yes, to know it, even though it is beyond all knowing, so that you will be filled with all the fullness of God.** Now to him who by His power working in us is able to do far beyond anything we can ask or imagine, to him be glory in the Messianic Community and in the Messiah Yeshua from generation to generation forever. Amen." (CJB Eph 3:16-21)

Torah must therefore have four deep levels of interpretation (Eph 3:18) to completely understand Torah and to interpret Torah correctly and truthfully in the complete BIBLE, from Genesis through to Revelation. Torah does not stop at the Book of Deuteronomy or at the Book of Malachi, Torah runs through to the *Signature* of GOD, the Book of Revelation and Yahshua's Prophecies starts with Torah right through to Revelation:

*"Then he said to me, **"Don't seal up the words of the prophecy in this book, because the time of their fulfillment is near. Whoever keeps acting wickedly, let him go on acting wickedly; whoever is filthy, let him go on being made filthy. "Also, whoever is righteous, let him go on doing what is righteous; and whoever is holy, let him go on being made holy."*** (CJB Rev 22:10-11)

If Torah is discarded, then the literal Word of GOD to mankind is discarded and then there is rebellion against the Word of GOD, which is given to humankind for Instructions to live life to eventually enter the Kingdom of GOD:

"Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city." (WOY Rev 22:14)

PaRDeS levels are also seen throughout the TaNaKh, where the Torah is the first level, the Prophets are the second level, the Writings (where Psalms is part of the Writings) are the third level and the Eschatology of the Prophecy of Yahshua HaMashiach is the fourth level explained by Scripture in Daniël.

Sixty-five (65) Prophecies were fulfilled regarding the First Coming of HaMashich from the TaNaKh exactly on the day and on the hour. There are 259 Prophecies regarding the

Second Coming of HaMashiach and can it be said without doubt that all of those God-given Prophecies also will become truth on the day and on the hour, as it is GOD-given!

Yahshua came from above and preached exactly what is written in Matt 5, 22, Luke 24 and John 5. Thus, the researcher also believes that the different levels of PaRDeS can be used to interpret Scripture from Scripture in the complete BIBLE and that the different levels also can be seen in the following depths (more extensive exhortation within the Doctors Degree *hypothesis*):

- ✧ P'shat = Torah – direct and literal Word from YHVH the Creator.
- ✧ Remez = Prophets (Nevi'im and all other Writings in TaNaKh as it was written by Prophets) – hints in the Torah explained by the Prophets with the literal Word of YHVH.
- ✧ D'rash = Messianic Writings (N.T.) – the *Midrash* – Yahshua who came to give explanation to the Apostles from the Prophets, given by the literal Word of YHVH. Yahshua is ultimately the Word given from the beginning and His Name has also ultimately the meaning "YHVH is Salvation". The *Midrashic* level of Yahshua.
- ✧ Sud = Revelation – The *hidden secrets (Mysticism)* of Revelation Scriptures given by the *literal* Word of YHVH *direct* to Yochanan (John) with interpretation from the Word of YHVH, which is from Scriptures in the TaNaKh (by Prophets Writings) and Scriptures from the Messianic Writing (by the Apostles).



534

⁵³⁴ From: Messianic Kabbalah 11: WHAT IS THE BIBLE PARDES OF THE TRUE GOSPEL? PaRDeS is the 4 Levels of the Gospel Knowledge and Understanding! Reaching the 4th Level, which is the Messianic Kabbalah Wisdom, Qualifies You to Re-

The above picture is another illustration of the PaRDeS method by a different source and how it could be applied.

4.3 PRDS – PARDES FOR CORRECT INTERPRETATION

In this Chapter PaRDeS is going to be used to seek the deeper meaning for completeness / fulfillment of interpretation in the Name of Yahshua within the Torah, which is also the *level* of the *end* that was declared from the *beginning*.

If this is true from the Word of YHVH then the *salvation in the Name of Yahshua* must also appear in the Torah, which is the beginning of the BIBLE.

Many times within this research were 2 Pet 1:19-21 cited to illumine the fact that Biblical Prophecy cannot be interpreted personally, which is *man's* self-interpretation used to interpret Scripture. Why? Here is the answer for the final time for those who started reading with this Chapter:

"Yes, we have the prophetic Word made very certain. You will do well to pay attention to it as to a light shining in a dark, murky place, until the Day dawns and the Morning Star rises in your hearts. First of all, understand this: no prophecy of Scripture is to be interpreted by an individual on his own; for never has a prophecy come as a result of human willing — on the contrary, people moved by the Ruach HaKodesh spoke a message from God." (CJB 2 Pet 1:19-21)

Scripture also says that a wise leader will keep on searching for the truth to become with more knowledge and wisdom. Sh'lomo (Solomon) also taught the same and He knew only the Word of YHVH will give truth, wisdom and knowledge:

"It is the honour of Elohim to conceal a thing: but the honour of kings is to search out a matter." (WOY Prov 25:2)

His son, the King and Prophet David taught also the same:

"Guide me in your truth, and teach me; for you are the God who saves me, my hope is in you all day long. All Adonai's paths are grace and truth to those who keep his covenant and instructions." (WOY Psa 25:5, 10)

All of Scripture must be used for guidance, direction and protection, only the Word of YHVH:

*"And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation **through faith** which is in the Messiah Yahshua. **All Scripture** given by inspiration of Yahweh, indeed is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of Elohim may be complete, thoroughly furnished unto all good works." (WOY 2 Tim 3:15-17)*

In Chapter 2 was a brief explanation of the *"end has been established since the beginning"* through YHVH and that it is part of His salvation plan. Yahshua (YHVH is Salvation) was part of the Creator's plan as the Salvation for everyone since the *very beginning*. His Name says it all and YHVH the Creator did not choose a name randomly, but He gave a name for a reason! The Creator is a GOD of *order* and of *pattern*.

Throughout Scripture GOD gave names and He gave the reason for giving a name. Ever heard the idiom, "you shall be like your name is"? Hebrew is a wonderful and meaningful language with many *secrets* hidden inside the Hebrew letters. How could someone expect differently from the *language* GOD first created? Was the *Word* that was spoken in the

beginning, not the Word of YHVH, the Word in
Flesh and He was Hebrew?

Teit	Cheit	Zayin	Vav	Hei	Dalet	Gimel	Beit	Alef
(T)	(Ch)	(Z)	(V/O/U)	(H)	(D)	(G)	(B/V)	(Silent)

535

Samekh	Nun	Nun	Mem	Mem	Lamed	Khaf	Kaf	Yod
(S)	(N)	(N)	(M)	(M)	(L)	(Kh)	(K/Kh)	(Y)

These are the first and the last letters of the Hebrew Alephbet and pronounced "et." This word has no translation in any language across the entire world but this word appears in excess of 11,000 (eleven thousand) times

Tav	Shin	Reish	Qof	Tzadei	Tzadei	Fe	Pei	Ayin
(T/S)	(Sh/S)	(R)	(Q)	(Tz)	(Tz)	(F)	(P/F)	(Silent)

535

https://www.google.co.za/search?site=imghp&tbm=isch&source=hp&biw=1366&bih=667&q=Yahshua+of+Nazareth+King+of+the+Jews+YHVH+YHWH&oq=Yahshua+of+Nazareth+King+of+the+Jews+YHVH+YHWH&gs_l=img.3...8270.29565.0.32379.46.8.0.38.38.0.341.791.2-2j1.3.0...0...1ac.1.55.img.43.3.790.NPnD3089NM4; 10/10/2014.

through the Bible yet it has no translation in any language. Even in the Hebrew language it has no specific meaning. So what is the meaning of this word or should the question be asked – Who or what is this Aleph and Tav that appears prominent through the Word of YHVH?⁵³⁶

The Messiah said that everything about Him as the Messiah is Prophecied in the TaNaKh, and He will *then* open the *understanding* of what is written within Scriptures. Everything about His Coming and His Salvation is written in the TaNaKh and knowing those Scriptures will give a person the *understanding* of His salvation plan.⁵³⁷

Keeping the above texts in mind when searching for a *matter*, where does the salvation plan start that is *in His Name*? In the beginning, because the end was revealed from the beginning:

"This is the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that God created man, he made him in God's likeness. He created them male and female, and blessed them, and called their name "Adam," in the day when they were created. Adam lived one hundred thirty years, and became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and named him Seth. The days of Adam after he became the father of Seth were eight hundred years, and he became the father of sons and daughters. All the days that Adam lived were nine hundred thirty years, then he died. Seth lived one hundred five years, and became the father of Enosh. Seth lived after he became the father of Enosh eight hundred seven years, and became the father of sons and daughters. All the days of Seth were nine hundred twelve years, then he died. Enosh lived ninety years, and became the father of Kenan. Enosh lived after he became the father of Kenan, eight hundred fifteen years, and became the father of sons and daughters. All the days of Enosh were nine hundred five years, then he died. Kenan lived seventy years, and became the father of Mahalalel. Kenan lived after he became the father of Mahalalel eight hundred forty years, and became the father of sons and daughters and all the days of Kenan were nine hundred ten years, then he died. Mahalalel lived sixty-five years, and became the father of Yared. Mahalalel lived after he became the

⁵³⁶ Rev 1:8, 11, 17; 21:6; 22:13; Isa 44:6; 48:12.

⁵³⁷ CJB Luke 24:44-48: "Yeshua said to them, "This is what I meant when I was still with you and told you that everything written about me in the Torah of Moshe, the Prophets and the Psalms had to be fulfilled." **Then he opened their minds, so that they could understand the Tanakh**, telling them, "Here is what it says: the Messiah is to suffer and to rise from the dead on the third day; and in his name repentance leading to forgiveness of sins is to be proclaimed to people from all nations, starting with Yerushalayim. You are witnesses of these things."

*father of Yared eight hundred thirty years, and became the father of sons and daughters. All the days of Mahalalel were eight hundred ninety-five years, then he died. Yared lived one hundred sixty-two years, and became the father of **Enoch**. Yared lived after he became the father of Enoch eight hundred years, and became the father of sons and daughters. All the days of Yared were nine hundred sixty-two years, then he died. Enoch lived sixty-five years, and became the father of **Methuselah**. Enoch walked with God after he became the father of Methuselah three hundred years, and became the father of sons and daughters. All the days of Enoch were three hundred sixty-five years. Enoch walked with God, and he was not, for God took him. Methuselah lived one hundred eighty-seven years, and became the father of **Lamech**. Methuselah lived after he became the father of Lamech seven hundred eighty-two years, and became the father of sons and daughters. All the days of Methuselah were nine hundred sixty-nine years, then he died. Lamech lived one hundred eighty-two years, and became the father of a son, and he named him **Noah**, saying, "This same will comfort us in our work and in the toil of our hands, because of the ground which Mar-Yah has cursed." Lamech lived after he became the father of Noah five hundred ninety-five years, and became the father of sons and daughters. All the days of Lamech were seven hundred seventy-seven years, then he died. Noah was five hundred years old, and Noah became the father of Shem, Ham, and Yapheth." (AESV Torah Gen 5:1-32)*

In Chapter 5 of Beresheet (Genesis) are the names and genealogy of the ten (10) men from the *first man* (Adam) up to the *man of righteousness* (Noah), where a *hidden secret* lies and revealed through "name(s)" given by YHVH. The meanings of the *names* of the ten (10) men (a *type and shadow* of the ten (10) Tribes of Yisra'El), are:

Adam: *First man / species / mankind*.⁵³⁸

Shet: Appointed *substitute* for another.⁵³⁹

Enosh: Mortal man / being mortal.

Keinan: Possessor.

Mahalal'el: Praising GOD / Praise El.

Yared: Ruling, commanding, come down.

Hanokh: Dedicated / disciplined, *walked with GOD* (Gen 5:24; Heb 11:5).

⁵³⁸ Strong's H120 from H121

⁵³⁹ CJB Gen 4:25: "Adam again had sexual relations with his wife, and she gave birth to a son whom she named Shet [granted], **For** God has **granted me another** seed in place of Hevel, since Kayin killed him."

Methu'selah: Man of the dust.

Lamech: Despair, made low.

Noach: Restful / *walked with GOD* (Gen 6:9; 2 Pet 2:5).

The First of everything, the Man of all species, YahShua, appointed "Substitute" for the mortal man, Possessor of GOD's praise who came down from Heaven, dedicated and disciplined in His Walk with GOD to show *man of dust* how to be totally humble (made low) to receive Eternal rest when *walked with GOD* (in righteousness like Noah).

The Word of GOD is amazing – **YAWEHSOME!**

Revelation is the End or the Eschatology of BIBLE Prophecy. Nothing by the Messiah in His Writings replaced the TaNaKh. The TaNaKh is actually useful together with the Messianic Writings to reveal Eschatology Prophecy. There are 404 verses in the Book of Revelation and 205 verses contain TaNaKh *language*. There are altogether 1,500 references from the TaNaKh in the Book of Revelation. Therefore, Christianity cannot abolish the Torah or the Prophets in the TaNaKh (O.T.), and Yahshua verified it in John 5:46-47 and Luke 22:44.

Revelation is not a Book given to mankind to stay a hidden secret, because GOD said the righteous will receive the wisdom to unfold the *mystery*. The meaning of the word Revelation:

"The word "revelation" means the uncovering of that which has been previously hidden, the drawing back of a veil that has hung over a person or thing, the laying bare of what has hitherto been concealed. It means the unveiling of something hidden, which gives light to those beholding it. It implies the removal of the cover from anything; unveiling it. It is said of Baalam (Num 22:31) that the Lord opened his eyes so that he was able to see things he had not seen before.

The Book of Revelation, then, is the unveiling of divine mysteries."⁵⁴⁰

⁵⁴⁰ The Expository Notes of Dr. Constable on e-sword.

Revelation is what it says, it is a *revelation*; it *reveals* something.⁵⁴¹ Revelation is therefore the Eschatology of the BIBLE with the key of Daniël in the TaNaKh. Revelation is the deepest level of interpretation and must all the rest of the BIBLE (TaNaKh and Messianic Writings) literally be used to interpret Revelation. GOD's Prophecy is from GOD and not from man; therefore can the Word of GOD not personally be interpreted by man.⁵⁴²

This is the correct way of implementing "*Sola-Scriptura*" – Scripture must be used from Scripture to interpret Scripture with Scripture!

Here follow examples within the complete Scripture of Scripture interpretation using Scripture as the literal and direct (P'shat level) Word of GOD to interpret the different *deep* levels within Scripture:

⁵⁴¹ The Revelation of the Mystery – Ephesians 3:1-7, The Expository Files of Warren E. Berkley - <http://www.bible.ca/ef/expository-ephesians-3-1-7.htm>; 10/10/2014: "Revelation simply means to uncover something. A helpful reference is found in Matt. 10:26 – "Therefore, do not fear them. For there is nothing covered that will not be revealed, and hidden that will not be known." So to reveal (in the biblical sense) is to uncover; to let something be known. There are two things that must always be a part of our Bible reading and study: (1) **An earnest effort to be completely objective**, and (2) **accepting as biblical truth, only what the context recommends**.

First, we must take with us into all Bible reading and study, a clear, impartial, objective mind. There is a danger we must guard against: taking pre-conceived ideas and beliefs with us into the text of Scripture, assuming as we read and study the Bible that we see there the things we've always believed. This approach limits learning, keeps us from growing and may contribute to believing things which are not true (as decreed by God). Every time we open the Bible, we should be ready to learn and re-learn; ready to correct long-cherished traditions when such is called for by the truth of God's Word. Objectivity is fundamental to good Bible study.

Second, when we read and study the Bible, we must let the context inform our conclusions. We must not isolate a word or phrase, make a doctrinal case from that word or phrase, ignoring the context. In fact, all written and spoken communication deserves this same consideration. It is not fair to quote someone out of context. Bible reading and Bible study should always be done with careful attention to context. Let us apply these principles in the study of Ephesians 3. We must not impose onto the text some assumed agenda, and we must take careful account of the context."

⁵⁴² 2 Pet 1:19-21: "Yes, we have the prophetic Word made very certain. You will do well to pay attention to it as to a light shining in a dark, murky place, until the Day dawns and the Morning Star rises in your hearts. First of all, understand this: no prophecy of Scripture is to be interpreted by an individual on his own; for never has a prophecy come as a result of human willing — on the contrary, people moved by the Ruach HaKodesh spoke a message from God."

Rev 19:10: "I fell at his feet to worship him; but he said, "Don't do that! I'm only a fellow-servant with you and your brothers who have the testimony of Yeshua. Worship God! For the testimony of Yeshua is the Spirit of prophecy."

4.4 EXAMPLES OF SCRIPTURE INTERPRETATION WITH SCRIPTURE

Example 1: Hidden secrets will be *revealed* to the righteous ones:

P	Torah	Gen 32:28: <i>Then he said, "Your name shall no longer be called Jacob, but Israel, for you have striven with God and with men, and have prevailed."</i>
R	Prophets	Dan 12:4, 10: <i>"But you, Dani'el, keep these words secret, and seal up the book until the time of the end. Many will rush here and there as knowledge increases." Many will purify, cleanse and refine themselves; but the wicked will keep on acting wickedly, and none of the wicked will understand. But those with discernment will understand.</i>
D	Yahshua's Words / Sha'uls words / Psalms / Proverbs / Ecclesias	Matt 10:26: <i>So do not fear them; for there is nothing covered that will not be uncovered, or hidden that will not be known.</i>
S	Revelation (Eschatology)	Rev 1:1-2: <i>This is the revelation which God gave to Yeshua the Messiah, so that he could show his servants what must happen very soon. He communicated it by sending his angel to his servant Yochanan, who bore witness to the Word of God and to the testimony of Yeshua the Messiah, as much as he saw.</i>

Example 2: Gospel (Good News) was spoken from beginning till end:

P	Torah	Gen 12:3: <i>I will bless those who bless you, but I will curse anyone who curses you; and by you all the families of the earth will be blessed.</i>
R	Prophets	Isa 45:17: <i>But Isra'el, saved by Adonai with an everlasting salvation, you will never, ever, be ashamed or disgraced.</i>
D	Yahshua's Words / Sha'uls words / Psalms / Proverbs / Ecclesias	Gal 3:8: <i>Also the Tanakh, foreseeing that God would consider the Gentiles righteous when they live by trusting and being faithful, told the Good News to Avraham in advance by saying, "In connection with you, all the Goyim will be blessed."</i>
S	Revelation (Eschatology)	Rev 14:6: <i>Next I saw another angel flying in mid-heaven with everlasting Good News to proclaim to those living</i>

		<i>on the earth — to every nation, tribe, language and people.</i>

Example 3: Grace was declared by GOD from the beginning till the end:

P	Torah	<i>Gen 6:8: But Noach found grace in the sight of Adonai. (CJB); Exo 33:13: Now therefore, I pray thee, if I have found grace in thy sight, shew me now thy way, that I may know thee, that I may find grace in thy sight: and consider that this nation is thy people. (KJV)</i>
R	Prophets	<i>Zech 12:10: and I will pour out on the house of David and on those living in Yerushalayim a spirit of grace and prayer; and they will look to me, whom they pierced." They will mourn for him as one mourns for an only son; they will be in bitterness on his behalf like the bitterness for a firstborn son.</i>
D	Yahshua's Words / Sha'uls words / Psalms / Proverbs / Ecclesias	<i>John 1:14: And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, and we beheld his majesty, the majesty as of the only begotten of the Father, full of grace and truth. (WOY)</i>
S	Revelation (Eschatology)	<i>Rev 22:21: May the grace of the Lord Yeshua be with all!</i>

Example 4: Heb 10:28

P	Torah	<i>Deut 4:24; Exo 34:14; Deut 32:36; Deut 17:2, 11: If there is found among you, within any of your gates [in any city] that Adonai your God gives you, a man or woman who does what Adonai your God sees as wicked, transgressing his covenant. In accordance with the Torah they teach you, you are to carry out the judgement they render, not turning aside to the right or the left from the verdict they declare to you.</i>
R	Prophets	<i>Nah 1:2: Adonai is a jealous and vengeful God. Adonai avenges; he knows how to be angry. Adonai takes vengeance on his foes and stores up wrath for his enemies. Isa 40:8: The grass dries up, the flower fades; but the word of our God will stand forever.</i>
D	Yahshua's Words / Sha'uls words / Psalms / Proverbs / Ecclesias	<i>Heb 10:28: He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or</i>

		<i>three witnesses: (John 5: 46-47) Matt 5:17-18: "Don't think that I have come to abolish the Torah or the Prophets. I have come not to abolish but to complete. Yes indeed! I tell you that until heaven and earth pass away, not so much as a yud (י) or a stroke will pass from the Torah — not until everything that must happen has happened.</i>
S	Revelation (Eschatology)	<i>Rev 22:14-15: Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city. For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie. (WOY)</i>

Scripture gives proof of the four (4) levels of interpretation, to use line (1) upon line (2), line (3) upon line (4) or rule (law / precept) upon rule, rule upon rule. Scripture indicates to use rule upon rule upon rule upon rule, four times in a row to teach the truth:

Can no one be taught anything? Can no one understand the message? Must one teach barely weaned toddlers, babies just taken from the breast, so that [one has to use nursery rhymes]? — Tzav la-tzav, tzav la-tzav, kav la-kav, kav la-kav z`eir sham, z`eir sham [Precept by precept⁵⁴³, precept by precept, line by line, line by line, a little here, a little there]. (Isa 28:9-10)

4.5 RESEARCHER'S PARDES INTERPRETATION

Example 1: The deeper interpretation of the three (3) stakes (crosses) on the Mount:

Each person on the stake represents a "group" in the BIBLE:

☆ The first Person is the Messiah who represents the House of Y'hudah.

⁵⁴³ KJV with Strong's numbers: **H6673** — צַו — tsâv

tsav, From H6680; an *injunction*: - commandment, precept.

- ✧ The second person is a *dispersed* one of YHVH (Galat Yah) who is a Goyim (Gentile) returning to *Yah is Salvation* repenting his sins following the Messiah, the Way of YHVH; representing the House of Yisra'El.
- ✧ The third person is also a *dispersed* one of YHVH who stays unrighteous in his ways and he represents the "dogs" mentioned in Scripture.⁵⁴⁴

Example 2: The Creator Spoke Words, which makes the Creator's spoken Word His literal and direct Word. This literal and direct Word was spoken in the beginning and this Word became Flesh to teach (walk and talk) humankind how to live this Word; it is nothing different from the spoken Word in the beginning as He is the same yesterday, today and tomorrow. The *Spoken Word Who became Flesh* is the True and Faithful **very** Word of the only GOD, Who will Judge righteous according to His Spoken Word.

- ✧ Torah is the very literal and direct Words spoken by the Creator to *guard, direct and protect* humankind. To keep being Set-Apart like Adonai is Set-Apart and what He gives is not a lie or falsehood and He Himself will do whatever He Spoke.⁵⁴⁵ We are not allowed to deny Adonai our GOD⁵⁴⁶.

"Moshe came and told the people everything Adonai had said, including all the rulings. The people answered with one voice: "We will obey every word Adonai has spoken." Moshe wrote down all the words of Adonai (Torah). He rose early in the morning, built an altar at the base of the mountain and set upright twelve large stones to represent the twelve tribes of Isra'el." (CJB Exo 24:3-4)

- ✧ The Word spoken in the beginning then became Flesh and only spoke on earth what was spoken by the Creator.⁵⁴⁷
- ✧ This is the very Word of GOD and He will be the Judge according to His Word as He was **verily** the *Torah-Giver*⁵⁴⁸ and His *war and judgement* will be righteous in Truth and Faithful.⁵⁴⁹

⁵⁴⁴ Rev 22:15

⁵⁴⁵ CJB Num 23:19: "God is not a human who lies or a mortal who changes his mind. When he says something, he will do it; when he makes a promise, he will fulfill it."

⁵⁴⁶ CJB Josh 24:27: "Y'hoshua said to all the people, "See, this stone will be a witness against us; because it has heard all the words of Adonai which he said to us; therefore it will be a witness against you, in case you deny your God.""

⁵⁴⁷ CJB John 1:1, 14, 45: "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. The Word became a human being and lived with us, and we saw his Sh'khinah, the Sh'khinah of the Father's only Son, full of grace and truth. Philip found Natan'el and told him, "We've found the one that Moshe wrote about in the Torah, also the Prophets — it's Yeshua Ben-Yosef from Natzeret!"

✧ All the Words of GOD are set on earth and His Prophecy came from His Word;⁵⁵⁰ He did not come to change or to abolish anything from His Word, but He came to fulfill and to complete His Word and to bring it to fullness:

"The Words of Adonai are pure words, silver in a melting-pot set in the earth, refined and purified seven⁵⁵¹ times over." (CJB Psa 12:6)

GOD did not and could not have *nailed* His Word to the Stake and left it *nailed* to the Stake. The Word Ressed and is well Alive! GOD did nail something to the Stake and it was the *bill of debt*. GOD erased the debt and He removed the certificate by forgiving believers of their sins through repentance; through *immersion* with GOD dying off the sins of the world and start living the Way of GOD spoken through His Word and walked as the example of the Messiah.

When sin is committed and realised, a person can now only pray for forgiveness with repentance without animal sacrifice. The *bill of debt of the sin* committed is erased and the *transgression* removed.

Torah from the Word of GOD could not have been *nailed* to the Stake, because without Torah people will not know sin⁵⁵² and will people live a sinfull life⁵⁵³ against the Word of GOD.⁵⁵⁴ The *bill of debt of sin* only is *nailed* to the Stake with HaMashiach!



⁵⁴⁸ CJB James 4:12: "There is but one Giver of Torah; he is also the Judge, with the power to deliver and to destroy. Who do you think you are, judging your fellow human being?"

⁵⁴⁹ CJB Rev 19:13: "He was wearing a robe that had been soaked in blood, and the name by which he is called is, "THE WORD OF GOD.""

⁵⁵⁰ CJB Rev 22:7: "'Look! I am coming very soon. Blessed is the person who obeys the words of the prophecy written in this book!'"

⁵⁵¹ Seven is the number of perfection. The Creator created everything in seven days and He rested on the seventh day, and He made the seventh day Yom Shabbat holy.

⁵⁵² Rom 7:7-8; Rom 3:31

⁵⁵³ 1 Cor 15:56; Gal 5:23

⁵⁵⁴ CJB Rev 12:17: "The dragon was infuriated over the woman and went off to fight the rest of her children, those who obey God's commands (Torah) and bear witness to Yeshua." Rev 14:12, 22:14

4.6 SUMMARY OF FACTS ESTABLISHED

1. PRDS / PaRDeS are excellent Exegesis principles to use with Scripture interpretation.
2. Proper and correct PaRDeS will ensure that YHVH's Word only are used to interpret Scripture with Scripture, because all Prophecies within the BIBLE was given direct from YHVH literally to the Prophets and the Apostles and none was from man self.
3. To interpret a verse in Torah of YHVH must all other Scripture (including Torah) be used to interpret the meaning of a verse from the Torah.
4. When the meaning of a verse from the Messianic Writings is unknown or difficult to understand, must it not personally be interpreted, but literal Scripture must be used from the TaNaKh and Messianic Writings (Scripture) to interpret the verse (Scripture).
5. Torah is the literal and direct Word from the Creator to Moshe, and is still valid today for learning, education, teaching and correction (2 Tim 3:15-17).
6. The Books (Writings) from the Prophets (rest of TaNaKh) is also the literal Word of the Creator direct to the Prophets and is Prophecy explaining the deeper purpose of the Torah; and Prophecy of the Coming (First) of the Suffering Messiah ben (son of) Yosef and the Coming (Second) of the Reigning Messiah ben David (Lion of Y'hudah).
7. The Messianic Writings is the Word of the [Living] Torah (literal Word became Flesh) given direct to the Apostles, proved (fulfilled / interpreted) with sixty-five (65) Prophecies (First Coming) from the Prophets and revealed the understanding of the [259] Prophecies (Second Coming) to be *fulfilled* by Adonai as Mashiach; with many revelations in the Book of Revelation.
8. Revelation is not a Book of *hidden secrets* to stay a mystery, but is in actual fact a Book as the name says, *Revelation of the hidden secrets*.
9. With the knowledge and understanding of all the principles of PaRDeS will the Ruach of Truth assist to reveal the needed mysteries for revelation – only if it is proven with the Scripture of YHVH.
10. YHVH gave this *hint* in His Word when He said to know the truth and when someone listens to Him, a person will use a precept upon precept upon precept upon precept **and** line by line by line by line.⁵⁵⁵
11. PaRDeS identifies four (4) levels of depth in the Word when searching for a meaning, but it highlights the importance of the P'shat (first level) and the use of P'shat; the fact

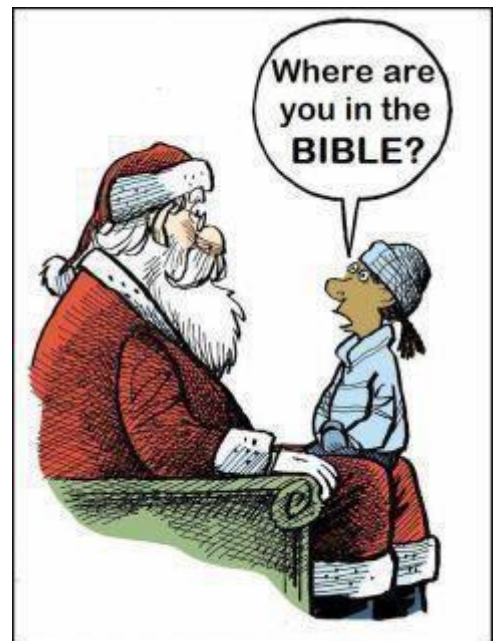
⁵⁵⁵ Isa 28:10. Four times YHVH mentioned precept (Torah instruction) and line (verse or text) to indicate four levels deep for explanation of a precept and verse, and not to only take one precept and verse for understanding. The Creator set patterns from the beginning for the end, and His patterns will be completed. This verse confirms the pattern of YHVH when He said one person cannot accuse someone alone without the witnesses of two or three. YHVH will also Judge with the witness of two or three as He said in His Word.

that the literal wording of a text be used to interpret and to explain a meaning (2 Pet 1:19-21) and that the other levels may never replace the P'shat (the literal Word of the Creator) as the P'shat (first level).

12. All Prophecy is from YHVH; therefore can only YHHV's Word interpret and explain YHVH's Prophecies.
13. When Exegesis, Hermeneutics and PaRDeS are taken into account, is Torah (literal Word of Instructions of YHVH to Moshe) not interpreted as *nailed to the Stake* and stayed *nailed* to the Stake and is therefore abolished, because the Word (Who spoke the Torah) Ressurrected and Ascended into Heaven, which makes it *Alive and kicking bud*.
14. The verse of Col 2:14 explicitly says the *bill of debt* (of the sin committed) was nailed to the Stake with the Messiah, because the Word (Torah is the Word of YHVH) could never be nailed to a stake, because if Torah was nailed to the stake then does people nail the Creator's Word to the Stake and left it to die (to be abolished).
15. Torah can and will never be abolished while human beings are alive – Matt 5:17-20, because the Word says: upon line [Luke 16:17] upon line [Rev 22:14] upon line [Psa 105:10] and precept [Isa 24:5] upon precept [Exo 31:13] upon precept [Deut 7:9] here a bit and there a bit (Isa 28:10).



OR



Truth

(John 14:6; Rom 9:1; Luke 11:9; James 5:9; Rev 3:8)

Lies

(Rev 22:15; Mark 9:42; Amos 5:21)

CHAPTER 5

Conclusions and Recommendations

To summarize the 89,353 words and 255 pages above in this research and giving recommendations of the Truth that was illuminated through the Ruach, is easy, but to carry it over to people (mostly the Christianity community) and to teach them will be a great task at hand. Not because of lack-of-knowledge or wisdom, but to do it with *love*, for people to *want to* see the Truth and to *listen* to what the Creator asks of everyone.

As said previously in the summary of facts in Chapter 3, this research was not done to find fault in a religion or to provoke "Christianity" to disbelief, but to provoke every reader to the *jealousy of GOD the Creator*. GOD is a *Jealous* GOD in the sense that He dislikes **any form** of worshipping **other than** what He asked and expected from His creation.

The Truth is in the Creator's Word only and all Prophecies in His Word came from Him and not from man, therefore must the Truth be found from within His Word and GOD Himself will have the answers in His Word. No "man" can be a *substitute* for GOD ("Vicar of Christ") or the Messiah on earth and no one can interpret the Word of the Creator personally, without the literal Scripture as His direct Word as prove for the interpretation.

The complete BIBLE, yes from the Torah to Revelation is *GOD-Breathed Word* and no human being can self-interpret the Creator's Creation (BIBLE / Word). The Creator's sacred Name is *Yod-Hey-Vav-Hey* (YHWH = GOD) and He is the only "*I Am*" (*Ehyeh Asher Ehyeh*); and He said everything that was, is and will be was declared (set) already from the very beginning.

GOD is the Creator of the BIBLE and He made the Canonicity of the BIBLE possible, where *Jew* and *Gentile* agreed together on the how, why, who and what to accept Books as part of the BIBLE and as Apocrypha or not valid. The TaNaKh written by the Hebrew Prophets was canonized by the Hebrew and Jewish Sanhedrin (Council / Elders). Prove lies in the *citing* of the Books written by the Prophets, and this [Hebrew] TaNaKh was accepted by early church fathers together with the Jewish Historian Josephus. The same principles were followed to accept Books of the *Messiah era* as Canonical and what should be Apocrypha and what should not be valid.

With these facts cleared and the complete BIBLE accepted as the Word of the Creator, should it be obvious that the complete Word should be used (2 Tim 3:15-17) for understanding His Word, for the correction of mistakes (sin), for the education (learning) of His Prophecy in His whole Word and for teaching believers.

Obviously are there thousands of other material available for education, but if the content in the material is not found in the BIBLE, must a red flag appear to search for the Truth within the Complete BIBLE; from Torah (Genesis to Deuteronomy) to Revelation, including the Prophets (rest of TaNaKh). None of the Books in the TaNaKh can be seen as only history, **because then it would have been placed under the Apocrypha books.**

The Prophets mention the Torah in their Writings and all the Apostles mention the Torah as well in their Writings, thus is the Torah and the Writings of the Prophets still valid today. It has been proven that all the Apostles (including Sha'ul) referred to the Torah and did they **not** contradict what is written in the Torah. The Word in Flesh *walked-and-talked* (observed) exactly Torah according the Word that was Spoken in the beginning.

Children should be taught how to interpret Scripture through proper Exegesis and Hermeneutic principles, rather than teaching them from materials other than the BIBLE falsehoods and lies that cannot be confirmed in the BIBLE. Children are taught that every person has his or her own mind to interpret the Word of GOD, because every individual received his / her own personality, as long as you *claim* you are a "Christian".

The researcher **does not have** a problem with *Christianity*. The problem is that the *Christian* does not want to be taught what is written in the BIBLE (the Truth) with Scripture interpreting Scripture. People must stop to separate the TaNaKh (O.T.) from the Messianic Writings (N.T.) by making the TaNaKh (with the Torah) *null-and-void* (not valid anymore).

The Prophecies of YHVH will not be known if the TaNaKh is discarded or when the Torah is *perverted into legalism*, because the TaNaKh and the Torah Prophecied sixty-five (65) Prophecies of the Suffering Messiah on the donkey and contain 259 Prophecies of the Reigning Messiah on the white horse and everything that goes hand-in-hand with these Prophecies.

Because the TaNaKh is discarded and the Torah perverted to legalism by many, are people likely to not want to listen to Scripture (Torah and TaNaKh) as addition (completion) to Scripture in the Messianic Writings for better understanding and interpretation.

The BIBLE is one Book and not a *before and after* Book. There is One Word throughout the whole BIBLE and that Word became Flesh and Ascended into Heaven; still Alive today just like the Creator planned (declared) it from the beginning.

The Creator knew that people are going to pervert His Word to Moshe (Torah) into legalism, to follow traditions of men, rules of men and doctrine of men; and setting aside the Torah of GOD. The Creator knew from the beginning people are going to *pervert His gift of grace* that He tried to teach mankind through the eyes of Avraham, Yitz'chak, Ya'acov (Yisra'El) Noach, Moshe and David (Patriarchs). This *perversion of the grace* is undermining the Word of GOD by turning the *gift of grace* into *cheap / free* grace, expecting the gift of grace without wanting to adhere to all of His Word.

Traditions of men that have been adhered to for centuries like *Christmas, Easter, [Sun]day worship, Halloween and infant baptism* are just a few, actually originated from pagan (heathen) festivals and from Babylon. These traditions were again implemented in *Christianity* by the *Greek Roman-Catholic Christians*. Unfortunately, was *Christianity* the origin of many "*traditions*" against the Word of GOD, so subtly introduced and implemented that people did not even question them, things like:

- ✧ Augustine, an early church father started the *Replacement Theology* of "Christ" that replaced the Torah. He took many of the sect of Mechaeanism's practices to Christianity.
- ✧ Tertullian, an early church father admitted of worshipping the sun with Sunday worship.
- ✧ Constantine, pope and ruler *legalized* Christianity as a religion and the feast of Christmas. Under his reign were many Jewish Messiah believers persecuted when observing the Shabbat, the Feasts of GOD and when praying in public.
- ✧ The names of the days and months were changed to Greek god names from the Hebrew names given by the Creator. Everything that exists was created by the Creator and the names were originally given by YHVH to the Hebrew Prophets.

Many Exegesis tools exist to assist with interpreting the Word of the Creator correct without reading into something that does not exist. One of the tools is the PaRDeS method, which means *orchard, paradise or forest*. It is a method to use to make the Word *fruitful*, a *paradise* of Words, to live from the *fruit / forest* given by YHVH.

Isa 28:10 says that people did not want to use this method (four layers of depth) to gain wisdom. The Word cannot accuse someone without the witness of two or three is another parable (type and shadow). Yahshua said that everything about Him (Prophecy about Him), will not be known if people does not know and believe the Torah, the Prophets and Psalms (Luke 22:44).

PaRDeS assist in interpreting Torah, the Prophets and Tehillim (Psalms) with literal Scripture interpretation, retrieved directly from Scripture for better understanding of the Messianic Writings. No other interpretation is valid above the literal and direct Word of the Creator, only Scripture; which is the direct and literal Word of YHVH.

I have longed	PHR.	H8373	תאב ta'ab	🔊	TENSE
for thy salvation,	PHR.	H3444	ישועה yěshuw' ah	🔊	
O LORD;	PHR.	H3068	יהוה Yěhovah	🔊	
and thy law	PHR.	H8451	תורה towrah	🔊	
[is] my delight.	PHR.	H8191	שעשועים sha'shua'	🔊	

This research was written in a format to assist a reader in the following way:

1. Understand the lay-out of the BIBLE first and why (and how) the Canonicity of the BIBLE was accepted as Scripture. Accept the whole BIBLE, from Genesis to Revelation as Scripture and as the Word of YHVH, to study and teach from. The TaNaKh cannot be accepted without the Messianic Writings for interpretation and the Messianic Writings cannot be taken as the only Truth without the Torah or TaNaKh.
2. Exegesis and Hermeneutics was explained to use for interpretation of the Creators Word, because it is prohibited to personally interpret Scripture when the Word of YHVH explicitly instructs that His Word may only be interpreted with and from His Word **only**; and not by self-interpretation.
3. Many topics were discussed with enormous amounts of research for a reader to do also self-study, to seek only the Truth and to start living the Truth of YHVH. To depart from (*die off*) the *doctrine of man* (through knowledge of the falsehoods

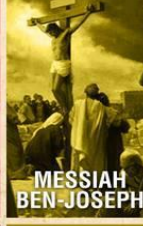
and lies people were taught and followed, because of traditions) and to accept the *doctrine of YHVH the Creator* (and not of the world) to live a righteous and Set-Apart (Holy / Qadosh) life for Him.

4. A PaRDeS method was introduced to also assist to interpret the Word of YHVH literally with the Word of YHVH from the direct Word of YHVH. This will give the understanding that no other interpretation (that is not written in Scripture) can replace the literal Word of the Creator as first interpretation of the Word of YHVH.
5. A *thesis* will be done with the researcher's Doctors Degree to assist with deeper interpretation in Scripture, with the whole BIBLE as Scripture to interpret from, to understand the Prophecies of *Yah Shua HaMashiach, YHVH the Redeemer (Salvation) Messiah*.

THE FOURTH AND SEVENTH DAY

PART 2: COMING SOON
TESTEVERYTHING.NET

Discover how the 7 day creation week reveals the timing of the first and second coming of the Messiah. Learn how Malachi 4:2 relates to Messiah ben-Joseph who was the "sun" that rised with "healing in its wings". And how the tabernacle along with several other scriptures in the Torah give us many prophetic clues on the timing of the second coming (Messiah ben-David).

1 THOUSAND YEARS		1 THOUSAND YEARS		1 THOUSAND YEARS		1 THOUSAND YEARS		1 THOUSAND YEARS		1 THOUSAND YEARS		1 THOUSAND YEARS	
													
DAY 1	DAY 2	DAY 3	DAY 4 MESSIAH BEN-JOSEPH	DAY 5	DAY 6	DAY 7 SABBATH REST MESSIAH BEN-DAVID							
7 THOUSAND YEARS													
													
DAY 1	DAY 2	DAY 3	DAY 4	DAY 5	DAY 6	DAY 7 SABBATH REST							
CREATION WEEK													

119 MINISTRIES



mōnandæg

The first day of the week was dedicated to the moon.



tīwesdæg

The Romans dedicated the second day of the week to Mars, the god of war. Tiwa was the English god most similar to him.



wōdnesdæg

The next day was dedicated to Mercury in the Roman system, but the English chose to replace him with their chief god, Woden.



ṥunresdæg

Thursday is named after Thunor, famous for his magic hammer, and for causing thunder and lightning. He replaced Jupiter, who had some of the same qualities.



frigedæg

The next day was dedicated to Venus, the goddess of love, in the Roman week. The equivalent goddess for the English was Freia.



saeternesdæg

Saturn was the Roman god who oversaw death and the passing of time. There was no equivalent English god, so Saturn was retained.



sunnandæg / hæligdæg

The last day was dedicated to the sun. The first Christians saw Christ as sun-like in some ways, so Sunday became the natural choice for his holy day.

Bibliography

Books

- ✧ Mahoney, D. David & Mahoney, J. James. *The Torah Concordance – A Reference Guide for Biblical Law*. Hebrew Heritage Learning Center, USA, 2009.
- ✧ Prof Liebenberg, W.A. *The Revelation of Y'shua HaMashiach*. 2011.
- ✧ Prof Liebenberg, W.A. *The Rape of the Torah in the New Covenant – The A-Z on the "Law" from a Hebraic Perspective*. 2011.
- ✧ Prof Liebenberg, W.A. *What Are Hebrew Roots, Messianic Believers and Messianic Judaism?* 2012.
- ✧ Rev. Roberts, Alexander, DD. Donaldson, James, LLD. *Ante-Nicene Fathers – Volume one: Apostolic Fathers – Justin Martyr – Irenaeus*. The Apocryphile Press, Berkley, CA, 2007 edition from the 1867 edition.
- ✧ Rabbi Munk, L. Michael. *The Wisdom in the Hebraic Alphabet – The Sacred Letters as a Guide to Jewish Deed and Thought*. Me'sorah Publications, Ltd. 1983.
- ✧ Friedman, David, Ph.D. *They Loved The Torah – What Yeshua's First Followers Really Thought About the Law*. Messianic Jewish Publishers, Clarksville, Maryland, 2001.
- ✧ Kleiman, M. Yaacov *DNA & The BIBLE – The Genetic Link*. Lightcatcher Books, USA, 2004.
- ✧ Roth, G. Andrew. *Wheel of Stars – The Ancient Biblical Calendar of the Future*. Netzari Press LLC, USA, 2010. (Author of the Aramaic English Bible)
- ✧ Rabbi Hammer, Reuven, Ph.D. *Entering Torah – Prefaces to the Weekly Torah Portion*. Gefen Publishing House, Jerusalem, Israel, 2009 / 5769.
- ✧ Du Preez, Marinda. *The Biblical Feasts*. SA.
- ✧ Koster, C.J. Dr. *Come Out Of Her, My People*. Institute for Scripture Research, SA, 2001.
- ✧ Egan, Hope. *Holy Cow – Does GOD Care About What We Eat?* First Fruits of Zion, Littleton, Colorado, USA, 2005.
- ✧ Stander, Hennie. *Jesus@ons.co.za – Die Evangelie van Lukas in die 21ste eeu*. Paarl Print, SA, 2005.
- ✧ Bacchiocchi, Samuel, Dr. *From Sabbath to Sunday – A Historical Investigation of the Rise of Sunday Observance in Early Christianity*. The Pontifical Gregorian Press, Rome, 1977 Seventh printing, 1982.

- ✧ Patterson, Charles. *"Anti-Semitism – The Road To The Holocaust And Beyond."* Lincoln, iUniverse.com, Inc., 1982, 2000.
- ✧ Telushkin, Joseph. *"JEWISH LITERACY – The most important things to know about the Jewish religion, its people, and its history."* New York, HarperCollins Publishers, 2001.
- ✧ Stern, H. David. *Jewish New Testament Commentary – An English Version.* Jewish New Testament Publications INC., Clarksville, Maryland USA, 1992.

Electronic Books

- ✧ Pyper, John. *Biblical Exegesis – Discovering the meaning of Scriptural Text.*
- ✧ Geisler, L. Norman. *Chicago Statement on Biblical Hermeneutics.* Oakland, California: International Council on Biblical Inerrancy, 1983.
- ✧ Heidler, D. Robert. *The Messianic Church Arising! Restoring the Church to Our Covenant Roots.* The Cenacle, Jerusalem, Israel.
- ✧ The House of Yahweh, Abilene Texas. *YAHSHUA - The True Name Of Our Saviour And It's Importance For Use – In Search of the True Saviour.*
- ✧ Lancaster, D. Thomas *Restoration – Returning to the Torah of God.*
- ✧ Batya Ruth Wootten, R. Batya. & Angus Wootten. *Who is Israel?*
- ✧ Berkowitz, Ariel & D'vorah. *Torah Rediscovered.*
- ✧ Vlach, Mike. *"HOW WE GOT OUR BIBLE."* www.theologicalstudies.org 1999.
- ✧ Hillel ben David (Killian Greg). *Rules of Jewish Hermeneutics,* Olympia, www.betemunah.org.
- ✧ Hislop Alexander, *"The Two Babylons."* Free-to-Share Publications, 2010.
- ✧ Elder Wirl, Bob. *Yahshua, Let's put Yah back in Y'shua.*
- ✧ *Who's Who in the Bible – Complete Encyclopaedia of Bible Personalities.*
- ✧ Netzari Press. *The Y'shua of History,* 2010.
- ✧ White, Lew. *Transliteration study on the Name of the Messiah.*
- ✧ *The Jewish Encyclopaedia.*
- ✧ Gershom, ben Ruben. *Sharing our Saviour Yahushua the Messiah to the World!*
- ✧ Jenkins, B. Orville, Dr. *Was the New Testament first Written in Aramaic.* 2005.
- ✧ Outler, C. Albert, Ph.D. *Augustine: Confessions.* Dallas, Texas.
- ✧ McDonald Road SDA Church. *Christian Paganism.*
- ✧ Trimm, S. James. *Christianity invented by church fathers.*

- ✧ Fossilized Customs. *Constantine I – Emperor of Roman Empire, Desighner of Hybrid Religion, moved Empire's Capital to "Constantinople" – Founder of Catholicism, the first Catholic pope, and sycretizing compromiser.*
- ✧ Fackenheim, Emil. *To Mend the Word – The Holocaust.* (The **Holocaust** [HaShoah, in Hebrew] refers to the systematic murder of more than six million Jews orchestrated by Adolph Hitler and the National Socialist [Nazi] Party in Europe during World War II.)
- ✧ *Dawn of History (3800 B.C.E. – 1948 C.E.).*
- ✧ Ritenbaugh, W. John. *Elijah and John the Baptist.* January 2004.
- ✧ *Signs that Yeshua's Coming is very near.*
- ✧ Warker, Margeret. Bronder, Robert. Resig, Dorothy. *Paul: Jewish Law and Early Christianity.* Biblical Archaeology Society, 2012.
- ✧ Weiss, Beth. *Rabbis.*
- ✧ *Religion: Anti-Semitism.* From the source: *Schooled in Hate: Anti-Semitism On Campus,* ADL, 1997. Copyright Anti-Defamation League (ADL). Cited from UN General Assembly Resolutions: Resolution 623, ADL Audit of Anti-Semitic Incidents in 2012 and American Jewish Historical Society.
- ✧ Vatican New World Order blogspot.com. *The Jesuit Vatican New World Order.*
- ✧ Rabbi Dr. Hillel ben David (Gregg Killian). *Rules of Jewish Hermeneutics.* Highline Drive SE, Olympia, WA 98501.
- ✧ Shanks, Hershel. *Dead Sea Scrolls – Discovery and Meaning – Revised Edition.* Biblical Archaeology Society, 2007.
- ✧ Rabbi Dubov, D. Nissan. *The Four Worlds – Kabbalah Chassidism and Jewish Mysticism.* Chabad – Lubavitch Media Center.
- ✧ Edersheim, Alfred, Ph.D. *Sketches of Jewish Social Life.* (E-sword)
- ✧ Prof. Robinson, J. Armitage. Rutherford, Andrew. Rev. Hogg, W. Hope. Craigie, A.W. Rev. Keith, John. Kay, M.D. Menzies, Allen. Patrick, John. *The Early Church Fathers: Ante-Nicene Fathers Volume 9.* (E-sword)
- ✧ Schaff, Phillip, LL.D. (PROFESSOR OF BIBLICAL LITERATURE IN THE UNION THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY, N. Y.) *The Creeds of Christendom, with a History and Critical Notes – Volume 2 The Greek and Latin Creeds, with Translations.* Harper & Brothers, USA. 1877. (E-sword)
- ✧ Sheldon, M. Charles. *In His Steps – "What Would Jesus Do?"* Topeka, Kansas, Public domain, 1897. (E-sword)
- ✧ Lange, P. John, D.D. by Schaff, Phillip. *Lang's Commentary on the Holy Scriptures.* 1860. (E-sword)

- ✧ Bruce, B. Alexander. *The Training of the Twelve*. 1871. (E-sword)
- ✧ Ramsay, M.W, LL.D. *St. Paul the Traveler and the Roman Citizen*. Aberdeen, 1895. (E-sword)
- ✧ Edersheim, Alfred, Ph.D. *The Temple- Its Ministry and Service*. (E-sword)
- ✧ Prof. Liebenberg, A. Wimpie. *Understanding the Mysterious Spirit World – A Hebrew Perspective – A must for Counselors, Teachers and Believers*. Hebraic Roots Teaching Institute.
- ✧ Prof. Liebenberg, A. Wimpie. *Galatians – Christian Foundational Teachings No. 7 (Advanced) – At Last, Galatians Understandable to Every Christian!* Hebraic Roots Teaching Institute.
- ✧ Prof. Liebenberg, A. Wimpie. *A Hebraic Perspective: Is there a Pre-Tribulation Rapture or not?* Hebraic Roots Teaching Institute.

Bibles, Concordances, Dictionaries

- ✧ Rabbi Koniuchowsky, Yoseph Moshe. *Restoration Scriptures – The Word of YHWH – True Name Edition Study Bible*. Your Arms To Israel Publishing, North Miami Beach, Florida, 2005.
- ✧ Stern, H. David. *Complete Jewish Bible – An English Version*. Messianic Jewish Publishers, Clarksville, USA, 1998.
- ✧ Green, P, Jay, Sr. *The Interlinear Bible – Hebrew-Greek-English – With Strong's Concordance Numbers Above Each Word*. Hendrickson Publishers, Peabody, Massachusetts, USA, 01961-3473, 1976.
- ✧ Roth, G, Andrew – Yitzkhak bar Raphael. Compiled, Edited & Translated with consultation to both Ancient and Modern Authorities including: The Khabouris Codex and the 1905 Critical Edition of the Syriac New Testament by the British and Foreign Bible Society. *Aramaic English New Testament – Large Print Parallel Study Edition – MARI – Peshitta English Aramaic Critical Edition – A Compilation, Annotation and Translation of the Eastern Original Aramaic New Testament Peshitta text*. Netzari Press LLC, USA, 2011. (**MARI** is the Aramaic word for "my Master", a title consistently given to Y'shua by His followers. When Thomas saw the risen Saviour in John's Gospel, for example, he dropped to his knees and declared, "Mari w'Alahi" or "my Master and my Elohim.")
- ✧ Du Toit, J.D. Totius. *Onder redaksie van Professors en Doktors: Gemser, B. Geyser, A.S. Groenewald, E.P. Kroeze, J.H. Muller, J. Jac, Van Selms, A. Snyman, W.J. Du*

Toit, S. Verhoef, P.A. Weis, P.F.D. en Geldenhuys, J.N, Ds. *Die BYBEL met Verklarende Aantekening, Deel I, Genesis tot Psalms (1959), Deel II, Job tot Maleagi (1958), Deel III, Mattheus tot Openbaring (1959) (Met Lyste, Tydtafels, Registers en Landkaarte).* Verenigde Protestantse Uitgewers (EDMS.) BPK, Kaapstad.

- ✧ Trimm, S. James. *The Hebraic-Roots Versions Scriptures Containing The Tanak and Ketuvim Netzarim.* Hurst, USA. Institute for Scripture Research, Northriding, RSA, 2004.
- ✧ Mijnhardt, A. Felix. *AFRIKAANSE BYBELKONKORDANSIE.* J.L. van Schaik Bpk, Pretoria. 1970. Wallachs Printing Co Edms Bpk, Pretoria. 1905.
- ✧ Prof. Dr. F.W. Grosheide. *BYBELSE ENSIKLOPEDIE.* Verenigde Protestantse Uitgewers (EDMS.) BPK, Kaapstad. 1956.
- ✧ Bullinger, W. Ethelbert. *A Critical Lexicon and Concordance of the English and Greek New Testament,* 1908.
- ✧ *Expository Notes of DR. Constable.* (E-sword)
- ✧ *John Gill's Exposition on the entire Bible.* (E-sword)
- ✧ *Nave's Topical Bible.* (E-sword)
- ✧ *Vine's Complete Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words and Old Testament Words.* (E-sword)
- ✧ *R.A. Torrey's New Topical Textbook.* (E-sword)
- ✧ *The Popular Cyclopedia of Biblical Literature by John Kitto.* (E-sword)
- ✧ *An Aramaic English Lexicon on the Peshitta.* (E-sword)
- ✧ *Hitchcock's Bible Names.* (E-sword)
- ✧ Wylen, M. Stephen. *The Jews in the Time of Jesus.* Paulist Press, New York / Mahwah, USA, 1996.
- ✧ Rabbi Boyarin, Daniel. *The Jewish Gospels – The Story of the Jewish Christ.* The New Press, New York, 2012.
- ✧ Prof. Liebenberg, A. Wimpie. *Why you can only accept Jewish Eschatology.* Hebraic Roots Teaching Institute.
- ✧ Prof. Liebenberg, A. Wimpie. *Scripture Interpretation – A Hebraic Approach to Scripture Interpretation.* Hebraic Roots Teaching Institute.
- ✧ Prof. Liebenberg, A. Wimpie. *Ephesians – Christian Foundational Teachings No. 8 (Advanced) – At Last, Ephesians Understandable to Every Christian.* Hebraic Roots Teaching Institute.
- ✧ Madau, Adrian. *God Really Is Great! Religions Poisoned Everything.* ISBN 978-0-9891217-0-5. 2013.

- ☆ Oakland Country Bible Students. *Will Israel Survive the End Times?* Associated Bible Students, Clawson, ISBN 0-9844153-5-1, 2012.

Internet Resource (not cited in dissertation)

- Amidah, Wikipedia – <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Amidah>
- Abrahamic-Faith Nazarene Hebraic Study Scriptures, by Messianic Rabbi Simon Altaf. http://torahtreasuretrove.com/galatians_ch_5_by_rabbi_simon_ataf
- Aramaic Galatians: A Hebraic Understanding. Word for Word Translation of the Epistle to the Galatians from the Ancient Aramaic Peshitta Text – by Andrew G. Roth – http://torahtreasuretrove.com/aramaic_galatians_by_andrew_g_roth
- A One-Page Overview of Christian History, Religious Facts – <http://www.religionfacts.com/christianity/history/overview.htm>
- Bar Kokhba revolt, Wikipedia – http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bar_Kokhba_revolt
- Benjamin Franklin, Wikipedia the Free Encyclopaedia – http://en.wikiquote.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin
- Biblical Typology – Theopedia, an encyplodedia of Biblical Christianity – http://www.theopedia.com/Biblical_typology 2013.
- Catechism of Catholic Church – <http://www.vatican.va/archive/catechism/p3s2.htm>
- Jewish Virtual Library – http://www.jewishvirtuallibrary.org/jsource/judaica/ejud_0002_0004_0_04287.html
- John Calvin, Wikipedia the Free Encyclopaedia – http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Calvin
- List of Christian Denominations – Wikipedia, the Free Encyclopaedia – http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Christian_denominations
- Law and Salvation, New 2 Torah - <http://www.new2torah.com/2013/06/law-and-salvation/>;
- Martin Luther, Wikipedia the Free Encyclopaedia – http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Martin_Luther
- Pentecostalism, Wikipedia, Free Encyclopaedia – <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pentecostalism>
- Protestant Reformation, Wikipedia the Free Encyclopaedia – http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Protestant_Reformation
- Rashi, Wikipedia – <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rashi>

- *Should we call ourselves a Christian?* - by Richard Anthony – <http://www.ecclesia.org/truth/christian.html>
- *The Catholic Church*, Wikipedia – http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Catholic_Church#cite_ref-OneFaith114_130-0
- *The "Memorial Name" - YHVH – Also the Hebrew Name of the Messiah*, The RETURN Movement International - <http://www.scriptural-truths.com/memorial-name.htm>;
- *Vatican Website: Encyclical of Pope Leo 13th on the Rosary, Octobri Mense, Pope Leo 13th, 1903-1914*
- *What Is The Greek Orthodox Church?* The Greek Orthodox Archdiocese of America – <http://www.goarch.org/ourfaith/ourfaith8032>
- *Watchtower Society* – http://www.watchtower.org/e/bh/article_05.htm
- *Yahshua, Yah's Space* - <http://yahsspace.org/>;

Institutional Resources

Roman-Catholic Church

- *Catechism of the Catholic Church as approved & promulgated by John Paul, Bishop*
- *Catechism of the Catholic Church (CCC)*. Vatican.va.
- *Compendium of the Catechism of the Catholic Church*. Vatican.va.
- *Epiphanius; Panarion 29*

PaRDeS

☆ **1 Corinthians 14:6 ~ “But now, brothers, if I come to you speaking with tongues, what shall I profit you unless I speak to you, either by revelation, or by knowledge, or by prophesying, or by teaching?”**

☆ **Ephesians 3:16-19 ~ “in order that He might give you, according to the riches of His esteem by power, to be strengthened in the inner man, through His Spirit, (17) that the Messiah might dwell in your hearts¹ through belief – having become rooted and grounded in love, (18) in order that you might be strengthened to firmly grasp, with all the set-apart ones, what is the width and length and depth and height, (19) to know the love of Messiah which surpasses knowledge, in order that you might be filled to all the completeness of Elohim.”**

Annexure 1

CANONICITY OF TANAKH

I. Introduction to Canonicity

A. Significance of canonicity “If the Scriptures are indeed inspired by God then a significant question arises: Which books are inspired? Historically, it was important for the people of God to determine which books God had inspired and which ones were recognized as authoritative” (Enns, p. 170).

B. Difference between inspiration and canonicity “Inspiration indicates how the Bible received its authority, whereas canonization tells how the Bible received its acceptance. It is one thing for God to give the Scriptures their authority, and quite another for men to recognize that authority” (Geisler and Nix, p. 203).

C. What does “canon” mean?

1. Original meaning The original meaning of “canon” can be traced to the ancient Greeks who used the term in a literal sense. To them, a kanon was a rod, ruler, staff or measuring rod. Thus, a **kanon was a standard for measurement**. This literal meaning provided the basis for a later, extended use of the term. The word eventually was extended to mean a rule or standard for anything.

2. In regard to the Bible In theological usage, “canon” refers to authoritative Scripture. As F. F. Bruce says, “When we speak of the canon of scripture, the word ‘canon’ has a simple meaning. It means the list of books contained in scripture, the list of books recognized as worthy to be included in the sacred writings of a worshipping community. In a Christian context, we might define the word as ‘the list of the writings acknowledged by the Church as documents of the divine revelation.’ ” (The Canon of Scripture, p. 17).

3. Usage in early church The term “canon,” in reference to the books of Scripture, developed with the early church fathers. The first clear application of this term to the Scriptures is attributed to Athanasius in A. D. 367. (F. F. Bruce, The Canon of Scripture, p. 17).

II. Determining the canon Who or what determined which books were canonical?

A. God determines the Canon Canonicity is determined by God. A book is not inspired because men made it canonical; it is canonical because God inspired it. Thus, canonicity is determined by inspiration.

B. Distinction between determination and discovery Understanding canonicity involves two related but separate issues: 1) Canonicity is determined by God and 2) Canonicity is discovered by man. A failure to keep this distinction leads to confusion. How a book received its authority is determined by God. How men discover and recognize that authority is another matter altogether.

C. False views concerning canonicity

1. Old Age determines canonicity Canonicity is not determined by the antiquity⁵⁵⁶ of a book. (This view was held by J. G. Eichorn (1780). He believed all books composed after Malachi's time were excluded from consideration. Thus, he believed all Jewish books before Malachi were considered canonical.)

a. There are many books that are older than some of the books of the Bible that are not considered "canon."

(1) Book of Jasher (Joshua 10:13)

(2) Book of the Wars of the Lord (Numbers 21:14)

(3) Books of the Jewish Apocrypha

b. Many of the canonical books were received into the canon shortly after they were written. Moses' writings were considered as authoritative while he was still living (Deut. 31:24-26). Daniel accepted Jeremiah's book as canonical (Dan. 9:2). Peter considered Paul's letters to be Scripture (2 Peter 3:15-16).

2. Hebrew language determines canonicity Hitzig (ca. 1850) believed the use of the Hebrew language was the Jewish test for canonicity. However, books such as Ecclesiasticus, Tobit, and 1 Maccabees were rejected even though they were composed in Hebrew (see Gleason L. Archer, A Survey of Old Testament Introduction, p. 78).

3. Agreement with the Torah (Law) determines canonicity The Torah, though, is not the standard of canonicity (**though all canonical books will agree with the Torah**). Plus, Jewish fathers believed their Talmud and Midrash agreed with the Torah, but they were never believed to be canonical.

4. Religious value determines canonicity The very fact that a book is canonical guarantees that it will have religious value. But religious value does not necessarily make a book canonical. Many books with religious value have been written that have not been accepted into the Bible.

5. The Church determines canonicity (often associated with Roman Catholicism) According to this view, the church determines the canonicity of the books of the Bible. A book is canonical because the church declares it to be so. (It must also be noted that since the Roman-Catholic Church sees itself as the determiner of the canon, it sees itself as having an authority to interpret the books of the canon that others do not have.) The following **points, however, argue against this view:**

a. God determines whether a book is inspired and thus canonical—churches and councils do not. Men do not determine which books are canonical. God does. God gives the books of the Bible their divine authority. God's people recognize this authority but they do not determine its authority. As J. I. Packer has said, "The Church no more gave us the New Testament canon than Sir Isaac Newton gave us the force of gravity" (God Speaks to Man, p. 81).

⁵⁵⁶ Canonicity: Determining and Discovering the God-inspired Books; <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 16/06/2014.

b. Canon determined immediately The books of the Bible became canon the moment they were written. They did not need to wait for the church's sanction to become canon. They were canon the moment they were written.⁵⁵⁷

c. This view confuses the two related but separate issues: 1) the canon's nature (determination) and 2) the canon's discovery. James White in his book, *The Roman-Catholic Controversy*, rightly points out how some people confuse the nature of the canon with how people come to know the contents of the canon. He uses an example to illustrate this:

"I have written eight books. The action of my writing those books creates the canon of my works. If a friend of mine does not have accurate or full knowledge of how many books I have written, does that mean there is no canon of my books? No, of course not. In fact, if I was the only one who knew how many books I had written, would that mean that the canon of my books does not exist? The point is clear. The canon is one issue, and it comes from God's action of inspiring the Scriptures. Our knowledge of the canon is another. Our knowledge can grow and mature, as it did at times in history. But the canon is not defined by us nor is it affected by our knowledge or ignorance" (James R. White, *The Roman Catholic Controversy*, Minneapolis: Bethany House, 1996. p. 94).

A. Progressive collection of O.T. prophetic books (as recorded in the O.T.)
From the beginning, the inspired writings of the Old Testament were collected by the Jews and revered as sacred and divinely authoritative. Annexure 1

1. Moses put the Book of the Covenant, including the Ten Commandments (Ex. 20:1—23:33), into writing and the people agreed to obey it (Ex. 24:3-8). The Book of the Covenant became part of the Book of Exodus and immediately was accepted at the Word of God.

2. The Book of Deuteronomy was immediately stored by the Ark in the Tabernacle after Moses wrote it (Deut. 31:24-26). Later it, with the rest of the Law of Moses, was moved to the Temple (2 Kings 22:8).

3. Joshua added his words and set them up in the sanctuary of the Lord (Josh. 24:26).

4. Daniel refers to "the books" which contained the "law of Moses" and the prophets (Dan. 9:2, 6, 11).

B. Later O.T. books quote earlier O.T. books as authoritative

1. The books of Moses, which were immediately recognized as canonical, **are cited throughout the Old Testament** from Joshua (1:7) to Malachi (4:4).

2. The events of Joshua are referred to in Judges (1:1, 20-21; 2:8). . 3. The books of Kings cites the life of David as told in the books of Samuel (1 Kings 3:14; 5:7; 8:16; 9:5).

⁵⁵⁷ i.b.i.d.

4. **Chronicles** reviews **Israel's history** from Genesis through Kings including material from Ruth (1 Chronicles 2:12-13).

5. **The ninth chapter of Nehemiah** reviews Israel's history as recorded from Genesis through Ezra.

6. 1 Kings 4:32 refers to Solomon's proverbs and songs.

7. Daniel cites Jeremiah 25 (Daniel 9:2).

8. Jonah recites parts from the Psalms (Jonah 2).

9. Ezekiel mentions both Job and Daniel (Ezekiel 14:14, 20).

NOTE: "Not every book is cited by a later one, however; but enough are cited to demonstrate that there was a growing collection of divinely authoritative books available to and quoted by subsequent prophets." (Norman L. Geisler and William E. Nix, *From God to Us*, Chicago: Moody, 1974. p. 81).

C. Prophetic continuity A prophetic chain links the books of the Old Testament together.

1. Moses wrote the Pentateuch

2. Joshua, the author, of Joshua and perhaps the very end of Deuteronomy (which records Moses' death), took over for Moses in writing inspired Scripture.⁵⁵⁸

3. Samuel wrote of the history of David (1 Chron. 29:29).

4. Nathan, Ahijah and Iddo wrote of the history of Solomon (2 Chron. 9:29).

5. Shemaiah and Iddo wrote of the history of Rehoboam (2 Chron. 12:15).

6. Iddo wrote of the history of Abijah (2 Chron. 13:22).

7. Jehu wrote about Jehoshaphat's reign (2 Chron. 20:34).

8. Isaiah wrote of Hezekiah's reign (2 Chron. 32:32).

9. Unnamed prophets wrote about Manasseh's reign (2 Chron. 33:19).

10. Jeremiah wrote just prior to and during the Babylonian exile.

11. Daniel and Ezekiel continued the prophetic ministry during the exile.

12. Ezra, after the exile, returned from Babylon with the books of Moses and the prophets. (Ezra 6:18; Neh. 9:14, 26-30). . 13. Nehemiah completed the chronology of O.T. prophetic continuity.

NOTE: “Each prophet from Moses through Nehemiah contributed to the growing collection which was preserved by the official prophetic community stemming from Samuel.” (Geisler and Nix, *How We Got Our Bible*, p. 83).

III. Factors contributing to the recognition of certain books as canonical

A. Tradition The well-established tradition that many of the books came from Moses or one of the other acknowledged prophets.

B. Spiritual authority of the books themselves — as they were used in public or private reading and in exposition.

C. Recognition in the Temple as sacred

D. Conviction of leaders and people The opinions of religious leaders and common convictions of the people about the books were considered.

E. Jesus and the Apostles “For Christians, there was the additional consideration that Jesus himself and his apostles, in the pages of the New Testament, **often refer to the Jewish scriptures in general, and to many of the individual books as having the authority of God**” (Beckwith, p. 100).

IV. End of O.T. canonical era Malachi, the last Old Testament book, was written around 430 B. C. The Old Testament canon era, then, as determined by God, lasted from 1445 B. C. to 430 B. C. (See Time Period of the Bible chart on page 13.). Evidences that the O.T. canon ceased at the time of Malachi include:⁵⁵⁹

A. Josephus According to the Jewish historian, Josephus (A. D. 37-95), the Hebrew O.T. was complete and no more canonical writings were composed after the reign of Artaxerxes (464—424 B. C.) (The time of Malachi.):

“From Artaxerxes (the successor of Xerxes) until our time everything has been recorded, but has not been deemed worthy of like credit with what preceded, because the exact succession of the prophets ceased. . . . For though so long a time has now passed, no one has dared to add anything to them, or to take anything from them, or to alter anything in them” (Josephus, *Against Apion* I. 8.).

NOTE: Rationalist higher critics claim that portions of Scripture such as Daniel, Ecclesiastes, Song of Solomon and many of the Psalms were compiled many years after Malachi. According to Josephus, though, no additional material was

ever included in the canonical twenty-two books during the centuries between 425 B. C. and A. D. 90. This presents a problem to those who challenge the traditional authorship of these books (Archer, p. 73).

B. The Talmud The Jewish Talmud states, “After the latter prophets Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi, the Holy Spirit departed from Israel.”

C. New Testament The New Testament never quotes any O.T. book as authoritative after the time of Malachi.

⁵⁵⁹ i.b.i.d.

V. Recognition of the Old Testament as completed canon When were all the books of our Old Testament canon recognized as canonical?

A. New Testament “Good evidence exists in the New Testament which shows that by the time of Jesus the canon of the Old Covenant had been fixed” (Lightfoot, p. 106).

1. Luke 24:44 The canonical writings, according to Jesus, are composed of the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms. This threefold division is equivalent to the three divisions of the Hebrew scriptures—the Law, the Prophets and the Writings.

2. Martyrs of the Old Testament Jesus once spoke of the time “from the blood of Abel to the blood of Zachariah” (Luke 11:51; cf. Matt. 23:35) when referring to the martyrs of the Old Testament. The first martyr of the Old Testament was Abel and the last martyr was Zachariah (cf. 2 Chron. 24:20-21). Since Chronicles is the last book in the Hebrew Bible, Jesus was making a comprehensive statement covering the known Old Testament (Genesis—Chronicles).

B. Josephus (A. D. 37-95) Josephus, in his *Against Apion* stated, “We have not tens of thousands of books, discordant and conflicting, but only twenty-two containing the record of all time, which have been justly believed to be divine.” (I.8). (NOTE: “It is the opinion of most scholars that Josephus in deriving his number of twenty-two books joined Ruth to Judges and Lamentations to Jeremiah;⁵⁶⁰

and remembering that the Jews enumerated their books differently. . . the twenty-two books mentioned by Josephus equal our present thirty-nine books” (Lightfoot, p. 108)).

ALSO: “It is unlikely that Josephus’s classification of the books was his own; he probably reproduces a tradition with which he had been familiar for a long time, having learned it either in the priestly circle into which he was born or among the Pharisees with whose party he associated himself as a young man” (Bruce, *The Canon of Scripture*, pp. 33-34).

C. Council of Jamnia (A. D. 90) This council met to discuss the canonicity of Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Song of Solomon and Esther. Some have said that this council determined the limits of the Old Testament canon, and thus, the Old Testament canon was not finalized until A. D. 90. But as Bruce says, “The upshot of the Jamnia debates was the firm acknowledgement of all these books as Holy⁵⁶¹

Scripture.” And after warning us not to “exaggerate the importance of the Jamnia debate” he said, “The books which they decided to acknowledge as canonical were already generally accepted, although questions had been raised about them” (Bruce, *The Books and the Parchments*, pp. 97-98). Thus, the Council of Jamnia did not include any new books as canonical, it simply reaffirmed those books already considered canonical.

⁵⁶⁰ i.b.i.d.

⁵⁶¹ i.b.i.d.

*D. Bishop Melito of Sardis (A. D. 170) “Bishop Melito of Sardis (in modern Turkey) was pressed by a friend to obtain ‘an accurate statement of the ancient books as regards their number and their order.’ Melito did, and as a result, gave a now famous list of the Old Testament books. Except for its lack of Esther, **this list matches today’s Jewish and Protestant Old Testament**” (Bruce Waltke in “How We Got Our Old Testament,” in Christian History, issue 43, Vol. XIII, No. 3, p. 32).*

E. Early church fathers

1. Third century A. D. In the third century A. D., Origen confirmed the testimony of Josephus on the number of books in the Hebrew canon. The books Origen listed correspond to the thirty-nine books of the Protestant Old Testament.

*2. Fourth century A. D. “In the fourth century eight prominent Church fathers, Athanasius of Alexandria, Cyril of Jerusalem, Epiphanius of Cyprus, Amphilochius of Asia Minor, and Gregory Nazianzus of Cappadocia, Hilary of France, Rufinus of Italy, and Jerome have left us lists **all of which agree with the Hebrew canon** except for very minor variations. . .” (R. Laird Harris, *Inspiration and Canonicity of the Bible*, Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1957, p. 189).*

*F. Conclusion The “evidence implies that by the beginning of the Christian era the identity of all the canonical books was well known and generally accepted” (Roger T. Beckwith, “The Canon of the Old Testament,” in *The Origin of the Bible*, p. 61.).*

TANAKH AND APOGRYPHA

*I. **The issue** Many books were written during the Old Testament era. Which ones are canon and which ones are not? How do we classify the many writings of the Old Testament era?*

*II. **Old Testament arrangement overview** Not all books written during the Old Testament era are Scripture. How are the different books classified? They can be classified into four categories.*

A. Homologoumena — Books accepted by all

B. Antilegomena — Books disputed by some

C. Pseudepigrapha — Books rejected by all

D. Apocrypha — Books accepted by some

*III. **The Homologoumena** (Books accepted by all)*

A. Nature “The Homologoumena are books which once they were accepted into the canon were not subsequently questioned or disputed. They were recognized

not only by early generations but by succeeding generations as well” (Geisler and Nix, p. 257).⁵⁶²

B. Number The Homologoumena comprise thirty-four of the thirty-nine books in the Protestant Old Testament. The only books that are not part of the Homologoumena in the Protestant Old Testament are Song of Solomon, Ecclesiastes, Esther, Ezekiel and Proverbs.

IV. The Antilegomena (Books disputed by some)

A. Nature The Antilegomena are the several books that were initially and ultimately considered canonical but were, at one time, disputed by some of the Jewish community.

B. Number Five canonical books of the Old Testament fall into this category.

1. Song of Solomon The school of Shammai (first. cent. A. D.), as well as some others, expressed doubt about the canonicity of the Song of Solomon. The basic reason was that the book seemed sensual to some. The view of Rabbi Akiba ben Joseph (c. A. D. 50—132), however, prevailed as is evidenced in his statement, “God forbid!—No man in Israel ever disputed about the Song of Songs that it does not render the hands unclean [i. e. is not canonical]” (Geisler and Nix, p. 259).

2. Ecclesiastes One of the main objections to Ecclesiastes was that it was skeptical and that its talk of life being “vanity” was not fitting of Holy Scripture. This doubt about the book, however, is more of an interpretive issue than one concerning inspiration. The thrust of the book is that life lived apart from God is vanity. That is why at the conclusion of the book, Solomon can say, “Fear God and keep His commandments. . . for God will bring every act to judgement” (Eccl. 12:13-14). As with the other Antilegomena, this book, too, was accepted as canon.

3. Esther Esther was doubted by some because the name of God is absent from the book. People wondered how a book that did not mention God could be inspired. God’s sovereignty and providence, however, is prevalent throughout the book as **He protected His people from extermination**. Josephus and the Mishnah cite Esther as Scripture.

4. Ezekiel “This book was questioned by some because of its apparent anti-Mosaical teachings. The school of Shammai thought that the teaching of the book was not in harmony with the Mosaic law, and that the first ten chapters exhibited a tendency toward gnosticism” (Geisler and Nix, p. 261). However, **no specific examples have been given to show that Ezekiel contradicts the Mosaic Law** or that its chapters tend toward gnosticism. As Beckwith has observed, “evidence

in favour of the canonicity of Ezekiel is so ample and so early that the book is something of an embarrassment to those who hold the common view about the date of the closing of the canon.” (Roger Beckwith, *The Old Testament Canon in the New Testament Church and Its Background in Early Judaism*, p. 86).

⁵⁶² Old Testament Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha; <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

5. Proverbs Some claimed that Proverbs was not inspired because it supposedly contradicts itself (see Proverbs 26:4-5). Many rabbis, though, claimed that **when⁵⁶³ interpreted correctly**, Proverbs did not contradict itself. Support for Proverbs from the Pharisaic, Essene and Christian community strongly vouch for its canonicity.

V. The Pseudepigrapha (Books rejected by all)

A. Nature The term pseudepigrapha means writings attributed to fictitious authors. The Pseudepigrapha are books that are clearly spurious and inauthentic. Many of these works claim to have been written by biblical authors, but in reality were written between 200 B. C. and A. D. 200. Most of these books are made up of dreams, visions and revelations in the apocalyptic style of Ezekiel, Daniel and Zechariah (Geisler and Nix, pp. 262-63).

B. Number The actual number of Pseudepigrapha books is unknown. According to Bruce Metzger, "The number of Jewish and Jewish-Christian pseudepigraphic writings must once have been great. Jewish legend ascribes to Enoch no fewer than 366 such works, and 2 Esdras (14:46) tells of 70 secret books that are discriminated from the 24 canonical ones." Some researchers of the Pseudepigrapha have listed more than 200 pseudepigrapha titles—many of these no longer extant. (Bruce M. Metzger, "The Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha" in *Expositor's Bible Commentary*, p. 170 fn. 3). For our purposes, 18 are worthy of mention. (List taken from Geisler and Nix, p. 263.).

1. The Book of Jubilee (Legendary) A midrashic expansion of biblical history from Creation to the First Passover.

2. The Letter of Aristeas (Legendary) Supposedly an eyewitness account of the translation of the Old Testament into Greek by seventy-two elders at the instruction of Eleazar the high priest. Scholars say this book was written between 200 B. C. and A. D. 33.

3. The Book of Adam and Eve (Legendary)

4. The Martyrdom of Isaiah (Legendary)

1. 1 Enoch (Apocalyptic) This book is cited in Jude 1:14-15 and is the longest of the surviving Jewish pseudepigraphic writings. It is a composite work, written by various authors in Aramaic during the last two centuries B. C. "Professing to embody a series of revelations granted to Enoch, the seventh from Adam, the anonymous authors discuss such matters as the origin of evil, the angels and their destinies, the nature of Gehenna and Paradise, and various astronomical and cosmological fancies" (Metzger, p. 171).

6. The Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs (Apocalyptic) A work based on Jacob's words to his sons in Genesis 49.

7. The Sibylline Oracle (Apocalyptic)

⁵⁶³ i.b.i.d.

8. The Assumption of Moses (Apocalyptic)⁵⁶⁴

9. 2 Enoch, or The Book of the Secrets of Enoch (Apocalyptic) “The book relates Enoch’s travels through the seven heavens and the divine revelations that he received concerning creation, the history of the world, hell, and paradise. Its composition is dated by most scholars in the first half of the first Christian century” (Metzger, p. 173).

10. 2 Baruch, or The Syriac Apocalypse of Baruch (Apocalyptic)

11. 3 Baruch, or The Greek Apocalypse of Baruch (Apocalyptic)

12. 3 Maccabees (Didactical) This book has nothing to do with the Maccabees but probably received its name since it claims to describe events during the Maccabean period. The book contains impossibilities and exaggerations and was written shortly before or during the beginning of the Christian era.

13. 4 Maccabees (Didactical) This work is a Greek philosophical treatise addressed to Jews on the supremacy of reason over the passions (Metzger, p. 172). It was written between 150 B. C. and A. D. 70.

14. Pirke Aboth (Didactical)

15. The Story of Ahikar (Didactical)

16. The Psalms of Solomon (Poetical) Eighteen in number, these psalms were composed in the middle of the first century B. C. These psalms speak of the coming age when God will send His Messiah, of the house of David, to purge Jerusalem, subdue Gentile nations and rule in righteousness.

17. Psalms 151 (Poetical)

18. The Fragment of a Zadokite Work (Historical).

VI. **The Apocrypha** (Books accepted by some)

A. Nature “The word apocrypha has come into the English language from the Greek and basically means hidden. It was used very early in the sense of secretive or concealed, but was also used in reference to a book whose origin was doubtful or unknown. Eventually the word took on the meaning of non-canonical, and thus for centuries the non-canonical books have been known as apocryphal books. **Yet in Protestant circles ‘the apocrypha’ is the normal designation for those extra books which are found in the Catholic Old Testament**” (Lightfoot, p. 115). To summarize, Apocrypha can refer to:

1. “Something hard to understand” or “hidden”

2. All noncanonical books A general designation for all the books (including the pseudepigrapha) outside the Hebrew canon. The use of the term “apocrypha” to mean “noncanonical” goes back to the fifth century A. D. with Jerome (R. K.

⁵⁶⁴ i.b.i.d.

Harrison, "Old Testament and New Testament Apocrypha," in *The Origin of the Bible*, p. 84).⁵⁶⁵

3. The fifteen works found in the Alexandrian Canon and Septuagint that were not part of the Hebrew (Palestinian) Canon "The Apocrypha' is the designation applied to a collection of fourteen or fifteen books (or parts of books) not included in the Masoretic Hebrew Bible, which were written during the last two centuries before Christ and the first century of the Christian era" (Metzger, p. 161).

4. Old Testament books and additions found in the Catholic Bible that are not found in the Protestant Bible (Post-Reformation meaning).

B. Confusion over the Apocrypha: Palestinian or Alexandrian Canon? The confusion over the Apocrypha revolves around the two traditions of the Old Testament canon. The Palestinian Canon contains the twenty-four books of the Hebrew Bible (thirty-nine in English) while the Alexandrian Canon contains the additional fifteen books we call the Apocrypha. (The Alexandrian Canon arose in Alexandria, Egypt where the Hebrew Scriptures were translated into the Greek Septuagint (LXX)).

C. The fifteen books of the Apocrypha (as noted by the Revised Standard Version (1957)):

1. The First Book of Esdras (150—100 B. C.) (not included in Catholic Bible) This work begins with a description of the Passover celebration under King Josiah and relates Jewish history down to the reading of the Law in the time of Ezra. It reproduces with little change 2 Chronicles 35:1—36:21, the book of Ezra and Nehemiah 7:73—8:13a. It also includes the story of three young men, in the court of Darius, who held a contest to determine the strongest thing in the world. 1 Esdras has legendary accounts which cannot be supported by Ezra, Nehemiah or 2 Chronicles.

2. The Second Book of Esdras (c. A. D. 100) (not included in Catholic Bible) Differs from the other fifteen books in that it is an apocalypse. It has seven revelations (3:1—14:48) in which the prophet is instructed by the angel Uriel concerning the great mysteries of the moral world. It reflects the Jewish despair following the destruction of Jerusalem in A. D. 70.

3. Tobit (c. 200—150 B. C.) The Book of Tobit describes the doings of Tobit, a man from the tribe of Naphtali, who was exiled to Ninevah where he zealously continued to observe the Mosaic Law. This book is known for its sound moral teaching and promotion of Jewish piety. It is also known for its mysticism and promotion of astrology and the teaching of Zoroastrianism (The Bible Almanac, eds. Packer, Tenney and White, p. 501).

4. Judith (c. 150 B. C.) Judith is a fictitious story of a Jewish woman who delivers her people. It reflects the patriotic mood and religious devotion of the Jews after the Maccabean rebellion.

⁵⁶⁵ i.b.i.d.

5. The Additions to the Book of Esther (140-130 B. C.) 107 verses added to the book of Esther that were lacking in the original Hebrew form of the book. ⁵⁶⁶

6. The Wisdom of Solomon (c. 30 B. C.) This work was composed in Greek by an Alexandrian Jew who impersonated King Solomon.

7. Ecclesiasticus, or the Wisdom of Jesus the Son of Sirach (c. 180 B. C.) This book is the longest and one of the most highly esteemed of the apocryphal books. The author was a Jewish sage named Joshua (Jesus, in Greek) who taught young men at an academy in Jerusalem. Around 180 B. C. he turned his classroom lectures into two books. This work contains numerous maxims formulated in about 1,600 couplets and grouped according to topic (marriage, wealth, the law, etc. . .).

8. Baruch (c. 150-50 B. C.) This book claims to have been written in Babylon by a companion and recorder of Jeremiah (Jer. 32:12; 36:4). It is mostly a collection of sentences from Jeremiah, Daniel, Isaiah and Job. Most scholars are agreed that it is a composite work put together by two or more authors around the first century B. C.

9. The Letter of Jeremiah (c. 300-100 B. C.) This letter claims to be written by the prophet Jeremiah at the time of the deportation to Babylon. In it he warns the people about idolatry.

10. The Prayer of Azariah and the Song of the Three Young Men (2 nd — 1 st century B. C.) This section is introduced to Daniel in the Catholic Bible after Daniel 3:23 and supposedly gives more details of the fiery furnace incident.

11. Susanna (Daniel 13 in the Catholic Bible) (2 nd — 1 st century B. C.) In this account, Daniel comes to the rescue of the virtuous Susanna who was wrongly accused of adultery.

12. Bel and the Dragon (Daniel 14 in the Catholic Bible) (c. 100 B. C.) Bel and the Dragon is made up of two stories. The first (vv. 1-22) tells of a great statue of Bel (the Babylonian god Marduk). Supposedly this statue of Bel would eat large quantities of food showing that he was a living god who deserved worship. Daniel, though, proved it was the priests of Bel who were eating the food. As a result, the king put the priests to death and allowed Daniel to destroy Bel and its temple. In the second story (vv. 23-42), Daniel, in defiance of the king, refuses to worship a great dragon. Daniel, instead, asks permission to slay the dragon without "sword or club" (v. 26). Given permission, Daniel feeds the dragon lumps of indigestible pitch, fat and hair so that the dragon bursts open (v. 27).

13. The Prayer of Manasseh (2 nd or 1 st century B. C.) (Not in Catholic Bible) This work is a short penitential psalm written by someone who read in

2 Chronicles 33:11-19 that Manasseh, the wicked king of Judah, composed a prayer asking God's forgiveness for his many sins.

⁵⁶⁶ i.b.i.d.

14. The First Book of the Maccabees (c. 110 B. C.) “The First Book of Maccabees is a generally reliable historical account of the fortunes of Jewish people between 175 and 134 B. C. , relating particularly to their struggle with Antiochus IV Epiphanes and his successors. . . . The name of the author, a patriotic Jew at⁵⁶⁷ Jerusalem is unknown” (Metzger, p. 169). The book derives its name from Maccabeus, the surname of a Jew who led the Jews in revolt against Syrian oppression.

15. The Second Book of the Maccabees (c. 110-70 B. C.) This book is not a continuation of 1 Maccabees but an independent work partially covering the period of 175-161 B. C. This book is not as historically reliable as 1 Maccabees.

D. Roman-Catholic inclusion of the Alexandrian list Of the fifteen books mentioned in the Alexandrian list, twelve were accepted and incorporated into the Roman-Catholic Bible. Only 1 and 2 Esdras and the Prayer of Manasseh were not included.

NOTE: Though twelve of these works are included in the Catholic Douay Bible, only seven additional books are listed in the table of contents. The reason is that Baruch and the Letter of Jeremiah were combined into one book; the additions of Esther were added to the book of Esther; the Prayer of Azariah was inserted between the Hebrew Daniel 3:23 and 24; Susanna was placed at the end of the book of Daniel (ch. 13); and Bel and the Dragon was attached to Daniel as chapter 14.

E. Reasons for rejecting the Apocrypha as canon There are many reasons why the Apocrypha should not be accepted as Holy Scripture:

1. The Apocryphal books were never included or accepted into the Hebrew canon Since the Old Testament is a collection of Jewish history and Law, it is very significant that none of these books were accepted by any Jewish community in or outside of Palestine (Lightfoot, p. 120). Josephus gives strong historical testimony to the fact that the Jews only recognized those books that make up the thirty-nine books of the Protestant Old Testament (see note V. B. on page 27).

2. Jesus, the Apostles and the New Testament writers never quote the books of⁵⁶⁸ the Apocrypha as Scripture Jesus never refers to the Apocrypha. **The apostles in their preaching mention many Old Testament events** but never refer to any incidents or characters from the Apocrypha. The New Testament writers **quote extensively from all over the Old Testament** but nowhere quote from the Apocrypha as Scripture (NOTE: An allusion to 2 Maccabees 7 may occur in Hebrews 11:35.).

NOTE: What about Jude’s reference to the book of Enoch (and possibly The Assumption of Moses) in Jude 14-15? First, it should be noted that the Book of

Enoch is classified as part of the Pseudepigrapha (see p. 31). Thus it is rejected as canonical by Jews, Protestants and Catholics. Enoch is “apocrypha” in the broad sense of being an Old Testament era book that was not part of the Hebrew

⁵⁶⁷ i.b.i.d.
⁵⁶⁸

canon. But it is not “Apocrypha” in the narrower sense of being one of the Old Testament books included in the Alexandrian Canon or the Catholic Bible. It is correct, then, to say that Jesus and the Apostles never quote from the Apocryphal books. Second, Jude’s quotation of Enoch does not mean that Jude accepted Enoch as inspired. As Edward Pentecost says, “If Jude quoted the apocryphal⁵⁶⁹ book, he was affirming only the truth of that prophecy and not endorsing the book in its entirety.” (Edward C. Pentecost, “Jude” in Bible Knowledge Commentary, vol. 2, p. 922). **It should be remembered that the New Testament also quotes from heathen poets** such as Aratus (Acts 17:28); Menander (1 Cor. 15:33) and Epimenides (Titus 1:12). Thus, a truthful quote from a secular source does not make the whole source inspired or worthy of being added to the canon.

3. Most of the Old Testament Apocryphal books were written during Israel’s post-biblical period Josephus and the Talmud declared that after the time of Malachi (430 B. C.) no more inspired Scripture was being given (see point IV. A and B, p. 26). All of the Apocryphal books, though, with the possible exception of 2 Esdras, were written after 430 B. C.

4. Many Jewish and Christian scholars rejected the Apocrypha as Scripture “These books were not accepted as Scripture by such Jewish writers of the first century as Philo and Josephus; the Jewish council at Jamnia (c. A. D. 90); and by such eminent Christian writers as Origen and Jerome. About A. D. 400 the great Christian scholar Jerome, whose translation of the Latin Vulgate remains the basis of the official Roman-Catholic Bible, strongly maintained that these books were “apocryphal” and were not to be included in the canon of Scripture” (Lightfoot, p. 120).

“Although some individuals in the early church had a high esteem for the Apocrypha, no council of the entire church during the first four centuries favoured them, and there were many individuals who vehemently opposed them” (Geisler and Nix, p. 268).

5. The Apocrypha includes many historical and geographical inaccuracies For example, in the Book of Judith, Holofernes is described as the general of “Nebuchadnezzar who ruled over the Assyrians in the great city of Ninevah” (1:1). However, Holofernes was a Persian general and Nebuchadnezzar was king of the Babylonians in Babylon.

William Green has stated, “The books of Tobit and Judith abound in geographical, chronological, and historical mistakes, so as not only to vitiate the truth of the narratives which they contain, but to make it doubtful whether they even rest upon a basis of fact” (William Green, General Introduction to the Old Testament: The Canon, p. 195).

6. Some of the Apocryphal books teach unbiblical or heretical doctrines

a. Prayers for the dead 2 Maccabees 12:45-46 promotes prayers for the dead which conflicts with passages such as Hebrews 9:27 and Luke 16:25-26.

⁵⁶⁹ i.b.i.d.

b. *Salvation by works* Tobit 12:9 teaches salvation by works—something the Bible strongly teaches against (see Romans 4-5; Gal. 3:11).⁵⁷⁰

NOTE: The two above doctrines were heavily disputed during the Reformation era. As Geisler and Nix say, “the addition of books that support salvation by works and prayers for the dead at that time—only twenty-nine years after Luther posted his Ninety-five Theses—is highly suspect” (Geisler and Nix, p. 269).

7. Late date for acceptance “The Council of Trent (1545-63) was the first official proclamation of the Roman-Catholic Church on the Apocrypha, and it came a millennium and a half after the books were written, in an obvious polemical action against Protestantism” (Geisler and Nix, p. 269).

8. There is no claim within the Apocrypha itself that it is the Word of God Unlike many of the books of the Old Testament, the Apocryphal books do not claim divine authority.

F. *Value of the Apocrypha* Even though the Apocryphal books are clearly not part of the Canon of Scripture, that does not mean that all of the books should be dismissed as having no value. **Some of the books give important historical and cultural information.** For example, 1 Maccabees gives valuable historical information concerning the Jews during the era of 175-134 B. C., **particularly their struggles with Antiochus Epiphanes.**⁵⁷¹

Here follows the subdivision of the Messianic Writings:

Gospels (4)

1. Matthew
2. Mark
3. Luke
4. John

History (1)

1. Acts

Epistles (21)

Pauline (13)

1. Romans
2. 1 Corinthians
3. 2 Corinthians
4. Galatians
5. Ephesians
6. Philippians

⁵⁷⁰ <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

⁵⁷¹ i.b.i.d.

7. Colossians
8. 1 Thess
9. 2 Thess
10. 1 Timothy
11. 2 Timothy
12. Titus
13. Philemon

General (8)

14. Hebrews
15. James
16. 1 Peter
17. 2 Peter
18. 1 John
19. 2 John
20. 3 John
21. Jude

Prophecy (1)

2. Revelation.⁵⁷²

2.5.1 CANONICITY OF THE MESSIANIC WRITINGS

A. Reasons for collection The following are reasons for the collection of the New Testament books in the early church era.

1. Access to inspired books The early church was interested in collecting those books that were inspired and thus, prophetic. The works written by the apostles and prophets were considered valuable and worthy of preservation.

2. Guidelines for faith and practice The early church needed to know which books should be read in the churches as the Word of God and which books could be used to determine God's will for doctrine and living.

*3. Defense against other religions and philosophies "As the Christian movement was confronted with philosophical and religious trends current in the Mediterranean world of its time, the need for an authentic expression and preservation of the foundation of its belief became the basic motivation toward the realization of the New Testament canon. This grew more acute after the demise of the first generation of eyewitnesses" (Andrie B. Du Toit, "Canon," in *The Oxford Companion to the Bible*, p. 102).*

4. Heretical threats The early church needed to know exactly which books were canonical because certain heretics were coming up with their own canons. Around A. D. 140, the heretic—Marcion, had his own "canon" that excluded most of the New Testament canonical writings we possess. Marcion believed that only Luke's

⁵⁷² <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

Gospel and ten of Paul's epistles were inspired Scripture. Montanists and gnostic groups were also threats to the early church.

5. Persecutions Diocletian's persecution of Christians from A. D. 303-306 included the confiscating and destroying of New Testament books. This persecution motivated the church to sort through and settle on which books were really Scripture and which books were worth suffering for.

B. Phases of New Testament collection

*1. **1st phase—Creation and Spread of the New Testament books (A. D. 50-95)***

In this period the various New Testament books were written and they also began to be copied and disseminated throughout the churches.

a. New Testament

(1) 1 Thessalonians (A. D. 51) "I adjure you by the Lord to have this letter read to all the brethren" (1 Thess. 5:27). In 2:13 Paul also states that the Thessalonians accepted his message "not as the word of men" but as "the word of God."⁵⁷³

(2) 1 Corinthians (A. D. 54-55) "... the things I write to you are the Lord's commandment" (1 Cor. 14:37).

(3) Colossians (A. D. 61) Paul's letter to the Colossians was to be read in other churches (Col. 4:16).

(4) Revelation (A. D. 95) Blessings are promised to all who read and heed the words of the prophecy given to the apostle John (Rev. 1:3). The Book of Revelation was also to be spread throughout the "seven churches" (Rev. 1:11).⁵⁷⁴

(5) 1 Timothy (A. D. 62) Paul, in 1 Timothy 5:18, quotes Deuteronomy 25:4 and Luke 10:7 as "Scripture." Thus, Paul saw Luke's Gospel as Scripture and saw this New Testament Gospel on equal par with the Old Testament Pentateuch.

(6) 2 Peter (A. D. 67) In 2 Peter 3:15-16, Peter refers to Paul's letters as part of the "the Scriptures." Since Peter's letter is a general one it implies that widespread knowledge of Paul's letters was known before A. D. 70.

*b. **Oral tradition** "From the beginning, the proclamation about the death and resurrection of Jesus, as well as the teaching of Jesus, circulated among the Christian churches in oral form. Some of the tradition was down quite early (ca. 35-65), but much of it remained in oral form for a considerable period of time" (Lee M. McDonald, The Formation of the Christian Biblical Canon, p. 139) The early Christians took oral tradition very seriously. Eusebius quoted Papias as saying, "For I did not suppose that information from books would help me so much as the word of a living and surviving voice."*

*c. **Clement of Rome** "In A. D. 95 Clement of Rome wrote to the Christians in Corinth using a free rendering of material from Matthew and Luke. He seems to be*

⁵⁷³ <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

⁵⁷⁴ The process of determining the New Testament Canon; <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

strongly influenced by Hebrews and is obviously familiar with Romans and Corinthians. There are also reflections of 1 Timothy, Titus, 1 Peter, and Ephesians” (Fisher, pp. 69-70).

2. 2nd phase—Growing recognition and collection into groups of the New Testament books (A. D. 96-150) Within this period all of the Gospels and all of Paul’s letters were known and recognized in the churches. Some of the smaller letters took more time to be accepted as authoritative because of questions about authentic authorship. But as questions about authorship were answered, they, too, were universally accepted as Scripture. As Fisher states, “This demonstrates that acceptance was not being imposed by the actions of councils but was rather happening spontaneously through a normal response on the part of those who had learned the facts about authorship” (Fisher, p. 70).

a. Clement, Polycarp and Ignatius These three church fathers of this era used the majority of the New Testament in a free manner thus showing that most of the New Testament was accepted without argument. In the writing of these three men only Mark, 2 and 3 John, Jude and 2 Peter are not clearly referred to (Fisher, p. 70). These men also made a clear distinction between their own writings and the inspired apostolic writings.

(1)Polycarp (c. A. D. 110) Polycarp, a disciple of the apostle John, quotes from Matthew, John, the first ten letters of Paul, 1 Peter and 1 and 2 John.

(2)The Epistle of Ignatius (c. A. D. 115) This work corresponds in several places to the Gospels and incorporates language from some of Paul’s letters.

b. Papias (c. 70-163) Papias’s work, *Interpretation of the Oracles of the Lord* (c. 120) includes material from the four Gospels.⁵⁷⁵

c. The Epistle of Barnabas (c. A. D. 130) This work uses the first “it is written” statement in reference to a New Testament book (Matthew 22:14).

d. Gospel of Truth (A. D. 140) This recently discovered gnostic work treats many of the New Testament books as authoritative. Citations come from the Gospels, Acts, Paul’s letters, Hebrews and Revelation.

e. The Marcion Canon (A. D. 140) The heretic, Marcion, determined his own canon selecting only Luke (minus chapters 1 and 2 that he considered too Jewish) and ten of Paul’s epistles.

f. Justin Martyr (c. A. D. 140) Justin Martyr, around the end of this period, stated that the apostolic writings were on a par with those of the Old Testament prophets. He referred to all four Gospels, most of Paul’s letters, 1 Peter and Revelation.

g. Pseudo-Barnabas (A. D. 70-130) This work which claims the name Barnabas, includes Matthew, Mark, Luke, Ephesians, 2 Timothy, Titus, Hebrews, 1 Peter and 2 Peter.

⁵⁷⁵ i.b.i.d.

h. Summary of this period “By the middle of the second century every book of the New Testament was referred to, as authoritative (canonical), by at least one of these fathers” (Geisler and Nix, p. 288). (For more information on specific quotes of all the New Testament books during this period see Geisler and Nix, pp. 288-91).

3. 3rd phase—Compiling of the canon (A. D. 150-190) During this era, the formal idea of a canon takes shape. Most books of the New Testament are clearly recognized as canon—only a few need further scrutiny.

a. Irenaeus (c. A. D. 170) This disciple of Polycarp (who was discipled by John) is the first early church father to quote almost every book of the New Testament. He quoted or considered authentic twenty-three of the twenty-seven books—omitting only Philemon, James, 2 Peter and 3 John.

b. Tatian (c. A. D. 170) A pupil of Justin Martyr, Tatian made a harmony of the four Gospels known as the *Diatessaron*. Other gospels had surfaced by this time but he recognized only the four traditional ones.

c. The Muratorian Canon (c. A. D. 170) All the New Testament books except Hebrews, James, 1 and 2 Peter were a part of the original copy of this document.

d. The Old Latin translation (c. A. D. 200) Translated before A. D. 200 this translation served as the Bible of the Western church. This Latin version has all of the New Testament books except Hebrews, James, 1 and 2 Peter.

4. 4th phase—Formation of the canon continues (Third century A. D.)

a. Origen (A. D. 185-254) Origen wrote commentaries and homilies on most of the New Testament books, emphasizing their inspiration.⁵⁷⁶

b. Dionysius of Alexandria (pupil of Origen) Notes that the Western church accepted Revelation but had doubts about Hebrews. The opposite was true in the Eastern church where Hebrews was accepted and Revelation was questioned. Dionysius supported James and 2 and 3 John but not 2 Peter or Jude.

5. 5th phase—Closing of the canon (fourth century)

a. Eusebius (A. D. 270-340) This Bishop of Caesarea and church historian, early in the fourth century, set forth his estimate of the canon in his work *Church History*. He classified the status of the canon during this time.

(1) Universally accepted The four Gospels, Acts, the Letters of Paul, Hebrews, 1 Peter, 1 John and Revelation.

(2) Accepted by most (including Eusebius) but disputed by some James, 2 Peter, 2 and 3 John and Jude.

(3) Rejected The Acts of Paul, the *Didache* and the *Shepherd of Hermas*.

⁵⁷⁶ i.b.i.d.

b. Athanasius (A. D. 296-373) With his Festal Letter for Easter in 367, Athanasius gave the first full and final declaration on the extent of both Old and New Testament canons. The twenty-seven books he listed as New Testament Canon are the same twenty-seven books in our Bibles today. He also said, "Let no one add to these; let nothing be taken away."

c. Council of Hippo (A. D. 393) This was probably the first church council to lay down the limits of the canon of Scripture (Bruce, *The Canon of Scripture*, p. 323). The limits of the canon as discussed here were approved by Augustine and verified what was set down by Athanasius.

d. Council of Carthage (A. D. 397) The findings of Hippo were reiterated at this council. CANON IS CLOSED

e. Jerome (early 5th century) In a letter dated 414, Jerome appears to accept the New Testament books as fixed. Jerome, personally thought the Letter of Barnabas should have been included in the canon but is content to accept what had already come to be the consensus. "Jerome confirms that by the beginning of the fifth century, the canon of the New Testament had achieved a kind of solemn, unshakable status; it could not be altered, even if one had different opinions" (Carsten Peter Thiede, "A Testament is Born, in *Christian History*, issue 43, p. 29).

MESSIANIC WRITINGS APOGRYPHA

I. New Testament classification As with the Old Testament (see p. 29) the following fourfold classification of the New Testament includes: Annexure 1

A. Homologoumena (books accepted by all)

B. Antilegomena (books disputed by some)

C. Pseudepigrapha (books rejected by all)

D. Apocrypha (books accepted by some)

II. The Homologoumena (books accepted by all) Twenty of the twenty-seven books of the New Testament had no serious questions about their inspiration. This includes all of the books from Matthew through Philemon, plus 1 Peter and 1 John.

III. The Antilegomena (books disputed by some) Seven books of the New Testament were disputed in regard to their canonicity.

A. Hebrews This book was questioned because of its anonymity. In the East, where it was believed to be written by Paul, it was readily accepted. The church in the West was more slow to accept it because of questions about its authorship. Through the influence of Jerome and Augustine in the fourth century, the West finally accepted Hebrews as canonical.

B. James James was slow to be accepted by the church because of its statements on the relationship of faith and works which seemed to differ from Paul's epistles. Luther questioned its canonicity on this basis. Eusebius, Jerome and Augustine

and the rest of the church, however, finally recognized its complementary nature to Paul's letters and hence its canonical status.

C. 2 Peter 2 Peter was the most disputed book in the New Testament. Its dissimilarity with 1 Peter and the claim that it was a second century work have caused many to doubt its authenticity. These objections, though, were overcome and the testimony of Origin, Eusebius, Jerome and Augustine on its authenticity won out.

D. 2 and 3 John These books were questioned because of their limited circulation and private nature. They simply did not enjoy the wider circulation of the other⁵⁷⁷ books of the New Testament. The strong similarities with 1 John, though, gave strong testimony that these letters were written by John the apostle.

E. Jude Jude's authority was questioned mainly because of its references to the pseudepigraphic work, Enoch. Quotation, however, of a secular source does not make a book noncanonical.

F. Revelation This book was clearly accepted in the early church but became questioned later because of its teaching of a millennium. This, however, was an interpretation matter, not an inspiration matter.

IV. The Pseudepigrapha (books rejected by all) The first few centuries of the Christian era saw the production of numerous fanciful and heretical works that were neither genuine or valuable. "These books indicate the heretical teaching of gnostic, docetic, and ascetic groups, as well as the exaggerated fancy of religious lore in the early church" (Geisler and Nix, p. 301). It has been estimated that there were about three hundred books of this nature. The following are well-known pseudepigraphic works:

A. The Gospel of Thomas (early second century) This gnostic gospel is a mixture of authentic sayings of Jesus and Gnostic teachings which only the enlightened few are supposed to be able understand. In this gospel Jesus fashioned twelve sparrows from clay and made them fly. He also cursed a young boy who withered like a tree. Eusebius (c. 260-340) said that this work should be "cast aside as absurd and impious" because its style and content clearly show it not to be apostolic ("Books That Almost Made It," in Christian History, issue 43, p. 31).

B. The Gospel of the Ebionites (second century) Made by a Jewish sect of Christians who stressed the law of Moses, the Gospel of the Ebionites teaches that Jesus was a mere man who God adopted at His baptism.

C. The Gospel of Peter (second century) This docetic work denied the humanity of Christ.

V. The Apocrypha (books accepted by some) None of these works are in modern versions of the Bible but they were sometimes quoted by the Fathers and appeared in some Bible translations.

A. *Epistle of Pseudo-Barnabas* (c. A. D. 70-130) Quoted as Scripture by Origen and Clement of Alexandria, this work parallels Hebrews in style but is allegorical and mystical in nature.

B. *Shepherd of Hermas* (c. A. D. 115-140) This work was the most popular of all the noncanonical books. It is a picturesque allegory about a shepherd (Jesus) who gives moral guidance through visions and mandates to a man named Hermas. It was considered Scripture by Irenaeus and Clement of Alexandria (See "Books that Almost Made It," p. 30).⁵⁷⁸

C. *Didache* (c. A. D. 100-120) This work was held in high regard by the early church and gives the opinion of the early church of the second century on the essential truths of Christianity.

D. *Apocalypse of Peter* (c. A. D. 150) This apocalypse gives picturesque descriptions of heaven and hell.

E. *The Acts of Paul* (A. D. 170) This is the story of the conversion and testimony of an Iconian lady, Thelca, based on Acts 14:1-7.

F. *The Gospel According to the Hebrews* (A. D. 65-100)

G. *The Epistle of Polycarp to the Philippians* (c. A. D. 108).

HEBREW MANUSCRIPTS THROUGHOUT HISTORY

I. *Hebrew manuscripts throughout history*

A. *The Old Testament Canon era* (1450-400 B. C.) Old Testament books were copied by hand for generations on highly perishable papyrus and animal skins. The survival of the Old Testament Scriptures in spite of persecutions and exiles shows the determination of the Jewish scribes to preserve the Old Testament books (Bruce K. Waltke, "The Textual Criticism of the Old Testament," in *Expositor's Bible Commentary*, vol. 1, p. 212). No copies of this era are extant today.

B. *The Talmudic era* (c. 400 B. C. —A. D. 500) This era produced a flood of manuscripts that were used in the synagogues and for private use. The copies for synagogue use were made with extreme caution and were considered "sacred." By the time of the Maccabean⁵⁷⁹ revolt (168 B. C.) the Syrians had destroyed most of the existing manuscripts of the Old Testament (Geisler and Nix, p. 354).

C. *The Masoretic period* (c. A. D. 500-1000) During this period, various Jewish scholars arose dedicated to the preservation of the Old Testament text. This group became known as the Massoretes because of their acknowledged dependence on the authoritative traditions (Massorah) of the text. Centered in Tiberias, this school began around A. D. 500 and continued on for five centuries. Their contributions are

⁵⁷⁸ i.b.i.d.

⁵⁷⁹ <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

many. In addition to adding vowel points to the Hebrew text (all Hebrew letters are consonants), they also sought ways and methods to eliminate copying mistakes (Lightfoot, p. 91).

II. Surviving Hebrew manuscripts Until the Dead Sea Scrolls discoveries, the earliest existing Hebrew manuscripts were dated around A. D. 1000.

A. The Cairo Codex (A. D. 895) Includes the Former and Latter prophets.

B. The Leningrad Codex of the Prophets (A. D. 916)

C. British Museum Codex of the Pentateuch (10th — 11th century)

D. Leningrad Codex (A. D. 1008) This is the oldest known manuscript of the entire Old Testament.

NOTE: Before 1947, Old Testament versions were based on these three partial and one complete manuscript from around A. D. 1000.

E. Aleppo Codex (c. A. D. 950) Originally a complete Old Testament. Most of it has survived.

F. Others Many other manuscripts exist but the above mentioned were the main witnesses to the original Old Testament text.

G. Dead Sea Scrolls The Dead Sea Scrolls, discovered in 1948, are extremely important in that they include Hebrew manuscripts of the Old Testament written around 200-100 B. C. —more than a thousand years earlier than the previously earliest manuscripts! The Dead Sea Scrolls include one complete book (Isaiah) and thousands of fragments which, together, represent every Old Testament books except Esther. W. F. Albright has called these scrolls, “The greatest manuscript discovery of modern times.”

H. Why don't earlier copies of the Hebrew Bible exist? “One may wonder why copies of the Hebrew Bible are late in comparison with the New Testament materials and especially so when it is recalled that the Old Testament was completed several centuries before the first New Testament book was written. The answer is not difficult to find. The Jewish scribes looked upon their copies of the Scriptures with an almost superstitious respect, which led them to give a ceremonial burial to any copy which was old or became worn. Their motive was to prevent the improper use of the material on which the sacred name of God had been inscribed. But however noble their intentions, this ancient custom has deprived us of the early Hebrew manuscripts which we might otherwise have, and thus has lengthened the gap between the available copies of the text and the Old Testament autographs” (Lightfoot, p. 90).

III. Other Old Testament witnesses The most important witnesses to the Old Testament are the Hebrew manuscripts. But other sources are helpful.

A. Samaritan Pentateuch (c. 400 B. C.) This manuscript of the Hebrew text covers the first five books of Moses.

B. Septuagint (c. 250 B. C.) This Greek translation of the Old Testament spans the entire Old Testament. It was quoted often by the apostles and New Testament writers.

C. Aramaic Targums Aramaic translations came in existence after the exile.

D. Syriac Peshitta Begun in the middle of the first century A. D. the Peshitta is in close agreement with the Massoretic text.

E. Latin Vulgate (A. D. 390-405) Unlike the Old Latin version (A. D. 150) that based its translation on the Greek Septuagint, the Vulgate, composed by Jerome, was translated directly from the Hebrew.

F. Biblical quotations from the Talmud (A. D. 200-500)

G. Origen's Hexapla (3rd century A. D.).

IV. Reasons for trusting our Old Testament *If the oldest Hebrew manuscripts (before consideration of the Dead Sea Scrolls) are dated around A. D. 1000, how can we be sure they accurately reflect what the original writers of Scripture wrote centuries earlier?*

A. Meticulous care of Jewish Scribes The lack of manuscript evidence could be a cause for alarm if it were not for the extreme care of the Jewish scribes who made copies of the Old Testament. The Jewish scribes conscientiously sought perfection in the transcription of the text. According to the Talmud, rigid regulations were laid down for making copies of Old Testament texts:

- 1. The copyist was required to sit in full Jewish dress after a complete bathing.*
- 2. Only a certain kind of ink could be used.*
- 3. Rules governed the spacing of words.*
- 4. No word or letter could be written from memory.*
- 5. Lines and letters were methodically counted.*
- 6. If a manuscript was found to have even one error it was destroyed. (This helps explain why only a few manuscripts survived.)⁵⁸⁰*

NOTE: *"This strict set of regulations which governed the early Jewish scribes is a chief factor which guarantees the accurate transmission of the Old Testament text" (Lightfoot, pp. 97-98).*

B. The work of the Massoretes (A. D. 500-1000) The Massoretes took meticulous precautions to avoid copying mistakes and detect scribal errors. As Lightfoot says, "The Massoretes were textual critics of the first rank. They examined and appraised carefully all the textual materials available to them, and on the basis of their abundant evidence set down in writing the form of the text which had been

⁵⁸⁰ Texts and Manuscripts of the Old Testament; <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

received at least several centuries before their time. Indeed, their labors were so productive and their contributions so large that our Hebrew text today is often referred to as “the Massoretic text” (Lightfoot, p. 92).

C. Confirmation of the Dead Sea Scrolls “With the discovery of the Dead Sea Scrolls, scholars have Hebrew manuscripts one thousand years earlier than the great Masoretic Text manuscripts, enabling them to check on the fidelity of the Hebrew text. The result of comparative studies reveals that there is a word-for-word identity in more than 95 percent of the cases, and the 5 percent variation consists mostly of slips of the pen and spelling” (Geisler and Nix, p. 382). As F. F. Bruce says, “The new evidence confirms what we had already good reason to believe—that the Jewish scribes of the early Christian centuries copied and recopied the text of the Hebrew Bible with the utmost fidelity” (F. F. Bruce, *Second Thoughts on the Dead Sea Scrolls*, pp. 61-62).

I. Introduction to New Testament manuscripts

A. No original autographs The New Testament books were written in the latter half of the first century A. D. Soon after the books were written, the original autographs perished. But God has preserved His Word through copies of the New Testament called manuscripts—all written in Greek.

B. Comparison between Old Testament and New Testament manuscript evidence The integrity and accuracy of the Old Testament text is largely the result of the extreme care taken by the rabbinical scholars in the transmission process. Though very few Old Testament manuscripts are known, we know they are of very high quality. The reliability of the New Testament text, however, rests on a different basis—the vast multitude of existing manuscripts.

C. Number of manuscripts The number of New Testament manuscripts written in Greek between the second and fifteenth centuries that we currently possess is 5,366. Because of the vast number of manuscripts, the New Testament is undoubtedly the best-attested book from the ancient world.

D. Grouping of manuscripts Most manuscripts do not contain the entire New Testament because a hand-produced copy of the whole New Testament was too bulky for practical use. Four categories were generally followed when making copies of the New Testament 1) the four Gospels, 2) Acts and the General epistles, 3) Pauline epistles and 4) Revelation.

E. Types of manuscripts New Testament manuscripts are made up of three major types.

1. Papyrus Many of the earliest witnesses to the New Testament were written on papyrus material (see page 15). This was the material that the New Testament was written on.

2. Uncials The manuscripts of this group are the earliest and most important. Uncial manuscripts were written with all capital letters and no spaces between letters. 362 uncial manuscripts are in existence.

3. Minuscule (cursives) The minuscule script was a development of the cursive hand and differs from uncials by its use of smaller forms of letters. The small letters could be written more quickly and required less space. The minuscules did not make their debut until the ninth century and thus are of less value because of their dates” (Lightfoot, pp. 36, 49).

II. Important New Testament manuscripts

A. *Uncial manuscripts on Papyrus (2nd — 3rd centuries)* There are eighty-eight papyri manuscripts of portions of the New Testament. These very early and important witnesses of the New Testament include most of the New Testament. The following are the more significant papyri witnesses.

1. P52 (c. A. D. 110-125) “According to most scholars, the closest copy to an autograph is a papyrus manuscript designated P52, dated around 110-125, containing a few verses of John 18 (31-34, 37-38). This fragment, only twenty to thirty years removed from the autograph, was part of one of the earliest copies of John’s Gospel.” (Philip W. Comfort, “Texts and Manuscripts of the New Testament,” in *The Origin of the Bible*, p. 179) It should also be noted that P52 confirms the traditional belief that the Gospel of John was written before the end of the first century A. D. ⁵⁸¹

2. P87 (c. 125) Contains a few verses of Philemon.

3. P77 (c. 150) Contains a few verses of Matthew 23.

4. P32 (c. 175) Has portions of Titus 1 and 2.

5. P45 (late second century) Contains portions of all four Gospels and Acts.

6. P46 (c. 200) Has almost all of Paul’s epistles and Hebrews;

7. P47 (third century) Contains Revelation 9-17.

8. P66 (c. 175) One of the earliest witnesses to the New Testament is this almost complete copy of the Gospel of John.

9. P72 (c. third century) Earliest copy including Jude and 1 and 2 Peter.

10. P75 (c. 175-225) Contains large portions of Luke 3 through John 15.

B. *Uncial manuscripts on vellum and parchment (4th — 9th centuries)* The most important manuscripts of the New Testament are the great uncial codices that date from the fourth and following centuries.

1. Codex Vaticanus (B) (c. 325-350) This fourth century manuscript is widely acknowledged as being the most important witness on the New Testament text. This manuscript has been located in the Vatican Library in Rome since 1481 but its contents were not made available for all until 1889.

⁵⁸¹ Texts and Manuscripts of the New Testament; <http://www.biblebb.com/files/howbible.htm>; 28/05/2014.

It is rare in that it contains, in Greek, practically all of the Old and New Testaments. It does not include the Pastoral epistles and Hebrews 9:15—Revelation. In spite of its gaps it is considered to be the most exact copy of the New Testament known. Printed texts of the Greek New Testament today rely heavily on Codex Vaticanus.

2. Codex Sinaiticus (Aleph) (c. 340) *Codex Sinaiticus is of near-equal value to Codex Vaticanus and is also an important witness to the New Testament text because of its age, accuracy and completeness. It is known as Codex Sinaiticus because it was discovered by the great textual critic, Constantine Tischendorf at St. Catharine's Monastery on Mt. Sinai in 1844. Tischendorf first discovered Sinaiticus while stumbling upon portions of it in a waste basket awaiting destruction by fire. Codex Sinaiticus contains over half of the Old Testament and all of the New Testament except for Mark 16:9-20 and John 7:53-8:11.*

NOTE: Vaticanus and Sinaiticus rank as the two most important manuscript witnesses to the New Testament.

3. Codex Alexandrinus (A) (c. 450) *This Alexandrian manuscript, composed by scribes in Alexandria, Egypt, ranks second only to Vaticanus and Sinaiticus as a superior New Testament witness. It is a near complete manuscript of the Bible with very little missing except for portions from Matthew, John and 2 Corinthians.⁵⁸² Codex Alexandrinus was originally to be offered as a gift to King James of England. But since James died before he received it, it was presented to his successor Charles I in 1627. Alexandrinus was not known of early enough to be of help to the translators of the 1611 King James Version.*

4. Codex Ephraemi Rescriptus (C) (c. 345) *This document is a palimpsest—a manuscript in which the original writing has been erased and written over. Through chemicals and hard work, the original writing underneath can be read. It has material from every book of the New Testament except 2 Thessalonians and 2 John. Its age makes it a very valuable witness. It was not until 1845 that a full edition of this manuscript was published.*

5. Codex Bezae (D) (c. 450 or 550) *This is the earliest known biblical copy in two languages, Greek and Latin. It contains the Gospels and Acts with a small section of 3 John in Latin.*

NOTE: Of these five very important manuscripts only one, Codex Bezae was available to the translators of the 1611 King James Version. Revised versions, today, are based on these earlier and better manuscripts.

C. Minuscule Manuscripts (9th — 15th centuries) Because of their late dates, minuscule manuscripts do not possess the high quality of the earlier uncials. These minuscule manuscripts, though, make up the majority of New Testament manuscripts. There are 2,795 manuscripts and 1,964 lectionaries in minuscule script (Compare with 362 manuscripts and 245 lectionaries in uncial script.).

III. Other New Testament witnesses

⁵⁸² i.b.i.d.

A. Lectionaries A lectionary is a manuscript arranged in sections for the purpose of being read in a public worship service. Most lectionaries are of the Gospels but some include Acts and the Epistles. 2,200 lectionaries have been discovered.

B. Versions As the New Testament message spread, it was translated into other languages.

1. The Old Syriac This translation of the New Testament was in circulation in Syria around A. D. 400 (Geisler and Nix, p. 292).

2. The Old Latin The Old Latin version was translated around A. D. 150 and served as the Bible of the Western church. "Some of the Old Latin copies are as old as the celebrated Vatican and Sinaitic Manuscripts. The Old Latin is by far the most important of the Latin versions since it reaches back very close to the time when the last books of the New Testament were written" (Lightfoot, p. 54).

3. The Peshitta This Syriac translation has been in use since the fifth century.

4. The Latin Vulgate This work, begun by Jerome in A. D. 384, became the standard Bible for more than a thousand years and was made the official Bible of the Roman-Catholic Church.⁵⁸³

C. Early Christian writers Many volumes of literature exist from the era of the early church fathers. Many of their writings are filled with quotations from the New Testament. These men possessed copies of the New Testament which are older than our manuscripts today. As Bruce Metzger says, "so extensive are these citations that if all other sources for our knowledge of the text of the New Testament were destroyed, they would be sufficient alone in reconstructing practically the entire New Testament" (Lightfoot, p. 56).

⁵⁸³ i.b.i.d.